



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Revelation

Version 64

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 64

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 37

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 36

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2022-07-11

Version: 2.1.27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2022-07-11

Version: 0.27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 29

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2022-06-28

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links

Date: 2022-08-03

Version: 16

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	13
Revelation	13
Introduction to Revelation	14
Revelation 1	17
Revelation 2	83
Revelation 3	161
Revelation 4	197
Revelation 5	209
Revelation 6	236
Revelation 7	263
Revelation 8	284
Revelation 9	298
Revelation 10	320
Revelation 11	335
Revelation 12	364
Revelation 13	390
Revelation 14	418
Revelation 15	445
Revelation 16	460
Revelation 17	485
Revelation 18	510
Revelation 19	554
Revelation 20	594
Revelation 21	615
Revelation 22	646
 unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	 670
Abstract Nouns	671
Active or Passive	673
Apostrophe	676
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	678
Background Information	681
Biblical Distance	684
Biblical Money	687
Biblical Volume	689
Biblical Weight	693
Blessings	695
Collective Nouns	697
Connect — Exception Clauses	700
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship	702
Copy or Borrow Words	705
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding	707
Double Negatives	710
Doublet	713
Ellipsis	715
End of Story	718
Euphemism	720
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	722
First, Second or Third Person	724

Forms of You	726
Fractions	727
Generic Noun Phrases	729
Go and Come	731
How to Translate Names	733
Idiom	737
Introduction of New and Old Participants	739
Irony	742
Litany	745
Litotes	748
Merism	750
Metaphor	752
Metonymy	758
Nominal Adjectives	760
Numbers	762
Order of Events	765
Ordinal Numbers	767
Parallelism	770
Personification	773
Possession	775
Pronouns — When to Use Them	779
Quotations and Quote Margins	781
Quote Markings	783
Reflexive Pronouns	786
Rhetorical Question	789
Simile	792
Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups	795
Symbolic Action	797
Symbolic Language	799
Symbolic Prophecy	801
Synecdoche	804
Textual Variants	806
Translate Unknowns	808
Translating Son and Father	811
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	813
abomination, abominable	814
abyss, bottomless pit	815
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation	816
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	817
adversary, enemy	818
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	819
age, aged	820
Almighty	821
altar	822
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder,	823
amen, truly	824
angel, archangel	825
anoint, anointed, anointing	827
apostle, apostleship	828
ark	829
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of	830
ash, ashes	831

Asher	832
Asia	833
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	834
authority	835
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	836
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	837
Balaam	838
barley	839
bear	840
bear, bearer, carry	841
beast	842
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	843
beloved	846
Benjamin, Benjaminite	847
bind, bond, bound	848
blameless	849
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	850
bless, blessed, blessing	851
blood	853
body	855
Book of Life	856
bow and arrow, a bow	857
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	858
breastplate, breastpiece	859
bride, bridal	860
bridegroom	861
bronze	862
brother	863
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	864
call, call out	865
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	867
caught up	868
chariot, charioteers	869
children, child, offspring	870
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	872
Christ, Messiah	873
church, Church	875
clean, wash	877
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	879
column, pillar	880
command, commandment	881
commander	882
confess, confession	883
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved	884
court, courtyard	885
covenant	886
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	888
create, created, creation, creator	889
creature, creation	890
crown, crowned	891
crucify, crucified	892
cry, cry out, outcry	893

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	894
curse, cursed, cursing	896
darkness	898
David	899
day	900
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	901
declare, proclaim, announce	902
defile, defiled, desecrate	903
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	904
desert, wilderness	905
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted	906
destroy, destruction, annihilate	907
detest, detested, detestable	908
devour	909
die, dead, deadly, death	910
discipline, self-discipline	912
drunk, drunkard	913
eagle	914
earth, land	915
Egypt, Egyptian	916
elder, older, old	917
endure, endurance	918
Ephesus, Ephesian	919
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	920
Euphrates River, the River	922
evil, wicked, unpleasant	923
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	925
exult, exultant	926
face, facial	927
faith	929
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	930
false prophet	932
famine	933
fear, afraid, frighten	934
feast, feasting	935
fellowship	936
fig	937
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	938
firstborn	939
firstfruits	940
flesh	941
flood	942
flute, pipe	943
found, founder, foundation	944
fountain, source, spring	945
frankincense	946
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty	947
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	948
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	950
furnace	951
Gad	952
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	953

Gentile	954
gift	955
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt	956
glory, glorious, glorify	957
God	959
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	961
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	963
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	965
gold, golden	967
good news, gospel	968
grace, gracious	970
grape, grapevine	971
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	972
Greek, Grecian, Hellenist	973
Hades, Sheol	974
hail, hailstone, hailstorm	975
hand	976
hard, harden, hardness	978
harp, harpist	979
harvest, reap	980
head	981
heart	982
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	983
Hebrew	985
hell, lake of fire	986
holy city	987
Holy One	988
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	989
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	991
honey, honeycomb	993
honor	994
horn, horned	995
horse, warhorse, horseback	996
hour	997
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	998
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	999
in labor, labor pains, birth pains, pains of childbirth	1000
incense	1001
inherit, inheritance, heir	1002
Israel, Israelites	1004
Issachar	1006
it is written	1007
Jerusalem	1008
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	1010
Jew, Jewish	1012
Jezebel	1013
John (the apostle)	1014
Joseph (OT)	1015
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1016
Judah	1018
judge, judgment	1019
king, kingship	1021

kingdom	1022
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	1024
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1026
labor, laborer, work, hard work	1028
lamb, Lamb of God	1029
lamp	1031
lampstand	1032
leopard	1033
Levi, Levite	1034
life, live, living, alive	1035
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten	1037
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	1038
lion, lioness	1039
locust	1040
lord, Lord, master, sir	1041
love, beloved	1043
lust, lustful, passions, desires	1045
Manasseh	1046
manna	1047
Michael	1048
might, mighty, mighty works	1049
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded	1050
month, monthly	1051
Moses	1052
mourn, mourner, weeping	1053
mystery, hidden truth	1054
name	1055
Naphtali	1056
nation	1057
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1059
obey, keep	1060
oil	1061
olive	1062
palm	1063
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1064
people of God	1065
people, people group	1066
perish	1068
persecute	1069
persevere, perseverance	1070
pierce, pierced	1071
pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern	1072
plague	1073
power, powerful, powerfully	1074
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1076
pray, prayer	1077
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1078
precious, valuable, expensive, fine	1080
priest, priesthood	1081
prison, prisoner, imprison	1083
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1084
prostitute, harlot, whored	1086

prostrate, bow down, worship	1087
pure, purify, purification	1088
purple	1089
queen	1090
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	1091
rebuke, reprove	1093
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	1094
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1096
reed	1097
reign, rule	1098
repent, repentance	1099
rest, rested, restless	1101
resurrection	1102
Reuben	1103
reveal, revealed, revelation	1104
reward, prize, deserve	1105
right hand	1106
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright,	1108
robe, robed	1110
rod	1111
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader	1112
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows	1113
sackcloth	1114
saint	1115
Satan, devil, evil one	1116
save, saved, safe, salvation	1118
scroll	1120
seal, sealed, unsealed	1121
seed, semen	1122
seek, search, look for	1123
seize, seizure, capture	1124
send, sent, send out	1125
serpent, snake, viper	1126
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	1127
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	1129
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1130
shepherd, herder, pastor	1132
sign, proof, reminder	1134
silver	1136
Simeon	1137
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1138
slander, slanderers, revile, insult	1140
slaughter, slaughtered	1141
snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall	1142
snow	1143
Sodom	1144
son	1145
Son of God, the Son	1147
Son of Man, son of man	1149
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician	1150
soul, self, person	1151
spirit, wind, breath	1152

staff, clubs	1154
strength, strengthen, strong	1155
stumbling block, stone of stumbling	1157
suffer, suffering	1158
sulfur, sulfurous	1160
sword, swordsmen	1161
synagogue	1162
tabernacle	1163
teach, teaching, untaught	1164
temple, house, house of God	1165
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic	1167
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	1168
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	1169
the twelve, the eleven	1171
thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits	1172
throne, enthroned	1173
time, untimely, date	1174
to minister, ministry	1175
tongue, language	1176
torment, tormented, tormentors	1177
trample	1178
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1179
tribulation, distresses, trouble	1180
true, truth	1181
trumpet, trumpeters	1183
turn, turn away, turn back, return	1184
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes	1186
understand, understanding, thinking	1187
vine	1188
virgin, virginity	1189
vision, envision	1190
voice	1191
walk, walked	1192
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	1193
water, deep	1194
wheat	1195
will of God	1196
wine, wineskin, new wine	1197
winepress	1198
wise, wisdom	1199
woe	1200
womb	1201
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth,	1202
work, works, deeds	1204
world, worldly	1205
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1206
wrath, fury	1207
year	1208
zeal, zealous	1209
Zebulun	1210
Zion, Mount Zion	1211

Contributors	1212
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1212
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1218
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1219
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1220
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1220
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors	1221



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Revelation

Introduction to Revelation

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Revelation

Opening (1:1-20)

Letters to the seven churches (2:1-3:22)

Vision of God in heaven, and a vision of the Lamb (4:1-11)

The seven seals (6:1-8:1)

The seven trumpets (8:2-13:18)

Worshippers of the Lamb, the martyrs, and the harvest of wrath (14:1-20)

The seven bowls (15:1-18:24)

Worship in heaven (19:1-10)

The Lamb's judgment, the destruction of the beast, the thousand years, the destruction of Satan, and the final judgment (20:11-15)

The new creation and the new Jerusalem (21:1-22:5)

Jesus' promise to return, the witness from the angels, John's closing words, Christ's message to his church, the invitation and the warning (22:6-21)

Who wrote the Book of Revelation?

The author identified himself as John. This was probably the Apostle John. He wrote the Book of Revelation while on the island of Patmos. The Romans exiled John there for teaching people about Jesus.

What is the Book of Revelation about?

John wrote the Book of Revelation to encourage believers to remain faithful even when they are suffering. John described visions he had of Satan and his followers fighting against and killing believers. In the visions God causes many terrible things to happen on the earth to punish wicked people. In the end, Jesus defeats Satan and his followers. Then Jesus comforts those who were faithful. And the believers will live forever with God in the new heavens and earth.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by one of its traditional titles, "Revelation," "The Revelation of Jesus Christ," "The Revelation to Saint John," or "The Apocalypse of John." Or they may choose a possibly clearer title, such as "The Things that Jesus Christ Showed to John." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

What type of writing is the Book of Revelation?

John used a special style of writing to describe his visions. John described what he saw by using many symbols. This style of writing is called symbolic prophecy or apocalyptic literature. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Are the events of Revelation past or future?

Since early Christian times, scholars have interpreted Revelation differently. Some scholars think John described events that happened during his time. Some scholars think John described events happening from his time until

the return of Jesus. Other scholars think John described events that will happen in a short period of time just before Christ returns.

Translators will not need to decide how to interpret the book before they translate it. Translators should leave the prophecies in the tenses that are used in the ULT.

Are there any other books in the Bible like Revelation?

No other book of the Bible is like the Book of Revelation. But, passages in Ezekiel, Zechariah, and especially Daniel are similar in content and style to Revelation. It may be beneficial to translate Revelation at the same time as Daniel since they have some imagery and style in common.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Does one need to understand the Book of Revelation to translate it?

One does not need to understand all of the symbols in the Book of Revelation to translate it properly. Translators should not give possible meanings for the symbols or numbers in their translation. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Revelation in the ULT?

The scriptures use these words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating Revelation into English, the ULT uses the following principles:

- The meaning in two passages indicates moral holiness. Here, the ULT uses “holy.” (See: 14:12; 22:11)
- Usually the meaning in Revelation indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses “believer” or “believers.” (See: 5:8; 8:3, 4; 11:18; 13:7; 16:6; 17:6; 18:20, 24; 19:8; 20:9)
- Sometimes the meaning implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “sanctify,” “set apart,” “dedicated to,” or “reserved for.”

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

Periods of time

John referred to various periods of time in Revelation. For example, there are many references to forty-two months, seven years, and three and a half days. Some scholars think these time periods are symbolic. Other scholars think these are actual time periods. The translator should treat these time periods as referencing actual periods of time. It is then up to the interpreter to determine their significance or what they may represent.

The verb “Behold” which occurs often in the book of Revelation

Behold is a word that focuses the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say or do. The word literally means “look!” or “see!” However, in this case, the expression denotes the act of seeing figuratively by means of giving notice and attention. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully!” (See: [Metaphor](#))

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Revelation?

For the following verses, some modern versions of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT text has the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

- “I am the alpha and the omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty” (1:8). Some versions add the phrase “the Beginning and the End.”
- “the elders prostrated themselves and worshiped” (5:14). Some older versions read, “the twenty-four elders prostrated themselves and worshiped the one who lives forever and ever.”
- “so that a third of it [the earth] was burned up” (8:7). Some older versions do not include this phrase.
- “the one who is and who was” (11:17). Some versions add the phrase “and who is to come.”
- “they are blameless” (14:5). Some versions add the phrase “before the throne of God” (14:5).
- “the one who is and who was, the Holy One” (16:5). Some older versions read, “O Lord, the One who is and who was and who is to be.”
- “The nations will walk by the light of that city” (21:24). Some older versions read, “The nations that are saved will walk by the light of that city.”
- “Blessed are those who wash their robes” (22:14). Some older versions read “Blessed are those who do his commandments.”
- “God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city” (22:19). Some older versions read, “God will take away his share in the book of life and in the holy city.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

Revelation 1

Revelation 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Outline of Chapter One of Revelation

I. The Introduction to Revelation

A. The Prologue (1:1-8)

The Preface (1:1-3)

The Address and the Doxology (1:4-6)

The Book's Theme (1:7-8)

II. John's Vision of Christ

B. John's Appointment to Write the Book of Revelation (1:9-20)

The Initial Appointment to Write (1:9-11)

The Source of the Appointment (1:12-16)

The Appointment Repeated and Elaborated (1:17-20)

This chapter explains how the Book of Revelation records the vision John received on the island of Patmos.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page to make them easier to read. The ULT does this with the quoted words in verse 7.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven churches

John wrote this book to seven actual churches in Asia Minor, which is now the country of Turkey.

White

The Bible often speaks of something that belongs to a person as being "white." This is metaphor and metonym for that person living rightly and pleasing God. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#))

"Him who is, and who was, and who is to come"

God exists now. He has always existed. He will always exist. Your language may have a different way of saying this.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Blood

Blood is a metonym for death. Jesus “has released us from our sins by his blood.” John means that Jesus saved us from our sins by dying for us. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“He is coming with the clouds”

Jesus went into the clouds when he went up to heaven after God raised him from the dead. When Jesus returns, he will also be “with the clouds.” It is not clear whether he will be sitting or riding on clouds or coming in the clouds or “with the clouds” in some other way. Your translation should express this in a way that is natural in your language.

“One like a son of man”

This refers to Jesus. You should translate the words “son of man” using the same words as you did in the Gospels for when Jesus called himself the “Son of Man.”

“The angels of the seven churches”

The word “angels” here can also mean “messengers.” This might refer to heavenly beings, or to the messengers or leaders of these seven churches. John uses the same word “angel” (singular) in verse 1 and in many other places throughout the book. Your translation should also use the same word.

Revelation 1:1

This is} the revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)
This book has} the things that God presented to Jesus the Messiah (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **revelation**, you could express the same idea in another way.
 Alternate translation: "What God disclosed to Jesus Christ" or "The matters that God revealed to Jesus Christ" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

This is} the revelation of Jesus Christ (ULT)
This book has} the things that God presented to Jesus the Messiah (UST)

This phrase could mean: (1) this book is **revelation** that came to Jesus from God. Alternate translation: "revelation to Jesus Christ" (2) this book is **revelation** that came from Jesus to the author of the book, namely John. Alternate translation: "revelation from Jesus Christ" (See: [Possession](#))

his servants (ULT)
to his slaves (UST)

Here, **his servants** refers to people who believe in Jesus Christ and serve him as their Lord. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternative translation: "those who serve him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

what must soon happen (ULT)
These things by necessity will occur shortly (UST)

Alternate translation: "the events that must happen soon"

he made it known (ULT)
Jesus explained these things (UST)

The pronoun **he** here refers to **Jesus Christ**. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "Jesus communicated it" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

John (ULT)
John (UST)

John is the name of a man who was Jesus' disciple and one of the original twelve apostles. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to his servant John (ULT)
to me, his slave John (UST)

The Apostle **John** is referring to himself in the third person here. If this is confusing in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: "to me, John, his servant" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

¹ {This is} the revelation of Jesus Christ that God gave him to show his servants what must soon happen. And he made it known, having sent through his angel to his servant John,

UST

¹ {This book has} the things that God presented to Jesus the Messiah. God showed these things to him in order that he might reveal them to his slaves. These things by necessity will occur shortly. Jesus explained these things by sending his angel to me, his slave John.

Translation Words - ULT

- This is} the revelation
- of Jesus
- Christ
- God
- servants
- to...servant
- having sent
- angel
- John

Translation Words - UST

- This book has} the things that God presented
- to Jesus
- the Messiah
- God
- to...slaves
- slave
- sending
- angel
- John

Revelation 1:2

who testified (ULT)

As a witness} I, John, confirm (UST)

The subject of this sentence is the author John. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "John testified" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

about the word of God (ULT)

the message of God (UST)

Here, John uses **word** figuratively to refer to the message that God said by using words. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "the message that God spoke" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the testimony of Jesus Christ (ULT)

the personal attestation that Jesus the Messiah has revealed (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **testimony**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "what Jesus Christ testified" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the testimony of Jesus Christ (ULT)

the personal attestation that Jesus the Messiah has revealed (UST)

John is using the possessive form to describe the **testimony** that **Jesus Christ** has given about the personal revelation received directly from God and then given in prophecy by the book's author, John. If this is not clear in your language, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "the testimony that Jesus Christ has given him" (See: [Possession](#))

ULT

² who testified about the word of God and the testimony of Jesus Christ, as much as he saw.

UST

² {As a witness} I, John, confirm the message of God. I also verify the personal attestation that Jesus the Messiah has revealed, whatever I observed.

Translation Words - ULT

- testified
- testimony
- about...word of God
- of Jesus
- Christ

Translation Words - UST

- confirm
- the personal attestation
- the message...of God
- that Jesus the Messiah has revealed
- that Jesus the Messiah has revealed

Revelation 1:3

the one who reads (ULT) who reads (UST)

Here, **the one who reads** does not refer to a specific person. It refers to anyone **who reads** the words of the prophecy aloud or in public. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use a more natural phrase. Alternate translation: “anyone who reads aloud” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

of this prophecy (ULT) of this prophecy...of this prophecy (UST)

Here, **this prophecy** refers to this whole book that John is writing. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “of this book of prophecy”

who keep what is written in it (ULT) who obeys...the words that are written in this prophecy (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “who keep what John has written in it” or “who obey what they read in it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the time {is} near (ULT) for the chosen moment is approaching quickly {when the events described in this prophecy will happen (UST)

Here, **the time** refers specifically to the appointed time when God will make the prophecies in this book come true. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “the time for the fulfillment of what is written in this book is near” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for the time {is} near (ULT) for the chosen moment is approaching quickly {when the events described in this prophecy will happen (UST)

Here, John speaks figuratively of **time** as if it could be **near** something. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “the time will be soon” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {is}
- of...prophecy
- who keep
- is written
- time

Translation Words - UST

- How happy is the person...Happy is the one

ULT

³ Blessed {is} the one who reads and those who listen to the words of this prophecy and who keep what is written in it, for the time {is} near.

UST

³ How happy is the person who reads {these words of this prophecy} and any who hear these words of this prophecy. Happy is the one who obeys the words that are written in this prophecy, for the chosen moment is approaching quickly {when the events described in this prophecy will happen}.

- of this prophecy...of this prophecy
- who obeys
- the words that are written in this prophecy
- the chosen moment

Revelation 1:4

John (ULT) I, John (UST)

In this culture, letter writers would give their own names first, and they would refer to themselves in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the first person. If your language has a particular way of introducing the author of a letter, you could also use that. Alternate translation: "I, John, am writing this letter" or "From John" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

to the seven churches that {are} in Asia (ULT) am writing this letter} to the seven assemblies of believers in the province of Asia (UST)

In this culture, after giving their own names, letter writers would then say to whom they were writing, naming those people in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the second person. Alternate translation: "to you who are members of the seven churches that are in Asia" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Grace to you and peace from the one who is, and who was, and who is coming (ULT) May} God {continue to be} kind to you and {make you} peaceful. He exists, has always existed, and is coming {here in the future (UST)

In this culture, letter writers would offer a good wish for the recipient before introducing the main business of the letter. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing. Alternate translation: "May the one who is, and who was, and who is coming give you grace and peace" (See: [Blessings](#))

Grace to you and peace from the one who is, and who was, and who is coming (ULT) May} God {continue to be} kind to you and {make you} peaceful. He exists, has always existed, and is coming {here in the future (UST)

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the ideas of **grace** and **peace**, you could express the same idea in another way. Alternate translation: "May the one who is, and who was, and who is coming treat you kindly and give you peaceful relationships" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the one who is, and who was, and who is coming (ULT) He exists...has always existed, and is coming {here in the future (UST)

These three phrases all refer to God. If this might confuse your readers, you could say this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the God who is, and who was, and who is coming" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴ John, to the seven churches that {are} in Asia: Grace to you and peace from the one who is, and who was, and who is coming, and from the seven spirits who {are} before his throne,

UST

⁴ I, John, {am writing this letter} to the seven assemblies of believers in the province of Asia. {May} God {continue to be} kind to you and {make you} peaceful. He exists, has always existed, and is coming {here in the future}. {May} the seven spirits, which are before the throne of God, also {continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful}.

who is coming (ULT) and is coming...here in the future (UST)

Here, **is coming** has two possible connotations. The expression could refer to the the physical act of coming, when God will be present on earth for a final judgment. Alternatively, the phrase indicates the future tense, which seems more likely given the prior context describing the past and present times of God's existence. In other words, John uses **is coming** figuratively to state that God will exist in the future. If this would confuse your readers, you could say the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "who will still exist in the future" (See: [Metaphor](#))

seven spirits (ULT) the seven...spirits (UST)

The number **seven** is often used in the Bible as a symbol for completeness and perfection. Here, the **seven spirits** could refer to: (1) the Spirit of God, which is described with seven attributes in Isaiah 11:2. Alternate translation: "the sevenfold Holy Spirit" (2) seven individual spirits who serve God, which might be the "seven angels" in [8:2](#). Alternate translation: "the seven spirit beings" or "the seven angelic spirits" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [to...churches](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [Grace](#)
- [peace](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I, John](#)
- [assemblies of believers](#)
- [province of Asia](#)
- [May](#)} [God](#) {[continue to be](#)} [kind to](#)
- [and...make you](#)} [peaceful](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [the throne](#)

Revelation 1:5

and from Jesus Christ (ULT) May} Jesus the Messiah also {continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful (UST)

The first half of this verse continues the sentence from the previous verse. If you make this a new sentence, then you will need to repeat some of the information from the previous verse. Alternate translation: "And may grace be to you and peace also from Jesus Christ"

This phrase **the faithful witness** is a title describing Jesus Christ. The expression is probably an allusion to Psalm 89, specifically to Psalm 89:37. Likewise, every title that is describing Jesus Christ in this verse alludes to a portion of Psalm 89, including: **the firstborn from the dead** and **the ruler of the kings of the earth**. All the titles in this verse describe Jesus Christ as the one who completes God's promises given to David in 2 Samuel 7 and then affirmed again within Psalm 89 later. Therefore, the translator can indicate the presence of an Old Testament quotation or allusion here. (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

ULT

⁵ and from [Jesus Christ](#), the [faithful witness](#), the [firstborn](#) from the [dead](#) and the [ruler](#) of the [kings](#) of the [earth](#). To the one [who loves](#) us and has released us from our [sins](#) by his [blood](#)

UST

⁵ {[May](#)} [Jesus the Messiah](#) also {[continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful](#)}. He has [reliably told us](#) {[the matters from God](#)}. He is the [first one whom God caused to be alive again after he had died](#), and he is the [one who rules](#) the [kings](#) of the [earth](#). He is the one [who loves](#) us and who erased the record of [our sins](#). He released us by shedding [his blood](#) {[when he died on the cross](#)}.

the firstborn from the dead (ULT) He is the first one whom God caused to be alive again after he had died (UST)

This phrase **the firstborn from the dead** is an idiom meaning "the first person to die and become alive again". The term **firstborn** commonly refers to the first child actually to be born to parents and, therefore, the primary recipient of the parents' inheritance. The idiomatic expression apparently alludes to Psalm 89:27. However, every title describing Jesus Christ in this verse alludes to portions of Psalm 89, including: **the faithful witness** and **the ruler of the kings of the earth**. If your readers would not understand the phrase **the firstborn from the dead**, you could use plain language. Alternate translation: "the first person to be raised from death" or "the first person to come back to life" (See: [Idiom](#))

from the dead (ULT) whom God caused to be alive again after he had died (UST)

The word **dead** is a singular noun that refers to a group of people. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: "from those who are dead" or "from those who have died" (See: [Collective Nouns](#))

and the ruler of the kings of the earth (ULT) and he is the one who rules the kings of the earth (UST)

This phrase **the ruler of the kings of the earth** is a title of Jesus Christ that describes his future dominion over the earth. The expression **the ruler of the kings of the earth** alludes to Psalm 89:27. However, every title describing Jesus Christ in this verse alludes to portions of Psalm 89, including: **the faithful witness** and **the firstborn from the dead**. All the titles in this verse describe Jesus Christ as the one who completes God's promises given to David in 2 Samuel 7, which are then affirmed again in Psalm 89 later. Therefore, the translator can indicate the presence of an Old Testament quotation or allusion here. (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

To the one who loves us (ULT) **He is the one who loves us (UST)**

The second half of this verse begins a doxology that continues through the rest of this verse and all of the next verse. The doxology directly praises Jesus Christ personally. If you make this a new sentence, then you will need to state some of the information from the following verse that will then be repeated in verse 1:6 once again. Alternate translation: "May Jesus Christ, who loves us, receive glory and power always"

has released us from our sins (ULT) **who erased the record of our sins. He released us (UST)**

Here John uses **released** figuratively of forgiving people for their **sins**. If this would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternative translation: "has forgiven us for our sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

from our sins (ULT) **of our sins (UST)**

John uses **sins** figuratively to refer to the punishment for **sins**. He means that Jesus causes people who believe in him to escape eternal punishment for their sins. If this would confuse your readers, you could say the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "has released us from the punishment for our sins" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his blood (ULT) **his blood {when he died on the cross (UST)**

Here, **blood** figuratively represents the death of Christ on the cross. If this might confuse your readers, you could use a comparable word that stands for death or express the idea in non-figurative language. Alternate translation: "his death on the cross" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [sins](#)
- [blood](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [witness](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [from...dead](#)
- [ruler](#)
- [of...kings](#)
- [of...earth](#)
- [who loves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [May](#)} Jesus the Messiah...continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful
- [May](#)} Jesus the Messiah...continue to be kind to you and make you peaceful
- [earth](#)
- [who loves](#)
- [our sins](#)

- his blood...when he died on the cross
- reliably
- told us {the matters from God
- first one
- whom God caused to be alive again after he had died
- one who rules
- kings

Revelation 1:6

and has made us a kingdom, priests (ULT)
Jesus is the one who has caused us to become
people over whose lives God rules. He has also
made us to be priests (UST)

The subject of the sentence, as well as of the contents of this entire verse, is Jesus Christ. Thus, the UST makes the subject of Jesus explicit throughout the entire verse. (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

a kingdom (ULT)
to become people over whose lives God rules
(UST)

Here, **a kingdom** functions as a metaphor for the service that believers give to God. Believers in Jesus Christ serve God like citizens serve their ruling king in a kingdom. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate the meaning of kingdom explicitly. Alternate translation: “the citizens that God rules over” (See: [Metaphor](#))

priests (ULT)
to be priests (UST)

Here, **priests** represent people that God chose to offer sacrifices on behalf of others. The language here functions as a metaphor for the service that believers give to God. Believers in Jesus Christ benefit God like priests attended to God in the temple or the tabernacle of the Old Testament. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate the meaning of the office of priest explicitly. Alternate translation: “people that offer sacrifices” or “people that serve in the temple” (See: [Metaphor](#))

If your language does not use an abstract noun for these ideas, you could express the ideas behind the abstract nouns **kingdom**, **priests**, **glory**, and **power** in other ways. Alternate translation: “he has created us to aid him in his program and to be household custodians serving God, his Father. May Jesus have proper honor and recognized authority always” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for his God and Father (ULT)
who serve God, who is the father of Jesus (UST)

Here, **God** and **Father** refers to two persons of the Godhead, who exists in essence as a trinity of individual persons. The name **Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. Alternate translation: “for God, his Father” (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

to him {be} the glory and the power (ULT)
May Jesus receive glory and power (UST)

This is a wish or prayer. This could mean: (1) John prays that people honor Jesus Christ in light of or with respect to his **glory** and **power**. Alternate translation: “May all honor Jesus with glory and power.” (2) John prays that Jesus Christ will be honored and will be able to rule completely over everyone and everything. Alternate translation: “May Jesus accept glory and power throughout eternity.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

⁶ and has made us [a kingdom, priests](#) for his [God and Father](#)—to him {be} the [glory](#) and the [power forever](#). Amen.

UST

⁶ Jesus is the one who has caused us [to become people over whose lives God rules](#). He has also made us [to be priests who serve God, who is the father](#) of Jesus. May Jesus receive [glory and power throughout eternity](#). So be it!

the power (ULT) glory and power (UST)

Here, **the power** probably refers to Jesus Christ's authority as king. Thus, **the power** is a metonym that describes the rule of Jesus in his kingdom. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly.

Alternate translation: "the dominion" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a kingdom
- priests
- for...God...and Father
- be...glory
- power
- forever
- Amen

Translation Words - UST

- to become people over whose lives God rules
- to be priests
- who serve God...who is the father
- glory and power
- glory and power
- throughout eternity
- So be it

Revelation 1:7

Behold, he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, even those who pierced him, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of him (ULT)

Pay attention! Jesus is coming in the clouds. Everyone will see him, including those who killed him by nailing him {to a cross}. Every people group in the world will grieve when they see him coming (UST)

The clauses **Behold, he is coming with the clouds, every eye will see him, even those who pierced him, and will mourn because of him** are quotations from the Old Testament. It may be helpful to your readers to indicate this by setting off all of this material with quotation marks or with whatever other punctuation or convention your language uses to indicate a quotation. (See: [Quote Markings](#))

Behold (ULT)

Pay attention (UST)

Here, **Behold** is a word that focuses the attention of the listener on what the speaker is about to say or do. The word literally means “look!” or “see!” However, in this case, the expression denotes the act of seeing figuratively by means of giving notice and attention. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully!” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he is coming with the clouds (ULT)

Jesus is coming in the clouds (UST)

The pronoun **he** here refers to Jesus Christ. Jesus will come to the earth from above, or from the sky above, as seen originally in Daniel 7:14 and Daniel 7:27. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “Jesus is coming with the clouds” (See: [\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronoun\]\]](#))

he is coming with the clouds (ULT)

Jesus is coming in the clouds (UST)

Alternate translation: “He approaches on the clouds”

every eye (ULT)

Everyone (UST)

Since people see with their eyes, the word **eye** is used to refer to people. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “every person” or “everyone” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

⁷ Behold, he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, even those [who pierced](#) him, and all the [tribes](#) of the [earth will mourn](#) because of him. Yes, [Amen](#).

UST

⁷ Pay attention! Jesus is coming in the clouds. Everyone will see him, including those who [killed him by nailing him {to a cross}](#). Every [people group in the world will grieve](#) when they see him coming. [It will be like this for sure! So be it!](#)

even those who pierced him (ULT)
including those who killed him by nailing him {to a cross (UST)

Jesus' hands and feet were **pierced** when he was nailed to the cross. Here it refers to the people who killed him. If this would be misunderstood in your language, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "even those who bore a hole in him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

even those who pierced him (ULT)
including those who killed him by nailing him {to a cross (UST)

John is leaving out some of the words that a clause would need in many languages to be complete. If your readers might misunderstand this, you could supply these words from the previous clause. Alternate translation: "even those who pierced him will see him" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

all the tribes of the earth (ULT)
Every people group in the world (UST)

The phrase **all the tribes of the earth** describes all types of the earth's peoples by the category of every single **tribe**. If your language does not use singular nouns in that way, you can use a different expression. Alternate translation: "every ethnicity of the earth" or "every racial type of the earth" (See: [Collective Nouns](#))

Yes, Amen (ULT)
It will be like this for sure! So be it (UST)

Here, the phrase **Yes, Amen** has two words that mean basically the same thing. **Yes** affirms, emphasizes, and strengthens the following word, **Amen**. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: "Certainly it shall be thus!" or "Yes indeed, may this truly be so!" (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who pierced](#)
- [tribes](#)
- [of...earth](#)
- [will mourn](#)
- [Amen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [killed...by nailing him {to a cross](#)
- [people group](#)
- [in the world](#)
- [will grieve](#)
- [It will be like this for sure! So be it](#)

Revelation 1:8

says the Lord God

Here, **says the Lord God** indicates that the clauses that comes before and after this phrase are quotations. If this might confuse your readers, you could move this phrase to the beginning or end of the verse. Alternate translation: "The Lord God says, 'I am the alpha and the omega, the one who is, and who was, and who is coming, the Almighty.'"

the alpha and the omega (ULT)

The first and last letters of the Greek alphabet are **alpha** and **omega**. If your readers would misunderstand this, you may consider using the first and last letters of your language's alphabet. Alternate translation: "the A and the Z" or "the first thing and the last thing"

the alpha and the omega (ULT)

This could mean: (1) God the Father or Jesus Christ is the one who began all things and who will end all things. Alternate translation: "the one who began and will end all things" (2) God the Father or Jesus Christ is the one who has always lived and who always will live. Alternate translation: "the one who always existed and will always exist" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the alpha and the omega (ULT)

Here, **the alpha and the omega** refers by merism to the eternal nature of God the Father or that of Jesus Christ. A merism gives a sense of a totality by a description that references two extreme parts of a concept's whole. In this case, the parts at the extremities of the concept's whole are the first (**alpha**) and last (**omega**) letters of the Greek alphabet. The Greek alphabet is a type of metaphor for eternity, which has a beginning and a end normally in time, although here the idea is that of the eternal existence of God. (See: [Merism](#))

the alpha and the omega," says the Lord (ULT)

Some versions add the phrase "the Beginning and the End" after this statement. If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the phrase it uses. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to follow the example of the ULT. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

who is coming (ULT)

See how you translated the phrase **who is coming** in [verse 4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)

ULT

⁸ "I am the alpha and the omega," says [the Lord God](#), "the one who is, and who was, and who is coming, the [Almighty](#)."
[1]

UST

⁸ The [Lord God](#) says: "I am the first letter A, {the one who began all things}. I am the last letter Z, {the one who will cause all things to come to an end}. I am the one who exists, has always existed, and is coming {in the future}. I am the One who rules over everything and everyone. [I am God Almighty](#)."

- [God](#)
- [I am God Almighty](#)

Revelation 1:9

I, John—your brother and a fellow partaker in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance {that are} in Jesus (ULT)
I am your partnering brother John. {I also} share with you the distress and endurance necessary to all who are members of Jesus' kingdom (UST)

The Apostle **John** refers to himself in the third person here in this verse. If this is confusing in your language, you could translate this in the first person primarily or predominantly. Alternate translation: "I ... am experiencing affliction with you ..." (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

your brother (ULT)
your partnering brother (UST)

Here, **your** is plural and refers to the believers assembled among the seven churches mentioned in chapters 1–3 of this book. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could say this explicitly. Alternate translation: "the brother of you believers" (See: [Forms of You](#))

kingdom (ULT)
kingdom (UST)

Here, **kingdom** expresses the idea that Christ rules and will rule over the lives of believers. If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea of **kingdom**, you could express the same idea in some phrase that uses the verb "rule." Alternate translation: "realm where Christ rules" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

because of the word of God (ULT)
because I kept telling people about God's message (UST)

John uses **word of God** figuratively to describe the gospel message that came from God and that John proclaimed by using words. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "because of the message from God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the testimony of Jesus (ULT)
and what Jesus personally revealed to me (UST)

John is using the possessive form to describe the **testimony** about **Jesus** that John proclaimed. If this is not clear in your language, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "the testimony that I proclaimed about Jesus" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [brother](#)
- [suffering](#)

ULT

⁹ I, [John](#)—your [brother](#) and a fellow partaker in the [suffering](#) and [kingdom](#) and [patient endurance](#) {that are} in [Jesus](#)—was on the island [called](#) Patmos because of the [word of God](#) and the [testimony of Jesus](#).

UST

⁹ I am your [partnering brother John](#). {I also} share with you the [distress](#) and [endurance necessary to all who are members of Jesus' kingdom](#). I was on the Island of [Patmos](#) because [I kept telling people about God's message and what Jesus personally revealed to me](#).

- kingdom
- patient endurance
- that are} in Jesus
- Jesus
- of Jesus (2)
- called
- word of God
- testimony

Translation Words - UST

- partnering brother
- John
- and what Jesus personally revealed to me
- distress
- endurance necessary
- to all who are members of Jesus
- to all who are members of Jesus
- and what Jesus personally revealed to me (2)
- kingdom
- Patmos
- I kept telling people about...God's...message

Revelation 1:10

I was in the Spirit (ULT) God awakened my spirit ecstatically {to perceive revelation (UST)

Here, **in the Spirit** could mean: (1) God's Spirit (the Holy Spirit) took control of John in order to influence John to receive divine revelation. Alternate translation: "I was influenced by the Spirit of God" or "God's Spirit took control of me" (2) God caused John's spirit to be in a state so that he could perceive revelation. Alternate translation: "God influenced my spirit" or "God took control of my spirit" (See: [Idiom](#))

the Lord's day (ULT) Sunday, the day {that believers gather to worship} the Lord (UST)

Here, **the Lord's day** refers specifically to Sunday, which was the day of the week when believers gathered to worship together in John's time. Some scholars think that **the Lord's day** here refers to the future time of God's judgment called "the day of the Lord" throughout the Bible. However, this exact phrase is not used anywhere else in the Bible. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "Sunday, the Lord's day" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a loud voice like a trumpet (ULT) someone speaking}. His voice was loud like the sound of a trumpet {being blown (UST)

The **voice** was very **loud** so that the noise sounded **like a trumpet**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "a voice as loud as a trumpet being blown" (See: [Simile](#))

a loud voice (ULT) someone speaking}. His voice was loud like the sound of a trumpet {being blown (UST)

Here, **a loud voice** figuratively refers to the person speaking the **voice**, which is later revealed in the context to be the divine voice of Jesus Christ. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "a great sound of one speaking" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Spirit](#)
- [Lord's](#)
- [day](#)
- [a...voice](#)
- [like](#)
- [a trumpet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sunday...day...that believers gather to worship} the Lord](#)

ULT

¹⁰ I was in [the Spirit](#) on the [Lord's day](#), and I heard behind me a loud [voice like a trumpet](#),

UST

¹⁰ On [Sunday](#), the [day {that believers gather to worship} the Lord](#), God awakened my spirit ecstatically {to [perceive revelation](#)}. Then I heard behind me {[someone speaking](#)}. His voice was loud like the sound of a [trumpet {being blown}](#).

- Sunday...day {that believers gather to worship} the Lord
- was loud like...of a trumpet...being blown
- was loud like...of a trumpet...being blown
- God awakened my spirit ecstatically...to perceive revelation
- someone speaking}. His voice...the sound

Revelation 1:11

saying (ULT)

The voice} said {to me (UST)

Here, **saying** introduces a quotation. What follows is what the **voice** of the previous verse actually said. Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: “that voice said” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

Smyrna...Pergamum...Thyatira...Sardis...

Philadelphia...Laodicea (ULT)

Smyrna...Pergamum...Thyatira...Sardis...

Philadelphia...and Laodicea (UST)

These are names of cities in the region of western Asia Minor that are in the modern area of southwestern Turkey today. The logic of the order seems to begin with Ephesus, the most important city at the time and then proceed to move clockwise until it reaches the city that is the furthest south at Laodicea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a scroll
- send it
- to...churches
- Ephesus

Translation Words - UST

- a scroll
- send it
- assemblies of believers
- the cities of Ephesus

ULT

¹¹ saying, “Write what you see in a scroll and send it to the seven churches—to Ephesus and to Smyrna and to Pergamum and to Thyatira and to Sardis and to Philadelphia and to Laodicea.”

UST

¹¹ {The voice} said {to me}: “Write on a scroll what you see, and send it to the seven assemblies of believers. {Send it to the believers} in the cities of Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea. ”

Revelation 1:12

the voice that (ULT) who was talking to me (UST)

Here, **voice** refers figuratively to the person speaking. The context indicates that Jesus Christ is the one speaking here. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly.
Alternate translation: “who” (See: [Metonymy](#))

seven golden lampstands (ULT) seven golden lamp holders (UST)

Here, **seven golden lampstands** refers to seven golden lamp holders that are place holding stands for portable oil lamps. These seven lamp holders are made of gold or, at the very least, were plated with gold. Apparently these lamp holders represent the seven assemblies of believers in the seven cities mentioned in the previous verse. The number **seven** is often used in the Bible as a symbol for completeness and perfection, although the context would simply suggest that the number is required by the amount of the churches addressed in Revelation chapters two and three. Alternate translation: “seven golden portable oil lamp-holding stands” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

ULT

¹² And I turned around to see the voice that was speaking with me, and having turned, I saw seven golden lampstands,

UST

¹² {When I heard this voice,} I turned my head to see who was talking to me. Then, having turned, I observed seven golden lamp holders.

Translation Words - ULT

- I turned around
- having turned
- voice
- golden
- lampstands

Translation Words - UST

- I turned my head
- Then, having turned
- who was talking to me
- golden
- lamp holders

Revelation 1:13

there was one} like a son of man (ULT)
there was someone who looked like a human
{in his form (UST)}

The expression **like a son of man** describes a human figure that recalls the same Aramaic phrase in Daniel 7, specifically within Daniel 7:13. The point of this comparison is that the figure John saw looked like a human. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “a being that looked like a man” or “a figure that resembled a human being” (See: [Simile](#))

a golden sash (ULT)
a golden strap (UST)

A **sash** was a strip of cloth worn around the chest. This one may have been woven from golden threads. Clearly **sash** is not a belt that is worn around the waist specifically. Alternate translation: “strap” or “band”

Translation Words - ULT

- of...lampstands
- a son of man
- wearing
- golden
- having been wrapped around

Translation Words - UST

- lamp holders
- a human {in his form
- He wore a robe
- fastened
- golden

ULT

¹³ and in the middle of the [lampstands](#) {there was one} like [a son of man](#), [wearing](#) a robe reaching to his feet and with a [golden](#) sash [having been wrapped around](#) {his} chest.

UST

¹³ In the midst of the [lamp holders](#), there was someone who looked like [a human {in his form}](#). [He wore a robe](#) that reached down to his feet. He also [fastened](#) a [golden](#) strap across his chest.

Revelation 1:14

Now his head and hair {were} white as wool—white as snow (ULT)

The point of this comparison is that the **head and hair** were like **wool** and **snow**, which are both very white. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “Now his head and hair were very white, like the white color of wool and snow” (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

¹⁴ Now his [head](#) and hair {were} white [as](#) wool—white [as](#) snow—and his eyes {were} [as](#) a flame [of](#) fire,

UST

¹⁴ The {pale} hair on his [head](#) was [like](#) gleaming white wool [or like](#) white snow. His eyes [were](#) {bright} [like](#) a fiery flame.

were} white as wool—white as snow (ULT) pale...was like gleaming white wool or like white snow (UST)

John uses **white as** in order to emphasize how white the head and hair were. If your language does not use repetition to do this, you could use one phrase and provide emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: “extremely white like wool and snow” (See: [Doublet](#))

wool (ULT)

wool (UST)

The word **wool** refers to the hair of a sheep or goat that can often be very white. If your readers would not be familiar with this material, you could use the name of a type of fur or fabric in your area that is known to be very white, or you could use a general expression. Alternate translation: “white fabric” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

his eyes {were} as a flame of fire (ULT) His...eyes...were {bright} like a fiery flame (UST)

The point of this comparison is that the **eyes** were like **a flame of fire**, which full of light and very bright. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “his eyes were glowing like a flame of fire” or “his eyes blazed like a flame of fire” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [were} as](#) (3)
- [snow](#)
- [of](#) fire

Translation Words - UST

- [on...head](#)
- [like](#)
- [or like](#) (2)
- [were {bright} like](#) (3)
- [white snow](#)
- [fiery](#)

Revelation 1:15

his feet {were} like polished bronze (ULT)

The point of this comparison is that the **feet** were like **polished bronze**, which is very shiny. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “his feet were very shiny like polished bronze” or “his feet were reflecting light like polished bronze” (See: [Simile](#))

were} like polished bronze, as having been refined in a furnace (ULT) shone like bronze that has been refined in a furnace (UST)

Here, **furnace** refers to a strong container for holding a very hot fire. People would put metal like **bronze** in it, and the hot fire would make the metal **refined** by melting away any impurities that were in the metal. Do not translate this verse in a way that would imply that the bronze was first polished and then refined in a furnace, which reverses the actual order of events. Alternate translation: “like bronze that has been purified in a hot furnace and then polished” (See: [Order of Events](#))

his voice as the sound of many rushing waters (ULT) his voice resonated like the noise of a great river of rushing water (UST)

The point of this comparison is that **the sound of his voice** was like the sound of a large and fast flowing river or of a large waterfall with loud waves of constant water flow, which is very loud. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: “his voice was very loud like the sound of rushing waters” (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

¹⁵ and his feet {were} like polished bronze, as having been refined in a furnace, and his voice as the sound of many rushing waters,

UST

¹⁵ His feet shone like bronze that has been refined in a furnace. {When he spoke,} his voice resonated like the noise of a great river of rushing water.

Translation Words - ULT

- were} like
- as
- as (2)
- polished bronze
- a furnace
- voice
- the sound (2)
- of...rushing waters

Translation Words - UST

- shone like
- that has been refined in a furnace
- resonated like the noise of a great river of rushing water (2)
- bronze
- that has been refined in a furnace
- voice
- resonated like the noise of a great river of rushing water (2)
- resonated like the noise of a great river of rushing water

Revelation 1:16

and having (ULT)

The one who looked like a human} was holding (UST)

Here, the subject of **and having** should be assumed from earlier in verse 1:13 rendered one **like a son of man**. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "and the one like the son of man had"

and having seven stars in his right hand (ULT)

The one who looked like a human} was holding seven stars in his right hand (UST)

Here, **seven stars** refer to "the angels of the seven churches" as stated explicitly in 1:20. The symbolism of Jesus Christ holding stars could refer to: (1) Christ having absolute authority over the churches symbolized by the stars. Alternate translation: "and exercising authority over the stars" (2) Christ keeping the churches symbolized by the stars secure and safe from death or evil so as to have eternal life as described in John 10:28. Alternate translation: "and keeping seven stars in his right hand" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

ULT

¹⁶ and having seven stars in his [right hand](#) and a sharp, double-edged [sword](#) coming out of his mouth and his [face](#) shining [as](#) the sun at its strength.

UST

¹⁶ {The one who looked like a human} was holding seven stars in his [right hand](#). [A sword](#) with two sharp edges was extending from his mouth. His [face](#) shone [as bright as](#) the sun during the middle of the day.

and a sharp, double-edged sword coming out of his mouth (ULT)

Here, the **sword** refers to a sword that is sharpened on both edges so that it can cut in both directions on both sides. Only the blade of the sword protruded from Christ's mouth since the imagery is most likely a metaphor for the spoken word as being figuratively sharp and able to pierce things. The symbolism was probably inspired by the fact that Roman **double-edged** swords were shaped like human tongues in their forms. Thus, **double-edged** swords in the shape of human tongues apparently signify spoken words coming from the human mouth. The translator may wish to indicate this imagery in his translation of the symbolism. Alternate translation: "a sharp, double-edged sword was protruding from his mouth" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

shining as the sun at its strength (ULT)

shone as bright as the sun during the middle of the day (UST)

Here, the simile in the phrase **shining as the sun at its strength** expresses a very bright appearance. Thus, the face of Jesus Christ appeared very bright in a similar manner to the way that the sun shines in its full force during the middle of the day. If your readers would misunderstand this, you could use an equivalent comparison or express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "shining as bright as the noonday sun" or "shining as bright as the mid-day sun" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [right...hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [a...sword](#)
- [face](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [right...hand](#)

- hand
- A sword
- face
- as bright as

Revelation 1:17

I fell at his feet as a dead man (ULT)
I fell down in front of his feet as though I were a corpse (UST)

This phrase describes John laying down with his face toward the ground in a common gesture that expresses a deferential respect for a person before whom one bows down before. This symbolic action or cultural gesture of obeisance signifies great respect, reverential awe, and maybe even some fear at the person who receives the symbolic gesture of the bow. John was probably very frightened and was showing Jesus great respect by the customary act of a dramatic bow before the presence of Jesus. If the translator has a similar symbolic action or cultural gesture to indicate obeisance in the culture of the target language, then perhaps the similar cultural action should be incorporated in the translation. Alternate translation: “fell down at his feet like a dead man to show his fear and respect” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

and he placed his right hand on me (ULT)
Then Jesus put his right hand on me (UST)

Here, the subject of **and he placed his right hand on me** should be assumed from earlier in the context at verse [1:13](#). Verse [1:13](#) mentions one **like a son of man** as a description of Jesus Christ. If this might confuse your readers, you could explicitly state the subject as Jesus. Alternate translation: “Jesus placed his right hand on me” (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

and he placed his right hand on me (ULT)
Then Jesus put his right hand on me (UST)

Here, the phrase **and he placed his right hand on me** signifies a cultural gesture or symbolic action that expresses comfort and assurance for the person who is in need of encouragement at the moment of fear. The symbolic action has the accompanying verbal expression of **Do not be afraid** so as to illustrate the significance and symbolism of the cultural gesture. Alternate translation: “and he touched me with his right hand” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

I am the first and the last (ULT)
I am the First One {who began all things}. I am also the Last One {who will cause all things to end} (UST)

Here, **the first and the last** refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. He existed before anything else and he will continue to exist after everything else is gone. In this expression, **first** refers to what is before everything and **last** refers to what is after everything. This is similar to the use of alpha and omega in [verse 8](#). If this might confuse your readers, you could use an equivalent expression or plain language. Alternate translation: “the one who existed before everything and will exist after everything” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [a dead man](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And when I saw him, I fell at his feet [as a dead man](#), and he placed his [right hand](#) on me, saying, “Do not [be afraid](#). I am the first and the last

UST

¹⁷ When I saw him, I fell down in front of his feet [as though I were a corpse](#). Then Jesus put his [right hand](#) on me and said to me, “Do not [be afraid](#)! I am the First One {who began all things}. I am also the Last One {who will cause all things to end}.

- right hand
- Do...be afraid

Translation Words - UST

- as though
- I were a corpse
- right hand
- Do...be afraid

Revelation 1:18

Here, **the one who lives** refers to God. It could refer to: (1) God possessing eternal life in himself. Alternate translation: “the living one” (2) God being the source of life. Alternate translation: “the one who gives life” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

behold (ULT)

observe how (UST)

See how you translated **behold** in [Revelation 1:7](#). Here, it is more natural to avoid the usual “pay attention” in the UST. The translator should probably be less literal in the translation here of **behold** due to the unique context (See: [Metaphor](#))

I have the keys of death and of Hades (ULT)

I have...power over death itself and I control the place of the dead (UST)

John uses **keys** here figuratively to refer to authority or power. Just as **keys** have the ability to control the opening or locking of a door, so Jesus has the power to control death and Hades. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “I have the power over death and over Hades” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I have the keys of death and of Hades (ULT)

I have...power over death itself and I control the place of the dead (UST)

This clause implies that Jesus can give life to those who have died and let them out of **Hades**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express that explicitly. Alternate translation: “I have the power to give life to people who have died and to let them out of Hades” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

of death and of Hades (ULT)

death itself and I control the place of the dead (UST)

Hades here refers to the world of people who have died and is commonly transliterated directly from the Greek language, as in the ULT. **Hades** signifies the place or location where deceased individuals go after they die within the cultural world of Greek mythology. The distinction between death and **Hades** is not great, but there is a slight difference. Death indicates the state of being dead. However, **Hades** represents the place where the spirits of dead people reside. Thus, the translator might indicate the slight differences between the two words in this verse here when translating the expression. Alternate translation: “of death’s state and of death’s location” (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who lives](#)
- [live](#) (2)
- [dead](#)
- [of death](#)
- [forever](#)
- [and} ever](#)
- [of Hades](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and the one [who lives](#); and I became [dead](#), but behold, I [live forever {and} ever](#), and I have the keys [of death](#) and [of Hades](#).

UST

¹⁸ I am [the God who inherently lives](#). Although [I was once dead](#), observe how I am [now alive forever](#). I have power over [death itself](#) and I control the [place of the dead](#).

Translation Words - UST

- the God who inherently lives
- now alive (2)
- I was once dead
- death itself
- forever
- forever
- place of the dead

Revelation 1:19

**what you have seen and what is and what is about to happen after these things (ULT)
what you saw {just now}. Also write down the matters which are happening now as well as those things that will happen in the future (UST)**

Here, **what you have seen and what is and what is about to happen after these things** represents the three-part division of the entire Book of Revelation. This repetitive style of speaking or writing is called a "litany." The command to John requires John to write everything down in the book with no exceptions from what he is required to write. If it would help your readers, you could indicate the use of this verse here as a natural three-part division of the book of Revelation. Alternatively, you may wish to reflect in the translation of the three different clauses with their different verb tenses. Alternate translation: "that which you are seeing, that which exists now, and that which will happen afterwards" (See: [Litany](#))

ULT

¹⁹ Therefore, write down what you have seen and what is and what is about to happen after these things.

UST

¹⁹ Thus, write down what you saw {just now}. Also write down the matters which are happening now as well as those things that will happen in the future.

Revelation 1:20

The mystery of the seven stars (ULT) The symbolic meaning of the seven stars...is this (UST)

Here, **the mystery** refers to a secret or symbolic meaning of a symbolic vision of the **seven stars**. If this might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "the secret meaning of the seven stars" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

of the seven stars (ULT) of the seven stars (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [verse 16](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

lampstands (ULT) lamp holders (UST)

See how you translated this word in [verse 12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the angels of the seven churches (ULT) angels among the seven assemblies of believers (UST)

Here, **the angels of the seven churches** could refer to: (1) heavenly angels who protect the seven churches, or (2) human messengers who are sent to the seven churches. In the second case, **the angels** could either be representatives who lead among each of the seven churches or, alternatively, the actual messengers who went from John bearing the book of Revelation to the seven churches mentioned in [verse 11](#). The translator should retain the literal transliteration of **angel** to allow for both possible interpretations, but he should give a marginal note to explain the two possible understandings. Alternate translation: "the seven messengers of the seven churches" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the seven...of...churches (ULT) of the seven...assemblies of believers (UST)

See how you translated this in [verse 11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [mystery](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [golden](#)
- [lampstands](#)
- [lampstands](#)
- [the angels](#)
- [of...churches](#)
- [the...churches](#)

ULT

²⁰ The [mystery](#) of the seven stars that you saw in my [right hand](#), and the seven [golden lampstands](#): The seven stars are [the angels](#) of the seven [churches](#), and the seven [lampstands](#) are the seven [churches](#)."

1:8 ^[1]

UST

²⁰ The [symbolic meaning](#) of the seven stars that you saw in my [right hand](#) and of the seven [golden lamp holders](#) is [this](#): The seven stars represent [angels](#) among the seven [assemblies of believers](#). The seven [lamp holders](#) represent the seven [assemblies of believers](#)."

Translation Words - UST

- symbolic meaning...is this
- right hand
- golden
- lamp holders
- lamp holders
- angels
- assemblies of believers
- assemblies of believers

Revelation 2

Revelation 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Outline of Chapters Two and Three of Revelation

I. The Current Condition of the Churches (2:1-3:22)

A. The Letter to Ephesus (2:1-7)

B. The Letter to Smyrna (2:8-11)

C. The Letter to Pergamum (2:12-17)

D. The Letter to Thyatira (2:18-29)

E. The Letter to Sardis (3:1-6)

F. The Letter to Philadelphia (3:7-13)

G. The Letter to Laodicea (3:14-22)

Chapters 2 and 3 together are usually called the “seven letters to the seven churches.” You may wish to set each letter apart. The reader can then easily see that they are separate letters.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted words of verse 27.

Special concepts in this chapter

The personal knowledge that Jesus expresses about the churches

Jesus uses the phrase **I know** to express his personal familiarity and knowledge at times of some of the churches mentioned in Revelation chapters two and three. The phrase **I know** is an idiom for expressing knowledge of the present situation and the types of circumstances that the Christians experienced among the various churches mentioned in chapters two and three of the book of Revelation. The idiomatic expression **I know** indicates an assurance that Jesus understands the current conditions or circumstances in which the Christians were living. Although usually positive in a tone of assurance (see Revelation 2:2,9,13,19; 3:8), the phrase **I know** sometimes expresses a critical or negative assessment that Jesus affirms (see Revelation 3:1,15). Thus, the expression **I know** affirms more than simply a knowledge of circumstances on the part of Jesus, but the phrase also asserts a claim to be in a position to make a valid judgment as an impartial arbiter who might be critical at times. Therefore, the translator may wish to provide for his readership a textual note that explains the phrase **I know** as meaning something more than simply the awareness that Jesus has of the current religious, social, and moral conditions for the Christians which are addressed by Jesus (see Revelation chapters two and three). Alternate translation: “I am aware of the fact that” (See: [Idiom](#))

The use of the second person singular to refer to a plural group of people

The second person pronouns and the second person individuals addressed throughout chapters two and three of the book of Revelation are often singular in their number, but they are plural in their references. Technically, every

message to each of the seven churches mentioned in Revelation chapters two and three are addressed to a singular, individual **angel**, so that one would naturally expect singular references in the language of the letters. Thus, many of the second person references in the verbs and the pronouns, although singular in their literal sense, are plural in their implied references to the believers of the church that receives the message in the letter. If the singular form of the second person address and the second person verbal references would not be natural in your language, then perhaps the translator could use the plural forms of the second person, or “you” (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

Poverty and wealth

The Christians in Smyrna were poor because they did not have much money. But they were rich spiritually because God would reward them for their suffering. (See: [spirit, wind, breath](#))

“The devil is about to”

People were about to take some of the Christians in Smyrna and throw them into prison and even kill some of them ([Revelation 2:10](#)). John does not say who these people were. But he does speak of them harming the Christians as if Satan himself were harming them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Balaam, Balak, and Jezebel

Balaam, Balak, and Jezebel were people who lived long before Jesus was born. They all tried to harm the Israelites either by cursing them or by making them want to stop obeying God.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches”

The writer knew that almost all of his readers had physical ears. The ear here is a metonym for hearing what God says and desiring to obey him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The angel of the church”

The word **angel** here can also mean “messenger” or “representative.” This might refer to the messenger or a representative leader of the church. See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#).

“Says these things”

The verses with the phrase **says these things** can be difficult to translate. They do not make complete sentences. You may need to add “These are” to the beginning of these verses. Jesus uses these words to speak of himself as if he were speaking of another person. Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking of other people. Jesus began speaking in [Revelation 1:17](#). He continues to speak through the end of Chapter 3. The phrase **says these things** indicates that the words that come after this expression are a direct quotation. Use a phrase that makes this clear in your language. Alternate translation: “says this message” or “says the following words” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

Revelation 2:1

To the angel of the church in Ephesus write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the assembly of believers in the city of Ephesus (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Ephesus**. **Ephesus** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

To the angel (ULT) to the angel (UST)

Here, **the angel** could refer to: (1) a heavenly angel who protects the church in Ephesus, or (2) a human messenger who is sent to the church in Ephesus as a representative leader. In this case, **the angel** could either be a representative leader of the church in Ephesus or the actual messenger who went from John bearing the book of Revelation to the church in Ephesus. See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT) this message...says the following (UST)

Here, **says these things** indicates that the words that come after this phrase are a direct quotation. Use a phrase that makes this clear in your language. Alternate translation: "says this message" or "says the following words" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

The one who holds the seven stars in his right hand, who walks in the midst of the seven golden lampstands (ULT)

Here, the implied subject of the two clauses is Jesus Christ. Jesus is the assumed subject from the context established in the previous chapter one. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the intended reference to Jesus explicitly. Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ, the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand, who walks in the midst of the seven golden lampstands" (See: [Pronouns — When to Use Them](#))

stars (ULT) stars (UST)

These **stars** are symbols. The **stars** represent the seven angels of the seven churches. Note the translations of **stars** in [Revelation 1:16](#) and [Revelation 1:20](#). The figure of speech is that of symbolic language which is common to the Book of Revelation. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

of the seven golden lampstands (ULT) the seven golden lamp holders (UST)

The **golden lampstands** are symbols that represent the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers. See how you translated **lampstands** in [Revelation 1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

ULT

¹ "To the **angel** of the **church** in **Ephesus** write: 'The one who holds the seven stars in his **right hand**, **who walks** in the midst of the seven **golden lampstands**, says these things:

UST

¹ Write {this message} to the **angel** of the **assembly of believers** in the **city of Ephesus**: "The one who holds the seven stars in his **right hand** and who **walks** among the seven **golden lamp holders** says the following:

Translation Words - ULT

- To...angel
- of...church
- Ephesus
- right hand
- who walks
- golden
- of...lampstands

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- assembly of believers
- city of Ephesus
- right hand
- walks
- golden
- lamp holders

Revelation 2:2

I know (ULT)

I am aware of (UST)

For the expression **I know** that occurs often in chapters two and three of the book of Revelation (see Revelation 2:2,9,13,19; 3:1,8,15), please see the explanatory note for **I know** in the chapter two introduction.

your} hard labor (ULT)

you have worked {for me (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **labor**, you can express it with the verb “to work”. Alternate translation: “that you laboured very hard” or “that you worked very hard” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

patient endurance (ULT)

have patiently endured {difficult times (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **endurance**, you can express it with the verb “endure.” Alternate translation: “that you patiently suffered” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your works and {your} hard labor and your patient endurance, and that you are not able to tolerate evil people, and you have tested those who call themselves apostles but are not, and you have found them {to be} false (ULT)
all that you have done. {I am aware of how hard} you have worked {for me}. {I am aware of how} you have patiently endured {difficult times}. {I am also aware of the fact that} you do not accept wicked people and that you evaluate the people who claim to be Representatives that Jesus sent. {However, such people are} not Representatives that Jesus sent, just as you have discovered them to be lying (UST)

The second person pronouns and the second person individuals addressed throughout this verse and throughout chapters two and three are often singular in their number, but they are plural in their references. Technically, every message to each of the seven churches mentioned in Revelation chapters two and three are addressed to a singular, individual **angel** (see the previous verse), so that one would naturally expect singular references in the language of the letters. Thus, many of the second person references in the verbs and the pronouns, although singular in their literal sense, are plural in their implied references to the believers of the church that receives the message in the letter. If the singular form of the second person address and the second person verbal references would not be natural in your language, then perhaps the translator could use the plural forms of the second person, or “you” (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

evil people (ULT)

wicked people (UST)

Here, **evil people** translates directly an adjective in the Greek that signifies simply “wicked” or **evil**. Thus, the translator must supply a noun that the adjective is describing through an assumed implication. The natural

ULT

² “I know your **works** and {your} **hard labor** and your **patient endurance**, and that you are not able to **tolerate evil people**, and **you have tested** those who call themselves **apostles** but are not, and you have found them {to be} false;

UST

² “I am aware of all that you **have done**. {I am aware of how hard} **you have worked {for me}**. {I am aware of how} you **have patiently endured {difficult times}**. {I am also aware of the fact that} you do not **accept wicked people** and that **you evaluate** the people who claim to be **Representatives that Jesus sent**. {However, such people are} not **Representatives that Jesus sent**, just as you have discovered them to be lying.

assumption for the noun to be supplied would be human individuals who were people in the surrounding community of those being addressed here. Alternate translation: “wayward people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

you have found them {to be} false (ULT) **have discovered them to be lying (UST)**

Here, **you have found them** indicates the literal translation of the Greek. However, the sense of **found** is something like “to understand” or simply to come to the knowledge about a certain reality. The understood reality is actually the falsehood of the claim of certain people to be apostles. Alternate translation: “you have recognized those people to be false apostles”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I know](#)
- [works](#)
- [hard labor](#)
- [hard labor and](#)
- [patient endurance](#)
- [to tolerate](#)
- [evil people](#)
- [you have tested](#)
- [apostles](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I am aware of](#)
- [all that...have done](#)
- [accept](#)
- [wicked people](#)
- [you evaluate](#)
- [Representatives that Jesus sent](#)
- [you have worked...for me](#)
- [you have worked...for me...I am aware of how](#)
- [have patiently endured...difficult times](#)

Revelation 2:3

and you have patient endurance (ULT)
I am aware of how} you have patiently endured (UST)

Here, **and you have patient endurance** implies a missing affirmation of **I know** from the previous verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternative translation: "I realize that you have patient endurance" or "I recognize that you have patient endurance" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

because of my name (ULT)
for my sake (UST)

Here, **name** is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ, since Jesus uses **name** here to refer to himself. The believers in Ephesus are suffering persecution and difficult circumstances for the sake of Jesus Christ as believers in him. The assembly in Ephesus suffers for the sake of the person and message of Jesus Christ within their society. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you believe in my name" or "because you believe in me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

have not grown weary (ULT)
you have worked very hard to the point of exhaustion, but} you have not become so tired {that you would give up your labors (UST)

Being discouraged is spoken of as growing **weary**. The metaphor relates the notion of quitting an action with becoming tired since often people stop an action if they are tired. Alternate translation: "you have not become discouraged" or "you have not quit" (See: [Metaphor](#))

have not grown weary (ULT)
you have worked very hard to the point of exhaustion, but} you have not become so tired {that you would give up your labors (UST)

Here, **have not grown weary** is a litotes expression that expresses emphasis by negating the opposite statement. In this case, Jesus emphasizes the act of persevering and not giving up despite obstacles by stating the opposite notion. The believers at Ephesus had persevered in trials but did not give up. Thus, they did not grow **weary** or become tired, but rather they continued to try hard. See the previous note about the metaphor in the figure of speech. Alternate translation: "you have not grown tired" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [patient endurance](#)
- [have suffered](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [patiently endured](#)
- [have suffered](#)

ULT

³ and you have [patient endurance](#) and [have suffered](#) because of my [name](#) and have not grown weary.

UST

³ {I am aware of how} you have [patiently endured](#). {I am also aware of how} you [have suffered](#) for my [sake](#). {I am also aware of the fact that you have worked very hard to the point of exhaustion, but} you have not become so tired {that you would give up your labors}.

- [sake](#)

Revelation 2:4

I have against you that (ULT)
I must criticize you {about this matter...}
original love {that you had (UST)}

Here **I have against you that** indicates a negative, critical sentiment. It expresses the idea of a critical attitude in the person speaking, meaning something like: "I have something against you" or "there is something about you that I disapprove of". Jesus is leaving out a word in the idiomatic expression that some languages would need in order for a clause to be complete. However, the following words in the context describe the matter of contention that Jesus is angry about. If your language requires an explanation of what Jesus is taking issue with the Ephesian church about, then you can supply it from the context. Alternate translation: "I disapprove of you because" or "I have a criticism to make of you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

⁴ But I have against you that you have left behind your first [love](#).

UST

⁴ Nevertheless, I must criticize you {about this matter}: you have abandoned your [original love](#) {that you [had](#) when you first began to believe}.

you have left behind your first love (ULT)
you have abandoned your...original love...that you had...when you first began to believe (UST)

To stop doing something is spoken of as leaving it **behind**. Here, **love** represents an object that can be abandoned. Here, the expression presents a metaphor expressing **love** as an object that can be forsaken. Alternate translation: "you have stopped loving me as you did at the beginning" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [original love...that you had](#)

Revelation 2:5

from where you have fallen (ULT) how you used to love me (UST)

The notion of the church no longer loving as much as they used to love is spoken of as having **fallen** in the sense of “how far you have fallen from your original location”. Here, “falling” from a standing location is a metaphor for abandoning an earlier love and devotion for a person, in this case Jesus. Here, the metaphorical expression describes a tremendous decline in the love for Jesus among the Christians at Ephesus. Alternate translation: “how much you have changed” or “how much you once loved me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

and do the first works (ULT)

Here, **the first works** is a metonym that describes the behavior or way of life of the Ephesian believers earlier in their Christian practice. Earlier in the Christian way of life of the Ephesian believers they made greater efforts in their stronger devotion for Jesus. Alternate translation: “and do the first efforts” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place (ULT) I will visit you and take away your lamp holder from its location (UST)

Here, **I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place** could refer to: (1) a special coming in judgment that Jesus would make personally for only the church of Ephesus. (2) the final, second coming of Jesus to the earth in judgment. In both interpretation options, Jesus uses a metaphor from the actual Roman destruction of the Jerusalem temple in 70 AD. In 70 AD, the Romans entered the Jerusalem temple and removed the seven-branched lampstand from inside the sanctuary. However, the translator should not make either interpretive option explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: “I will come to you and I will extract your lampstand from its place” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will come to you and I will remove your lampstand from its place (ULT) I will visit you and take away your lamp holder from its location (UST)

The **lampstand** is a symbol that represents one of the seven churches. See how you translated **lampstand** in [Revelation 1:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [repent](#)
- [you do...repent](#)
- [works](#)
- [lampstand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Love me again](#)
- [if you do not change your mind](#)
- [with the effort](#)
- [your lamp holder](#)

ULT

⁵ Therefore, remember from where you have fallen and [repent](#) and do the first [works](#). But if not, I will come to you and I will remove your [lampstand](#) from its place—if [you do not repent](#).

UST

⁵ Thus, remember how you used to love me. [Love me again with the effort](#) you made at first. However, [if you do not change your mind](#), I will visit you and take away [your lamp holder](#) from its location.

Revelation 2:6

But you have this (ULT)

However, {I praise you for} one thing you do {well (UST)

But you have this is a metaphor in which **this** represents the fact that Jesus hates the works of the Nicolaitans. The metaphor in this idiomatic expression is that **this** is spoken of as if it were an object someone could have. If this might confuse your readers, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “But this is to your credit” or “But here is a good thing you are doing” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the Nicolaitans (ULT)

of the followers of Nicolaus (UST)

The **Nicolaitans** were people who followed the teachings or practices of a man named Nicolaus. The translator should not attempt to specify the actual teachings or practices of the **Nicolaitans** since there is no certainty about what Nicolaus taught or practiced. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [practices](#)

ULT

⁶ But you have this, that you hate the [works](#) of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.

UST

⁶ However, {I praise you for} one thing you do {well}: You detest the [practices](#) of the followers of Nicolaus. I also detest {the practices of the followers of Nicolaus}.

Revelation 2:7

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT) You can hear, can you not? {Then} listen to (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. Here, the phrase **has an ear** presents a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey by association with the part of the body in which his listeners would have been receiving his teaching. Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen to" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT) You can hear, can you not? {Then} listen to (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, then listen to" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

To the one who conquers (ULT) who is victorious (UST)

To the one who conquers refers to anyone **who conquers**, or is victorious throughout obstacles and difficulties in the Christian life. The expression represents a metaphor comparing the Christian life to a military battle, in which the Christian overcomes the forces of evil and any difficult obstacles in warfare. Alternate translation: "To the one who wins the victory" or "To the one who overcomes the obstacles" (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the tree of life (ULT) from the tree that gives life (UST)

John is using the possessive form of **tree** to describe the **tree** as giving **life**. The imagery recalls Genesis 3:22's reference to **the tree of life** in the Garden of Eden. If this is not clear in your language, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "the tree that grants life" (See: [Possession](#))

the paradise of God (ULT) the garden of God (UST)

Here, **paradise** is a Greek transliteration of a Persian word that describes a pleasure garden and zoo that Persian monarchs built at their residences. However, in the Bible **paradise** becomes a symbol for heaven. The symbolism for heaven might be seen in Luke 23:43 and 2 Corinthians 12:4, which both show that **paradise** is a name for the abode of God. Thus, **paradise** represents the eternal and permanent home of believers in Jesus Christ in the new heavens and the new earth of the future. Alternate translation: "the garden of God" (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

ULT

⁷ Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#). To the one who conquers, I will grant to him to eat from the tree [of life](#), which is in the paradise [of God](#).^{""}

UST

⁷ You can hear, can you not? {Then} listen to what the [Spirit {of God}](#) says to the [assemblies of believers](#). {The message is this}: I will permit anyone who is victorious to eat {fruit} from the tree that [gives life](#) and is in the garden [of God](#).^{""}

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)

- churches
- of life
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- Spirit {of God
- assemblies of believers
- gives life
- of God

Revelation 2:8

And to the angel of the church in Smyrna write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the assembly of believers in the city of Smyrna (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Smyrna**. **Smyrna** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to the angel (ULT)
to the...angel (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT)
this message...says the following (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **says these things** in [Revelation 2:1](#) (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

The first and the last, the one who became dead but came to life again (ULT)
The First One {who began all things}, the Last One {who causes all things to end}, and the one who died and became alive again (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person here. If this is confusing in your language, you could translate this in the first person. Alternate translation: "I am the first and the last and I am the one who became dead but came to life again" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

The first and the last (ULT)
The First One {who began all things}, the Last One {who causes all things to end}, and (UST)

Here, the **first and the last** refers to the eternal nature of Jesus Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:17](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the one who became dead but came to life again (ULT)
the one who died and became alive again (UST)

Here, the phrase **who became dead but came to life again** describes Jesus by the two extremes of his death on the cross as well as his current life after the resurrection. The figure of speech is a type of merism. See how you translated the very similar phrase in [Revelation 1:18](#). However, note that there are slight differences between this verse and [Revelation 1:18](#), such as in the order of the words. Alternate translation: "who became dead but lived again" or "who became dead but returned back to life" (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

⁸ "And to the [angel](#) of the [church](#) in Smyrna write: 'The first and the last, the one who became [dead](#) but [came to life again](#), says these things:

UST

⁸ Write {this message} to the [angel](#) of the [assembly of believers](#) in the city of Smyrna: "The First One {who began all things}, the Last One {who causes all things to end}, and the one who [died](#) and [became alive again](#) says the following:

Translation Words - ULT

- to...angel
- of...church
- dead
- came to life again

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- assembly of believers
- died
- became alive again

Revelation 2:9

your (ULT)**you (UST)**

See how you translated second person pronouns and references in [Revelation 2:2](#). (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

affliction (ULT)**how people have} distressed (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **affliction**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “I know how you have suffered” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your} poverty (ULT)**poor (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **poverty**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “how poor you are” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

but you are rich (ULT)**although {actually} you are wealthy (UST)**

Here, **rich** is a metaphor for the spiritual condition of the Christians in Smyrna. The Christians in Smyrna were physically poor because they did not have much money. However, they were spiritually rich because God would reward them for their suffering in the future. Thus, the metaphor uses the language of physical money to describe the spiritual condition of Smyrna’s Christians. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the slander of those who say they themselves are Jews (ULT)**the people who} slander you. {These are the people} who claim to be Jews (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **slander**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “how people have slandered you—those who say they are Jews” or “how people have said terrible things about you—those who say they are Jews” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

but they are not (ULT)**claim to be...but who are not {really} Jews (UST)**

Here, **but they are not** is irony in the sense of the fact that Jesus does not intend to say that the people are not literal Jews. Jesus actually means that these people are indeed Jews, although they do not behave in a manner that agrees with their ethnic identification. Jews should behave as if they were God’s people, but these people mentioned here do not act as if they were actually God’s chosen race. Alternate translation: “but they are not real Jews” (See: [Irony](#))

ULT

⁹ “I know your affliction and {your} poverty (but you are rich), and the slander of those who say they themselves are Jews, but they are not, but {are} a synagogue of Satan.

UST

⁹ ‘I am aware of {how people have} distressed you. {I am aware of how} poor you are, although {actually} you are wealthy. {I am aware of the people who} slander you. {These are the people} who claim to be Jews, but who are not {really} Jews. {They are actually members} of the gathering of Satan.

a synagogue of Satan (ULT)**They are actually members} of the gathering of Satan (UST)**

Here, **a synagogue of Satan** is a metaphor describing Jewish people in Smyrna that were slandering the Christians in the local church. The metaphor uses the imagery of the word **synagogue** as a place to gather together Jews for both worship and for learning. However, the Jews described in this verse gather together to slander the Christians of Smyrna. Therefore, these Jews actually gather and serve **Satan** as a **synagogue** in a certain sense. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a synagogue of Satan (ULT)**They are actually members} of the gathering of Satan (UST)**

Here, **a synagogue of Satan** signifies a synagogue that serves Satan in some metaphorical sense (see previous note). The phrase uses the possessive form to describe the fact that the synagogue of Jews serves Satan. If this is not clear in your language, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "a synagogue that follows Satan" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- affliction
- slander
- Jews
- a synagogue
- of Satan

Translation Words - UST

- I am aware of
- how people have} distressed
- the people who} slander you
- These are the people} who...Jews
- They are actually members} of the gathering
- of Satan

Revelation 2:10

Behold (ULT)

Pay attention (UST)

See how you translated **Behold** in [Revelation 1:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

the devil is about to throw some of you into prison so that you will be tested (ULT)

The devil will soon place some of you in jail in order that {your enemies} may test you (UST)

Here, **to throw** is an idiomatic expression for putting someone into prison or jail. The enemies of the Christians will test them, not God himself. Translators should avoid making the impression to their readers that God is in league with Satan as an author of evil or temptation. Alternate translation: "the devil will soon cause others to put some of you in prison" (See: [Idiom](#))

some of you (ULT)

some of you (UST)

See how you translated the second person pronouns and references in [Revelation 2:2](#). (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

for ten days (ULT)

for ten days (UST)

Here, **ten days** is probably metaphorical for a short time or limited amount of time for testing. Daniel 1:14 is most likely the source of the expression for a short time of testing. The translator should not avoid, however, rendering the time as a literal length of time of ten days, in contrast to some unspecified amount of time in a metaphorical expression. Alternate translation: "for a short time of testing" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Become faithful until death (ULT)

But} remain loyal {to me} until you die (UST)

The use of the word **until** does not mean that you should stop being faithful at death. Rather, the idea is to be faithful even to the point of death. Alternate translation: "Be faithful to me even if they kill you"

the crown of life (ULT)

eternal} life {as a victory prize, just like} a sports wreath (UST)

Here, **the crown of life** refers as a metaphor to the reward of eternal life itself. Jesus is using the possessive form to describe the crown or the wreath as the prize of life itself. Eternal life is the reward in the metaphor of a crown. Alternate translation: "life as your crown" or "life as your wreath" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Do...fear](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Do not [fear](#) at all what you are about [to suffer](#). Behold, the [devil](#) is about to throw some of you into [prison](#) so that [you will be tested](#), and you will have [tribulation](#) for ten [days](#). Become [faithful](#) until [death](#), and I will give you the [crown of life](#).

UST

¹⁰ Do not [be afraid](#) of what you are about [to endure](#). Pay attention! The [devil](#) will soon place some of you in [jail](#) in order that [{your enemies} may test you](#). [{Your enemies} will distress you for ten days](#). [{But} remain loyal {to me}](#) until [you die](#). [{When you die, then} I will give you {eternal} life {as a victory prize, just like} a sports wreath](#).

- to suffer
- of life
- devil
- prison
- you will be tested
- tribulation
- for...days
- faithful
- death
- crown

Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- to endure
- as a victory prize, just like} a sports wreath
- devil
- jail
- your enemies} may test you
- will distress you
- for ten days
- loyal {to me
- you die
- eternal} life

Revelation 2:11

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
You can hear, can you not? {Then} listen to (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
You can hear, can you not? {Then} listen to (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

The one who conquers (ULT)
Whoever is victorious (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: "Anyone who conquers" or "All who conquer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will certainly not be hurt by the second death (ULT)
will never die a second time (UST)

Here, the clause **will certainly not be hurt** is a euphemism for experiencing the second death in actuality. The literal meaning of the clause gives the sense of mistreating or injuring someone. However, in this case, the euphemism represents the greater danger of a second, spiritual death (see next note). Alternate translation: "will not experience the second death" or "will not die the second death" (See: [Euphemism](#))

by the second death (ULT)
will...die...a second time (UST)

Here, **by the second death** is a metaphor that describes the spiritual or eternal transition from normal life that occurs after the first natural death that people suffer at the end of life. The phrase **second death** is further described and defined in Revelation 20:6,14; 21:8. The translator should translate the phrase **the second death** literally and also give an explanatory note with references to Revelation 20:6,14; 21:8. Alternate translation: "by the eternal death" or "by the spiritual death" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [to...churches](#)
- [death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Spirit {of God}](#)
- [assemblies of believers](#)
- [will...die](#)

ULT

¹¹ Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#). The one who conquers will certainly not be hurt by the second [death](#)."

UST

¹¹ You can hear, can you not? {Then} listen to what the [Spirit {of God}](#) says to the [assemblies of believers](#). {The message is this}: Whoever is victorious will never [die](#) a second time."

Revelation 2:12

And to the angel of the church in Pergamum write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the assembly of believers in...city of Pergamum (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Pergamum**. **Pergamum** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to the angel (ULT)
to the...angel (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT)
this message...says the following (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **says these things** in [Revelation 2:1](#) (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

the double-edged, sharp sword (ULT)
the...the sword with two sharp edges (UST)

See how you translated this type of **sword** and its imagery in [Revelation 1:16](#) (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...angel](#)
- [of...church](#)
- [sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [assembly of believers](#)
- [sword](#)

ULT

¹² "And to the [angel](#) of the [church](#) in Pergamum write: 'The one who has the double-edged, sharp [sword](#) says these things:

UST

¹² Write {this message} to the [angel](#) of the [assembly of believers](#) in the city of Pergamum: "The one who has the [sword](#) with two sharp edges says the following:

Revelation 2:13

I know where you live (ULT)

I am aware of where you live (UST)

Here, **I know where you live** is an idiom for expressing knowledge of the present condition and difficult circumstances that the Christians in Pergamum were experiencing at that time. The idiomatic expression indicates an assurance that Jesus understands the current problems and difficult conditions of the people which he addresses here. Jesus not only expresses knowledge of the city of Pergamum as a location or place, but he also expresses his familiarity with the religious, social, and moral conditions which the Christians experienced while living in Pergamum. See the explanatory note for **I know** in the chapter two introduction contents. Alternate translation: "I know where you dwell" or "I know where you have your home" (See: [Idiom](#))

the throne of Satan {is} (ULT)

It is where Satan controls people. I know (UST)

Here, **the throne of Satan** means the place that "Satan controls and gives power to his throne". Jesus is using the possessive form to describe the place where Satan has power and control with a reference to a throne for describing the rule of Satan as a metonym. There is most likely a local reference to a giant altar to the god Zeus that existed in Pergamum at this time. Alternate translation: "where Satan rules" (See: [Possession](#))

you hold tightly to my name (ULT)

you are firmly...you (UST)

Here, **you hold tightly to my name** is an idiomatic expression meaning to firmly believe in the name of Jesus. Alternate translation: "you firmly believe in my name" or "you have a strong faith in my name" (See: [Idiom](#))

to my name (ULT)

firmly...you (UST)

Here, **name** is a metonym for the person of Jesus. See how you translated the phrase **my name** in [Revelation 2:3](#). Alternate translation: "you hold tightly to me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you did not deny {your} faith in me (ULT)

firmly...me. You do not renounce that...you (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **faith**, you can express it positively with the verb "believe." Alternate translation: "you continued to tell people that you believe in me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your} faith in me (ULT)

me. You do not renounce that (UST)

Here, **{your} faith in me** means "your faith that places trust in me." Jesus is using the possessive form to describe the faith that the Christians had in Jesus as the object of their belief. Alternate translation: "your belief in me" (See: [Possession](#))

ULT

¹³ "I know where you live, where the throne of Satan {is}, and yet you hold tightly to my name, and you did not deny {your} faith in me, even in the days of Antipas my witness, my faithful one, who was killed among you, where Satan lives.

UST

¹³ I am aware of where you live. It is where Satan controls people. I know that you are firmly committed to me. You do not renounce that you believe in me, not even when Antipas, who faithfully witnessed about me, {was living} with you. People killed him {in your city}, there where Satan rules.

of Antipas (ULT) Antipas (UST)

Antipas is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

my witness, my faithful one (ULT) who faithfully witnessed about me (UST)

Here, **my witness, my faithful one** means that Antipas “faithfully testified of me.” Jesus is using the possessive form to describe Antipas as a faithful witness to Jesus himself. Antipas faithfully witnessed about Jesus even up to the point of death so that one can simply call Antipas a “martyr.” Alternate translation: “my faithful martyr” (See: [Possession](#))

who was killed (ULT) was living} with you. People killed him {in your (UST)

Here, **who was killed** can be changed from the awkward passive form in some languages. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whom those in your city killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

among you (ULT) was...People killed him...in your...city}, there where Satan (UST)

See how you translated second person pronouns and references in [Revelation 2:2](#). (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

where Satan lives (ULT) city...where Satan (UST)

Here, **where Satan lives** is an idiomatic expression that basically means where Satan rules. For this idiom and metaphorical imagery to describe Satan’s rule in Pergamum, see the note above for the phrase **the throne of Satan** in this same verse here. Alternate translation: “where Satan has power” or “where Satan rules” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- throne
- of Satan...is
- Satan
- to...name
- faith
- days
- witness
- faithful one

Translation Words - UST

- I am aware of
- It is where Satan controls people. I know
- It is where Satan controls people. I know

- city...where Satan
- firmly...you
- me. You...not...that
- believe in me, not even when
- faithfully witnessed about me
- faithfully...about me

Revelation 2:14

I have a few things against you (ULT)
**I must criticize you {about} some matters...
hurting your testimony and weakening your
obedience. You (UST)**

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:4](#), although in this case there is no actual ellipsis technically speaking with the presence of the object **a few things**. Alternate translation: "I disapprove of you because of a few things you have done" or "I am angry with you because of a few things you did" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**some who hold tightly to the teaching of
Balaam (ULT)**
**permit some of your...members to teach
things like Balaam taught (UST)**

Here, **hold tightly** is an idiomatic expression for either: (1) people who teach what **Balaam** taught. (2) people who do what **Balaam** taught. The second option seems preferable in this context for the metaphor, as seen in the UST rendition. If this might confuse your readers, you could use an equivalent expression in the target language. Alternate translation: "some who do the teaching of Balaam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Balak (ULT)
Balak to eat food that had been offered (UST)

Balak was the name of a king in the Old Testament (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to throw a stumbling block (ULT)
to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people (UST)

Here, **to throw a stumbling block** is a metaphor for the act of leading and, thereby, causing people to sin. Therefore, this expression speaks of an action or behavior that leads people to sin as if it were a stone that sits in a road over which people stumble. The Greek word for **stumbling block** also can mean the trigger peg in an animal trap so that the phrase expresses the idea of setting a trap. If this might confuse your readers, you could use an equivalent expression in the target language. Alternate translation: "to set a trap" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to eat food sacrificed to idols (ULT)
to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way for the word **food sacrificed to idols**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Jesus uses the passive form here to focus on what is sacrificed rather than the person who does the sacrificing. If you must state who does the sacrificing, you could use a vague or indefinite subject. Alternate translation: "the things that people have sacrificed to idols" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁴ But I have a few things against you; that you have there some who hold tightly to the [teaching of Balaam](#), who [taught](#) Balak to throw [a stumbling block before](#) the [sons of Israel](#), to eat food sacrificed to idols and [to be sexually immoral](#).

UST

¹⁴ Nevertheless, I must criticize you {about} some matters that are hurting your testimony and weakening your obedience. You permit some of your [members to teach things like Balaam taught long ago](#). He [taught](#) Balak to eat food that had been offered [to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people](#).

to eat food sacrificed to idols (ULT)**to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people (UST)**

Here, **to eat food sacrificed to idols** speaks of eating food dedicated to a pagan god so that Jews considered the food to be unclean and, thus, forbidden to eat. The phrase **food sacrificed to idols** describes animals that are slaughtered, offered to a god, and then eaten. If your language has a specific word or phrase for meat from an animal that has been offered to a god, you could use it here. If your language does not have such a word, you could use a descriptive phrase. Alternate translation: "meat from animals sacrificed to idols" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

to be sexually immoral (ULT)**to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people (UST)**

Here, **to be sexually immoral** literally means immoral sexual activity. Yet, often people take the expression as a metaphor that signifies idolatry. If the expression is indeed a metaphor, then one should translate the word literally. However, if this might confuse the readers, one could use an equivalent expression in the target language, one could express this meaning in a non-figurative way. Alternate translation: "to sin sexually" or "to commit sexual sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...teaching](#)
- [taught](#)
- [of Balaam](#)
- [a stumbling block](#)
- [before](#)
- [sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [to be sexually immoral](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [members to teach things like Balaam](#)
- [taught](#)
- [long ago. He taught](#)
- [to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people](#)
- [to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people](#)
- [to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people](#)
- [to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people](#)
- [to idols and that sexual immorality was permitted among God's people](#)

Revelation 2:15

holding tightly to the teaching (ULT)
permitting some of your members to practice
what the...teach (UST)

See how you the phrase **holding tightly to the teaching** in the previous verse. Alternate translation: “doing the teaching” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the Nicolaitans (ULT)
Nicolaitans (UST)

See how you translated **Nicolaitans** in [Revelation 2:6](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the same way](#)
- [to...teaching](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teach](#)
- [that sexual immorality is permitted, which, of course, it is not permitted](#)

ULT

¹⁵ So, [in the same way](#), you also have {some} holding tightly to the [teaching](#) of the Nicolaitans.

UST

¹⁵ In that way, you are also permitting some of your members to practice what the Nicolaitans [teach](#), [that sexual immorality is permitted, which, of course, it is not permitted](#).

Revelation 2:16

But if {you do} not (ULT) or (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you can supply the verb from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "If you do not repent, I" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

I will...come (ULT) I will come (UST)

See how you translate this word in [Revelation 2:5](#). Alternate translation: "I will punish" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will wage war (ULT) I will make war (UST)

Here, **will wage war** expresses a metaphor for judgment that utilizes the imagery of a sword coming from the mouth of Jesus. The translator may wish to maintain a fairly literal rendition in order to allow the metaphor to work with the sword imagery in this verse and from the prior verses of [Revelation 1:16](#) and [Revelation 2:12](#). Alternate translation: "I will punish" (See: [Metaphor](#))

with the sword of my mouth (ULT) with the sword in my mouth, the word of God (UST)

This refers to the **sword** in [Revelation 1:16](#) and [Revelation 2:12](#). Although symbols in apocalyptic language are not normally to be replaced with the item they represent, translators may choose whether or not to show that this is a symbol which represents the words that Jesus speaks (see the UST). This symbol indicates that Jesus will defeat his enemies by giving a simple command. Alternate translation: "with the sword that is my mouth" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Repent
- sword

Translation Words - UST

- Stop doing this and change your direction
- sword in...mouth

ULT

¹⁶ Repent, therefore! But if {you do} not, I will quickly come to you and will wage war against them with the sword of my mouth.

UST

¹⁶ Stop doing this and change your direction, or I will come to you suddenly and I will make war against them with the sword in my mouth, the word of God.

Revelation 2:17

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT) Listen carefully...the (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT) Listen carefully...the (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

To the one who conquers (ULT) To him who conquers (UST)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: "To the one who gains victory" or "To the one who overcomes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the hidden manna (ULT) the hidden manna, that will feed (UST)

If your language does not use the passive form in this way for the word **hidden manna**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Jesus uses the passive form here to focus on what is hidden rather than the person who does the hiding. If you must state who does the hiding, you could use an indefinite subject or Jesus himself (see the UST). Alternate translation: "manna that I have hid" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a white stone (ULT) white stone (UST)

Here, **a white stone** could signify a variety of different interpretive options which relate to the social context of Pergamum when John wrote the book of Revelation. The translator should not choose any interpretation over another in this case, but simply maintain a fairly literal translation of the phrase **a white stone**. Hence, this note would suggest that the translator should not attempt to render **a white stone** in any way that seeks to be culturally relevant, since commentators are not exactly sure what the phrase signifies first in the original context here (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

a new name written (ULT) a...I will engrave a new name for him...name (UST)

Here, **a new name written** could mean the name of Jesus, the name of God, or else, more likely, the new name of the person who conquers. The translator should not choose any interpretation over another in this case, but simply maintain a fairly literal translation of the phrase **a new name written**. If your language does not use the passive form in this way for the word **written**, you could express the idea in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Jesus uses the passive form here to focus on what is written rather than the person who does the writing. If you must state who does the writing, you could use an indefinite subject or Jesus himself (see the UST). Alternate translation: "a new name that I wrote" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁷ Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#). To the one who conquers, I will give him of the hidden [manna](#), and I will give him a white stone, and on the stone, a new [name](#) written which no one [knows](#) except the one [who receives it](#)."

UST

¹⁷ Listen carefully to the message that [God's Spirit](#) speaks to the [groups of believers](#). To him who conquers, I will give the hidden [manna](#), [that will feed](#) and strengthen you and I will also give him a white stone, on which [I will engrave a new name for him](#), and the [name](#) I give him [only he will know](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- to...churches
- of...manna
- a...name
- knows
- who receives it

Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit
- groups of believers
- manna, that will feed
- I will engrave a...name for him
- a...name
- only he will know

Revelation 2:18

And to the angel of the church in Thyatira write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the group of believers assembled together in the city of Thyatira (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Thyatira**. **Thyatira** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to the angel (ULT) to the...angel (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT) this message (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **says these things** in [Revelation 2:1](#) (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

The Son of God (ULT) I, the Son of God (UST)

Son of God is an important title for Jesus (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

who has his eyes as a flame of fire (ULT) whose eyes shine like a flame of fire (UST)

Here, Jesus has **eyes** that are full of light so that they resemble **a flame of fire**. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:14](#). Alternate translation: "whose eyes glow like a flame of fire" (See: [Simile](#))

his feet like polished bronze (ULT) whose feet shine like gleaming bronze, am saying these things to you (UST)

People create objects of **bronze** and have them **polished** in order to make them shine and reflect light. Likewise, the feet of Jesus shine and reflect light like **polished bronze**. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:15](#). Alternate translation: "whose feet are very shiny like polished bronze" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to...angel
- of...church
- Son of God
- as
- like

ULT

18 "And to the **angel** of the **church** in Thyatira write: 'The **Son of God**, who has his eyes **as** a flame **of fire** and his feet **like polished bronze**, says these things:

UST

18 "Write this message to the **angel** of the **group of believers assembled together** in the city of Thyatira: 'I, the **Son of God**, whose **eyes shine like** a flame **of fire** and whose **feet shine like gleaming bronze**, am saying these things to you.

- of fire
- polished bronze

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- group of believers assembled together
- I...Son of God
- eyes shine like
- feet shine like
- of fire
- gleaming bronze, am saying these things to you

Revelation 2:19

I know your works (ULT)

I know all the good things that you do (UST)

See how you translated the clause **I know your works** in [Revelation 2:2](#)

your works, and your love and faith and service and patient endurance, and your last works {are} greater than {your} first {works} (ULT)

the good things that you do. I know that you love me and each other, and that you trust in me. I know that you serve others and that you steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties. I know that you are doing these things more now than you did in the past (UST)

See how you translated the second person pronouns and second person individuals addressed in [Revelation 2:2](#). If the singular form of the second person address and the second person references would not be natural in your language, then perhaps the translator could use the plural forms of the second person, or "you" (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

your love and faith and service and patient endurance (ULT)

I know that...you love me...and...each other...and that you trust in me. I know that you serve others and that you steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **love**, **faith**, **service**, and **endurance**, you can express them with their corresponding verbs that describe the actions. Alternate translation: "how you have loved, trusted, served, and endured patiently" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your love and faith and service and patient endurance (ULT)

I know that...you love me...and...each other...and that you trust in me. I know that you serve others and that you steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand these abstract nouns in the clause then you can state the implied objects of these terms explicitly. Alternate translation: "how you have loved me and others, trusted me, served me and others, and endured troubles patiently" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Here, the clause **your last works {are} greater than {your} first {works}** presents a comparison of previous labor or efforts to the current labor or efforts of the believers. If your readers would misunderstand the noun **works**, you can express it with the verb "to work" or "to do". Alternate translation: "you do more now than you did at first"

ULT

¹⁹ "I know your works, and your love and faith and service and patient endurance, and your last works {are} greater than {your} first {works}.

UST

¹⁹ I know all the good things that you do. I know that you love me and each other, and that you trust in me. I know that you serve others and that you steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties. I know that you are doing these things more now than you did in the past.

Translation Words - ULT

- I know

- works
- works (2)
- love
- faith
- service
- patient endurance

Translation Words - UST

- I know all
- good things that...do
- you are doing these things (2)
- I know that...that...serve others
- you love me...each other
- you trust in me
- I know that you...steadfastly endure a lot of difficulties

Revelation 2:20

But I have this against you (ULT) Nevertheless, you have done something wrong (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:4](#). Alternate translation: “But I disapprove of some of the things you are doing” or “But I am angry with you because of something you are doing” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the woman Jezebel (ULT) woman...who is like that wicked Queen Jezebel (UST)

Jesus spoke of a certain **woman** in their church at Thyatira as if she were the famous Queen **Jezebel**, because she did the same kinds of sinful actions that Jezebel had done in the Old Testament. Alternate translation: “the woman who is just like Jezebel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to commit sexual immorality and to eat food sacrificed to idols (ULT)

She is urging them to commit sexual immorality and to eat food that they have offered to idols (UST)

See how you translated a similar clause with the same phrases in [Revelation 2:14](#). It is possible to interpret both phrases as metaphors for idolatry or sinful actions in general (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jezebel](#)
- [who calls](#)
- [a prophetess](#)
- [she teaches](#)
- [deceives](#)
- [servants](#)
- [to commit sexual immorality](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who is like that wicked Queen Jezebel](#)
- [who lived long ago. She says](#)
- [is a prophetess](#)
- [by what she teaches](#)
- [she is deceiving](#)
- [servants](#)
- [She is urging them to commit sexual immorality](#)

ULT

²⁰ But I have this against you, that you tolerate the woman [Jezebel](#), [who calls](#) herself [a prophetess](#), and [she teaches](#) and [deceives](#) my [servants to commit sexual immorality](#) and to eat food sacrificed to idols.

UST

²⁰ Nevertheless, you have done something wrong: You tolerate that woman among your people [who is like that wicked Queen Jezebel who lived long ago. She says](#) that she is [a prophetess](#). However, [by what she teaches, she is deceiving](#) my [servants](#). [She is urging them to commit sexual immorality](#) and to eat food that they have offered to idols.

Revelation 2:21

I gave her time so that she might repent (ULT) I gave her time to turn away (UST)

Here, **I gave her time so that she might repent** represents a purpose clause. The word **so that** introduces a purpose clause. Jesus is stating a purpose for which he granted some time for the woman Jezebel to repent of her actions. Use a natural way in your language for introducing a purpose clause. Alternate translation: "I gave her time for the purpose of her repentance" (See: [Connect — Goal \(Purpose\) Relationship](#))

her immorality (ULT) her sexual immorality (UST)

Here, **her immorality** expresses the idea of impure passion. The word **immorality** always applies to females. The manner of expressing female immorality varies greatly in many languages. Use a natural idiom for expressing female immorality in your target language (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

²¹ And I gave her [time](#) so that [she might repent](#), but she is not willing [to repent](#) of her [immorality](#).

UST

²¹ Although I gave her [time](#) to [turn away](#) from her [sexual immorality](#) and pagan practices, she did not want [to stop](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [she might repent](#)
- [to repent](#)
- [immorality](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [turn away](#)
- [to stop](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)

Revelation 2:22

Behold (ULT)

As a result (UST)

See how you translated **Behold** in [Revelation 1:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will throw her onto a bed...I will throw into} great tribulation (ULT)

I will cause her to become very ill...to suffer greatly (UST)

Here, having Jezebel lie in a **bed** would be the result of Jesus making her very sick. The imagery of the bed is simply a metonym for the entire process of lying in bed when one is sick. The act of throwing someone into a bed causes the punishment to appear to be more intense and graphic in its idiomatic expression. Alternate translation: "I will make her lie sick in bed ... I will make suffer greatly" or "I will make her very sick ... I will make suffer greatly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will throw her onto a bed, and those who commit adultery with her {I will throw into} great tribulation (ULT)

I will cause her to become very ill. I will also cause those who act immorally as she does to suffer greatly (UST)

Here, Jesus speaks of causing people to suffer with the idiomatic expression of throwing them into suffering. The metaphor or idiomatic expression presents the imagery of causing suffering or hurt by the act of throwing someone into the suffering or hurt. Alternate translation: "I will throw her onto a bed, and I will make her and those who commit adultery with her to suffer greatly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

unless they repent of her deeds (ULT)

if they do not stop doing what she does (UST)

This implies that they have participated with her in her wicked behavior. By repenting of **her deeds**, they also **repent** of participating in her behavior. Alternate translation: "if they do not repent from doing the evil that she does" or "if they do not repent of participating in her deeds" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who commit adultery](#)
- [tribulation](#)
- [they repent](#)
- [deeds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [act immorally](#)
- [suffer](#)
- [they do...stop](#)
- [doing what...does](#)

ULT

²² Behold! I will throw her onto a bed, and those [who commit adultery](#) with her {I will throw into} great [tribulation](#), unless [they repent](#) of her [deeds](#).

UST

²² As a result, I will cause her to become very ill. I will also cause those who [act immorally](#) as she does to [suffer](#) greatly, if [they do not stop doing what](#) she [does](#).

Revelation 2:23

her children (ULT)**Some have become...like her...children by accepting what she teaches (UST)**

Jesus spoke of the disciples of Jezebel as if they were **her children**.

Alternate translation: "her followers" or "her disciples" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will strike her children dead (ULT)**Some have become...like her...children by accepting what she teaches...I will certainly kill them (UST)**

Here, **I will strike her children dead** expresses the idea of killing the disciples of Jezebel. The phrase implies death by a swift and ruthless action. The idiomatic language suggests the idea of killing by means of a pestilence. Alternate translation: "I will slay her children" or "I will exterminate her children" (See: [Idiom](#))

kidneys and hearts (ULT)**what everyone thinks and desires (UST)**

The terms **kidneys** and **hearts** are metonyms that represents feelings and desires in the idiomatic language.

Alternate translation: "what people think and want" or "secret thoughts and desires" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will give to each one of you (ULT)**I will reward...each of you (UST)**

The phrase **I will give to each one of you** represents an idiomatic expression describing the distribution of punishment and reward. If this idiom might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: "I will punish or reward each one of you" (See: [Idiom](#))

to each one of you according to your deeds (ULT)**each of you according to what you have done (UST)**

See how you translated second person pronouns and references in [Revelation 2:2](#). (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [dead](#)
- [churches](#)
- [will know](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [deeds](#)

ULT

²³ And I will strike her [children dead](#), and all the [churches will know](#) that I am the one who searches kidneys and [hearts](#), and I will give to each one of you according to your [deeds](#).

UST

²³ [Some have become](#) like her [children by accepting what she teaches](#), and [I will certainly kill them](#). Then all the [groups of believers will learn](#) that I am the one who finds out what everyone thinks and [desires](#). I will reward each of you according to what you [have done](#).

Translation Words - UST

- Some have become...children by accepting what she teaches
- I will certainly kill them
- groups of believers
- Then...will learn
- desires
- have done

Revelation 2:24

Now I say to you, the rest of those in Thyatira, to as many as do not hold this teaching, whoever has not known the deep things of Satan, as some call it—I do not put any other burden on you (ULT)

But I have something good to say about the rest of you believers in the city of Thyatira. It is good that you do not accept these wrong things. It is good that you reject what those teachers call their “secret practices” that Satan taught them. I will not burden you with any other commands (UST)

See how you translated second person pronouns and references in [Revelation 2:2](#). (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

to as many as do not hold this teaching (ULT)

It is good that you do not accept these wrong things. It is good that you... those (UST)

Here, to believe in a **teaching** is spoken of as to hold or to grasp the **teaching**. If this idiom might confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: “to everyone who does not believe this teaching” (See: [Idiom](#))

do not hold this teaching (ULT)

It is good that you do not accept these wrong things...those (UST)

Here, **teaching** is an abstract noun that your readers might misunderstand without the use of a verbal phrase. If this abstract noun would confuse your readers, you could express the meaning plainly with a verb. Alternate translation: “do not hold to what she teaches” or “do not believe what she teaches” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the deep things (ULT)

their “secret practices” (UST)

Here, the adjective **deep** describes matters that the disciples of Jezebel consider to be profound and very important. The adherents to Jezebel’s instruction kept this type of subject matter secret which they also thought to be **deep** in the sense of important or profound. Alternate translation: “the secret things” or “the profound matters” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the deep things of Satan (ULT)

their “secret practices” that Satan (UST)

Jesus is using the possessive form to describe **the deep things** that Satan supposedly taught the disciples of Jezebel. If this is not clear in your language, you could say the meaning explicitly with a verb. Alternate translation: “the deep things that Satan revealed to them” or “the deep things that Satan taught them” (See: [Possession](#))

ULT

²⁴ Now I say to you, the rest of those in Thyatira, to as many as do not hold this **teaching**, whoever has not **known** the deep things **of Satan**, **as** some call it—I do not put any other **burden** on you.

UST

²⁴ But I have something good to say about the rest of you believers in the city of Thyatira. It is good that you do not accept these **wrong things**. It is good that you **reject** what those teachers call their “secret practices” that **Satan taught them**. I will not burden you with any other **commands**.

I do not put any other burden on you (ULT)**I will not burden you with any other commands (UST)**

Here, to **put any other burden** literally translates as “to throw another heavy load” onto someone to carry in a metaphorical manner. The phrase is an idiom for requiring another difficult command or burdensome order that one must perform besides already existing commands. If this might confuse your readers, you could use an equivalent expression or explicit language. Alternate translation: “I do not place any other burden on you” or “I do not impose any other burden upon you” (See: [Idiom](#))

I do not put any other burden on you (ULT)**I will not burden you with any other commands (UST)**

Here, **other** refers to the phrase “what you have” in the next verse. In other words, Jesus is saying that he will not give these people any additional command beyond what they already have from him. If this is confusing or if it would appear in your language that Jesus was making a statement here and then contradicting it in the next verse, you could connect these ideas in a different way. If you do this, you will need to delete the word “However” in the next verse. Alternate translation: “the only burden I will put on you is this:” or “I will only burden you with obeying what I have already commanded you” (See: [Connect — Exception Clauses](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [teaching](#)
- [has...known](#)
- [of Satan](#)
- [as](#)
- [burden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wrong things](#)
- [reject](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [taught them](#)
- [commands](#)

Revelation 2:25

However...what you have (ULT) Just keep believing...in me (UST)

Here, **what you have** refers to the commands that Jesus has already given to the believers in Thyatira. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate that explicitly. Alternate translation: “the commands that I have already given to you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

hold on tightly to (ULT) firmly...and obey me (UST)

See how you translated the verb to **hold on tightly to** in [Revelation 2:13](#) (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

²⁵ However, hold on tightly to what you have until I come.

UST

²⁵ Just keep believing firmly in me and obey me until I come.

Revelation 2:26

the one who conquers (ULT) who conquer Satan (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: “Anyone who conquers” or “All who conquer” (See: [Metaphor](#))

my works (ULT) doing what I command (UST)

Here, **my works** does not refer to the things that Jesus does, but rather, it refers to the things he orders his disciples to do. If this is not clear in your language, you could say the meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: “the works that I give to you” or “the works that I require of you” (See: [Possession](#))

ULT

²⁶ And the one who conquers and [who keeps](#) my [works](#) until the end, to him I will give [authority](#) over the [nations](#).

UST

²⁶ As for those who conquer Satan and who [keep on doing what](#) I [command](#) until they die, I will give them [my authority](#) over [all people](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [who keeps](#)
- [works](#)
- [authority](#)
- [nations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [keep on](#)
- [doing what...command](#)
- [my authority](#)
- [all people](#)

Revelation 2:27

He will rule ... break them into pieces

This is a prophecy from Psalm 2 in the Old Testament about a king of Israel, but Jesus applied it here to those to whom he gives authority over the nations.

he will shepherd them with a rod of iron (ULT) They will control...them as if they were striking them with an iron rod (UST)

Ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling **with a rod of iron**. Alternate translation: "he will rule them harshly as if striking them with an iron stick" (See: [Metaphor](#))

as jars of clay are broken into pieces (ULT) They will destroy evildoers just as people shatter clay pots (UST)

Breaking **jars of clay** to **pieces** is an image that represents either: (1) destroying evildoers. (2) defeating enemies. Alternate translation: "and he will defeat his enemies completely as if breaking clay jars into pieces" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he will shepherd](#)
- [a rod](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They will control](#)
- [they were striking them with an...rod](#)
- [They will destroy evildoers just as](#)

ULT

²⁷ 'And [he will shepherd](#) them with [a rod](#) of iron, [as](#) jars of clay are broken into pieces,'

UST

²⁷ [They will control](#) them as if [they were striking them with an](#) iron rod. [They will destroy evildoers just as](#) people shatter clay pots.

Revelation 2:28

as I also have received {authority} from my Father (ULT)

I do all of this with the authority my Father gave me (UST)

Some languages may need to tell what was **received**. This could mean: (1) he received **authority** from his Father. (2) he received the morning star from his Father. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

my Father (ULT)

my Father (UST)

Here, **Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

and I will give him (ULT)

and I will give...to those who rule with me so that we may have great joy in our victory (UST)

Here, **him** refers to the one who conquers.

the morning star (ULT)

the morning star (UST)

This is a bright **star** that sometimes appears early in the **morning** just before dawn. It was a symbol of victory. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- as
- have received {authority}
- Father

Translation Words - UST

- I do all of
- the authority...gave me
- Father

ULT

²⁸ as I also have received {authority} from my Father, and I will give him the morning star.

UST

²⁸ I do all of this with the authority my Father gave me, and I will give the morning star to those who rule with me so that we may have great joy in our victory.

Revelation 2:29

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully to (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully to (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [to...churches](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [groups of believers assembled together](#)

ULT

²⁹ Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#).""

UST

²⁹ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that [God's Spirit](#) is saying to the [groups of believers assembled together](#).""

Revelation 3

Revelation 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Outline of Chapters Two and Three of Revelation

I. The Current Condition of the Churches (2:1-3:22)

A. The Letter to Ephesus (2:1-7)

B. The Letter to Smyrna (2:8-11)

C. The Letter to Pergamum (2:12-17)

D. The Letter to Thyatira (2:18-29)

E. The Letter to Sardis (3:1-6)

F. The Letter to Philadelphia (3:7-13)

G. The Letter to Laodicea (3:14-22)

Chapters 2 and 3 together are usually called the “seven letters to the seven churches.” You may wish to set each letter apart. The reader can then easily see that they are separate letters.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verse 7.

Special concepts in this chapter

The personal knowledge that Jesus expresses about the churches

Jesus uses the phrase **I know** to express his personal familiarity and knowledge at times of some of the churches mentioned in Revelation chapters two and three. The phrase **I know** is an idiom for expressing knowledge of the present situation and the types of circumstances that the Christians experienced among the various churches mentioned in chapters two and three of the book of Revelation. The idiomatic expression **I know** indicates an assurance that Jesus understands the current conditions or circumstances in which the Christians were living. Although usually positive in a tone of assurance (see Revelation 2:2,9,13,19; 3:8), the phrase **I know** sometimes expresses a critical or negative assessment that Jesus affirms (see Revelation 3:1,15). Thus, the expression **I know** affirms more than simply a knowledge of circumstances on the part of Jesus, but the phrase also asserts a claim to be in a position to make a valid judgment as an impartial arbiter who might be critical at times. Therefore, the translator may wish to provide for his readership a textual note that explains the phrase **I know** as meaning something more than simply the awareness that Jesus has of the current religious, social, and moral conditions for the Christians which are addressed by Jesus (see Revelation chapters two and three). Alternate translation: “I am aware of the fact that” (See: [Idiom](#))

The use of the second person singular to refer to a plural group of people

The second person pronouns and the second person individuals addressed throughout chapters two and three of the book of Revelation are often singular in their number, but they are plural in their references. Technically, every

message to each of the seven churches mentioned in Revelation chapters two and three are addressed to a singular, individual **angel**, so that one would naturally expect singular references in the language of the letters. Thus, many of the second person references in the verbs and the pronouns, although singular in their literal sense, are plural in their implied references to the believers of the church that receives the message in the letter. If the singular form of the second person address and the second person verbal references would not be natural in your language, then perhaps the translator could use the plural forms of the second person, or “you” (See: [Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups](#))

Seven spirits of God

These spirits are the seven spirits of [Revelation 1:4](#).

Seven stars

These stars are the seven stars of [Revelation 1:20](#).

Important metaphors in this chapter

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking

Jesus speaks of his desire to have the Christians in Laodicea obey him as if he were a man asking people in a house to allow him to enter and eat with them ([Revelation 3:20](#)). (See: [Metaphor](#))

“Let the one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit is saying to the churches”

The speaker knew that almost all of his readers had physical ears. The ear here is a metonym for hearing what God says and desiring to obey him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The angel of the church”

The word **angel** here can also mean “messenger” or “representative.” This might refer to the messenger or a representative leader of the church. See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#).

“Says these things”

The verses with the phrase **says these things** can be difficult to translate. They do not make complete sentences. You may need to add “These are” to the beginning of these verses. Jesus uses these words to speak of himself as if he were speaking of another person. Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking of other people. Jesus began speaking in [Revelation 1:17](#). He continues to speak through the end of Chapter 3. The phrase **says these things** indicates that the words that come after this expression are a direct quotation. Use a phrase that makes this clear in your language. Alternate translation: “says this message” or “says the following words” (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

Revelation 3:1

And to the angel of the church in Sardis write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Sardis (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Sardis**. **Sardis** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to the angel (ULT)

to the...angel (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT)

this message...I am saying these things to you (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **says these things** in [Revelation 2:1](#) (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

The one who holds the seven spirits (ULT)

I am the one who has the seven spirits (UST)

The number **seven** is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The **seven spirits** refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the seven stars (ULT)

the seven stars (UST)

These **stars** are symbols that represent the seven angels of the seven churches. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:16](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

you are alive, but you are dead (ULT)

alive, but you are dead (UST)

Obedying and honoring God is spoken of as being **alive**; disobeying and dishonoring him is spoken of as being **dead**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to...angel
- of...church
- spirits
- of God
- I know

ULT

¹ "And to the **angel** of the **church** in Sardis write: 'The one who holds the seven **spirits of God** and the seven stars says these things: "I **know** your **works**, that you have **a name** that **you are alive**, but you are **dead**."

UST

¹ "Write this message to the **angel** of the **group of believers assembled** in the city of Sardis. 'I am saying these things to you. I am the one who has the seven **spirits of God** and the seven stars. I **know** everything that you **have done**. **You appear to be alive**, but you are **dead**."

- works
- a name
- you are alive
- dead

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- group of believers assembled
- spirits
- God
- I know
- have done
- You appear to
- alive
- dead

Revelation 3:2

Wake up and strengthen what remains, which is about to die (ULT)

Be alert! Become aware of your spiritual need as though you were awaking from sleep, and strengthen yourself spiritually, because you are so useless...you are like someone who is about to die (UST)

The good deeds done by the believers in Sardis are spoken of as if they were alive but in danger of dying. Alternate translation: "Wake up and complete the work that remains, or what you have done will become worthless" or "Wake up. If you do not finish what you have started to do, your previous work will have been useless" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Wake up (ULT)

Be alert! Become aware of your spiritual need as though you were awaking (UST)

Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. Alternate translation: "Be alert" or "Be careful" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Wake up](#)
- [strengthen](#)
- [to die](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [of...God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [alert! Become aware of your spiritual need as though you were awaking](#)
- [from sleep, and strengthen yourself spiritually](#)
- [because you are so useless...you are like someone who is about to die](#)
- [must do this](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

² [Wake up](#) and [strengthen](#) what remains, which is about [to die](#), for I have not found your [deeds](#) complete in the sight of my [God](#).

UST

² Be [alert! Become aware of your spiritual need as though you were awaking from sleep, and strengthen yourself spiritually, because you are so useless](#) that [you are like someone who is about to die](#). You [must do this](#) because I know that my [God](#) considers that nothing that you do is satisfactory.

Revelation 3:3

what you have received and heard (ULT) God's message and the truth that you accepted when you heard it (UST)

This phrase refers to God's word, which they believed. Alternate translation: "God's word that you heard and the truth that you believed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

if...you do not wake up (ULT) If you do not do this...I will come to you when you are not expecting me (UST)

Being alert to danger is spoken of as waking up. See how you translated "wake up" on [Revelation 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "If you are not alert" or "If you are not careful" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will come as a thief (ULT) as a thief comes (UST)

Jesus will **come** at a time when people do not expect him, just as a **thief** comes when not expected. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you have received
- keep it
- repent
- you do...wake up
- as
- a thief
- you will...know
- hour

Translation Words - UST

- God's message
- Always obey it
- turn away from your sinful behavior
- I will come to you when you are...expecting me
- as
- a thief
- know
- time

ULT

³ Remember, therefore, what [you have received](#) and heard. And [keep it](#), and [repent](#). But if [you do](#) not [wake up](#), I will come [as a thief](#), and [you will](#) certainly not [know](#) what [hour](#) I will come against you.

UST

³ So then, keep remembering [God's message](#) and the truth that you accepted when you heard it. [Always obey it](#) and [turn away from your sinful behavior](#). If you do not do this, [I will come to you when you are](#) not [expecting me, as a thief](#) comes. You will never [know](#) at what [time](#) I will come to judge you.

Revelation 3:4

a few names (ULT)

a few believers there (UST)

Here, **names** is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: "a few people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

have not stained their clothes (ULT)

have not been doing what is wrong. It is as though they have not dirtied their garments. As a result, because they are worthy to live... they (UST)

Jesus speaks of sin in a person's life as if it were dirty **clothes**. Alternate translation: "have not made their lives sinful like dirty clothes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

they will walk with me (ULT)

with me...will live (UST)

People commonly spoke of living as "walking." Alternate translation: "they will live with me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in white (ULT)

will be...dressed in pure white clothing (UST)

Clothes that are **white** represent a pure life without sin. Alternate translation: "and they will be dressed in white, which shows that they are pure" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have...stained](#)
- [clothes](#)
- [they will walk](#)
- [worthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have...been doing what is wrong. It is as though they have...dirtied](#)
- [their garments. As a result, because they are worthy to live](#)
- [will live](#)
- [pure in every way, like people who](#)

ULT

⁴ But you have a few names in Sardis who have not [stained](#) their [clothes](#), and [they will walk](#) with me in white, for they are [worthy](#).

UST

⁴ Nevertheless, you have a few believers there in the city of Sardis who have not [been doing what is wrong. It is as though they have](#) not [dirtied their garments. As a result, because they are worthy to live](#) with me, they [will live](#) with me and will be [pure in every way, like people who](#) are dressed in pure white clothing.

Revelation 3:5

The one who conquers (ULT) Those who conquer Satan (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: “Anyone who conquers” or “All who conquer” (See: [Metaphor](#))

will be clothed in this manner in white garments (ULT) I will dress in these same white garments (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the passive verb **clothed**, you can translate it with an active verb. Alternate translation: “will wear white garments” or “I will give white clothes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I will confess his name (ULT) will acknowledge...that they belong to me (UST)

Here **I will confess his name** means he would announce that the person belongs to him, not simply say the person's name. Alternate translation: “I will announce that he belongs to me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

before my Father (ULT) in the...my Father (UST)

Alternate translation: “in the presence of my Father”

my Father (ULT) the...my Father (UST)

Here, **Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

his angels (ULT) of...his angels (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will be clothed
- garments
- name
- name (2)
- Book of Life
- of Life
- I will confess

ULT

⁵ The one who conquers [will be clothed](#) in this manner in white [garments](#), and I will certainly not wipe his [name](#) out of the [Book of Life](#), and [I will confess](#) his [name](#) before my [Father](#) and before his [angels](#).

UST

⁵ Those who conquer Satan [I will dress](#) in these same white [garments](#). I will never erase their [names](#) from the [Book of Life that contains the names of the people who have eternal life](#). Instead, I [will acknowledge](#) in the presence of my [Father](#) and his [angels that they belong to me](#).

- Father
- angels

Translation Words - UST

- I will dress
- garments
- names
- belong (2)
- Book of Life that contains the names of the people who have eternal life
- Life that contains the names of the people who have eternal life
- will acknowledge...that
- Father
- angels

Revelation 3:6

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

⁶ Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#).""

UST

⁶ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that [God's Spirit](#) is saying to the [groups of believers assembled together](#).""

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [to...churches](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [groups of believers assembled together](#)

Revelation 3:7

And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Philadelphia (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Philadelphia**. **Philadelphia** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to the angel (ULT)

to the...angel (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT)

this message...I am saying these things to you (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **says these things** in [Revelation 2:1](#) (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

the key of David (ULT)

Just as King David...to enter the ancient city of Jerusalem, so I have the authority to allow people (UST)

Jesus speaks of his authority to decide who may go into his kingdom as if it were King David's **key**. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

And...The...who opens...no one will shut (ULT)

to the...I am the One who is...opens doors...no one can close them (UST)

Alternate translation: "he opens the door to the kingdom and no one can close it"

And...no one...he shuts...opens (ULT)

to the...no one...closes doors...can open them (UST)

Alternate translation: "he closes the door and no one can open it"

Translation Words - ULT

- to...angel
- of...church
- Holy One
- True One

ULT

⁷ "And to the [angel](#) of the [church](#) in Philadelphia write: 'The [Holy One](#), the [True One](#), the one having the key [of David](#), the one who opens and no one will shut, and he shuts and no one opens, says these things:

UST

⁷ "Write this message to the [angel](#) of the [group of believers assembled](#) in the city of Philadelphia: 'I am saying these things to you. I am the One who is [holy](#), the [True One](#). [Just as King David](#) had authority to allow people to enter the ancient city of Jerusalem, so I have the authority to allow people to enter my kingdom. I am the one who opens doors so that no one can close them and the one who closes doors so that no one can open them.

- of David

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- group of believers assembled
- holy
- True One
- Just as King David

Revelation 3:8

your...I have put before...an open door (ULT)
you...I have opened a door for you (UST)

Alternate translation: "I have opened a door for you"

you have kept my word (ULT)
you have obeyed what I say (UST)

This could mean: (1) they have followed his teachings. (2) they have obeyed his commands.

my name (ULT)
that you believe in me (UST)

Here, **name** is a metonym for the person who has that name.

Alternate translation: "me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I know
- works
- power
- you have kept
- word
- name

Translation Words - UST

- I know
- everything...have done
- power
- you have obeyed what
- say
- that you believe in

ULT

⁸ "I know your works (Behold, I have put before you an open door that no one is able to shut), that you have little power, yet you have kept my word and have not denied my name.

UST

⁸ I know everything you have done. Be aware that I have opened a door for you that no one can close. I know that although you have little power, you have obeyed what I say, and you have not denied that you believe in me.

Revelation 3:9

synagogue of Satan (ULT) meet together with those who follow Satan (UST)

People who gather to obey or honor **Satan** are spoken of as if they were in a **synagogue**, a place of worship and teaching for the Jews. See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:9](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

bow down (ULT) to bow down humbly (UST)

Here to **bow down** is a sign of submission, not worship. Alternate translation: “bow down in submission” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

before your feet (ULT) at your feet (UST)

Here, **feet** represents the person before whom these people bow down. Alternate translation: “before you” or “to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they might realize (ULT) to acknowledge (UST)

Alternate translation: “they will learn” or “they will admit”

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [of Satan](#)
- [themselves](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [bow down](#)
- [they might realize](#)
- [loved](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [meet together with those who follow](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [Jews...that...are...true](#)
- [Jews...that...are...true](#)
- [to bow down humbly](#)
- [to acknowledge](#)
- [love](#)

ULT

⁹ Behold, I will give those of the [synagogue of Satan](#) who call [themselves Jews](#) but are not, rather, they are lying—behold, I will make them so that they will come and [bow down](#) before your feet, and [they might realize](#) that I [loved](#) you.

UST

⁹ Be careful! I am aware that some of your people [meet together with those who follow Satan](#). They claim to be [Jews](#), but I know that they are not [true](#) Jews. They are lying. I will cause them to come to you and [to bow down humbly](#) at your feet and [to acknowledge](#) that I [love](#) you.

Revelation 3:10

**of...steadfastness, I will also keep you from...
hour of testing (ULT)
to endure suffering patiently, I will keep you
safe from...those who will try to make you
disobey me (UST)**

Alternate translation: "I will also prevent the hour of testing from happening to you" or "I will protect you so you do not enter the hour of testing"

**hour of testing (ULT)
those who will try to make you disobey me
(UST)**

This probably means "the time when people try to make you disobey me."

**that is about to come (ULT)
those who will try to make you disobey me...They will soon (UST)**

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you have kept](#)
- [word](#)
- [of...steadfastness](#)
- [hour](#)
- [inhabited world](#)
- [to test](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you have obeyed](#)
- [when I commanded you](#)
- [to endure suffering patiently](#)
- [those who will try to make you disobey me](#)
- [do this](#)
- [everyone](#)
- [world](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Because [you have kept](#) the [word](#) of my [steadfastness](#), I will also keep you from the [hour](#) of testing that is about to come on the entire [inhabited world](#), to [test](#) those who live on the [earth](#).

UST

¹⁰ Because [you have obeyed](#) me [when I commanded you to endure suffering patiently](#), I will keep you safe from [those who will try to make you disobey me](#). They will soon [do this](#) to [everyone](#) in the entire [world](#).

Revelation 3:11

I am coming quickly (ULT)

I am coming soon (UST)

It is understood that he is **coming** in order to judge. Alternate translation: "I am coming to judge soon" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Hold fast to what you have (ULT)

So continue to do what I have told you (UST)

Continuing to believe firmly in Christ is spoken of as if it were holding something tightly. Alternate translation: "Continue to believe firmly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

crown (ULT)

your reward that God has reserved (UST)

Here, **crown** stands for a reward. See how you translated "crown" in [Revelation 2:10](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [crown](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your reward that God has reserved](#)

ULT

¹¹ I am coming quickly. Hold fast to what you have so that no one might take away your [crown](#).

UST

¹¹ I am coming soon. So continue to do what I have told you, in order that no one may cause you to lose [your reward that God has reserved](#) for you.

Revelation 3:12

The one who conquers (ULT) those who conquer Satan (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: "Anyone who conquers" or "All who conquer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God (ULT)

I will make...secure. They will be firm like the pillars in the temple of my God (UST)

The **pillar** represents an important and permanent part of God's kingdom. Alternate translation: "I will make him strong, like a pillar in the temple of my God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a pillar
- temple
- of...God
- of...God (2)
- of...God (3)
- God (4)
- name
- name (2)
- name
- Jerusalem
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- secure...will be firm like the pillars
- temple
- God
- God (2)
- God (3)
- God (4)
- name
- name (2)
- name, showing that they belong to me
- Jerusalem
- heaven

ULT

¹² The one who conquers, I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will certainly not go out from it anymore, and I will write on him the name of my God, the name of the city of my God (even the new Jerusalem, that comes down out of heaven from my God), and my new name.

UST

¹² I will make those who conquer Satan secure. They will be firm like the pillars in the temple of my God, and they will remain there forever. I will mark them with the name of my God, showing that they belong to him. I will also mark them with the name of the city of my God, the New Jerusalem, the city that will descend out of heaven from my God. I will also mark them with my new name, showing that they belong to me.

Revelation 3:13

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

¹³ Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#).""

UST

¹³ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that [God's Spirit is saying](#) to the [groups of believers assembled together](#).""

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [to...churches](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit is saying](#)
- [groups of believers assembled together](#)

Revelation 3:14

And to the angel of the church in Laodicea write (ULT)

Write...to the angel of the group of believers assembled in the city of Laodicea (UST)

This is the beginning of the message to the angel of the church in **Laodicea**. **Laodicea** is the name of one of the seven churches, or seven assemblies of believers, which existed in southwestern Asia Minor when John wrote the book of Revelation. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:11](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to the angel (ULT)

to the...angel (UST)

See how you translated **angel** in [Revelation 1:20](#) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

says these things (ULT)

this message (UST)

See how you translated the phrase **says these things** in [Revelation 2:1](#) (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

The Amen (ULT)

I am saying these things to you. I am the one who guarantees all of God's promises (UST)

Here, **The Amen** is a name for Jesus Christ. He guarantees God's promises by saying amen to them.

the...the beginning of...creation of God (ULT)

of...the...I am the ruler over...all...of God's...creation (UST)

Here, **the beginning of the creation of God** could refer to: (1) the one who rules over everything that God created. (2) the one through whom God created everything.

Translation Words - ULT

- to...angel
- of...church
- Amen
- faithful
- true
- witness
- of...creation
- of God

ULT

¹⁴ "And to the [angel](#) of the [church](#) in Laodicea write: 'The [Amen](#), the [faithful](#) and [true witness](#), the beginning of the [creation of God](#) says these things:

UST

¹⁴ "Write this message to the [angel](#) of [the group of believers assembled in](#) the city of Laodicea: 'I am saying these things to you. [I am the one who guarantees all of God's promises. I am the one who testifies about God reliably and accurately.](#) I am the ruler over [all](#) of [God's creation](#).

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- the group of believers assembled in
- I am the one who guarantees all of God's promises
- I am the one who testifies about God
- reliably
- accurately
- all...creation
- God's

Revelation 3:15

you are neither cold nor hot (ULT)
you do not love me much. You are like water
that is neither cold nor hot (UST)

The writer speaks of the Laodiceans as if they were water. Here, **cold** and **hot** could: (1) represent two extremes of spiritual interest or love for God, where “cold” is to be completely against God, and to be “hot” is to be zealous to serve him. (2) both refer to water that is useful for drinking or for cooking or healing, respectively. Alternate translation: “you are like water that is neither cold nor hot” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I know](#)
- [works](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I know](#)
- [everything...have done](#)

ULT

¹⁵ “[I know](#) your [works](#), that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were cold or hot!

UST

¹⁵ [I know everything](#) that you [have done](#): You do not deny that you trust in me, but you do not love me much. You are like water that is neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot!

Revelation 3:16

**I am about to vomit you out of my mouth
(ULT)**

**I am about to reject you, as if I were spitting...
water out of my mouth (UST)**

Rejecting them is spoken of as vomiting them **out of the mouth**.
Alternate translation: "I will reject you as I would spit out lukewarm
water" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁶ So, because you are lukewarm, and neither hot nor cold, I am about to vomit you out of my mouth.

UST

¹⁶ Because you are neither enthusiastic about me nor concerned about your lack of spiritual growth, I am about to reject you, as if I were spitting lukewarm water out of my mouth.

Revelation 3:17

you are miserable and pitiable and poor and blind and naked (ULT)

you are lacking in many ways. You are like people who are very wretched and pitiful, poor, blind, and naked (UST)

Jesus speaks of their spiritual condition as if he were speaking about their physical condition. Alternate translation: "you are like people who are most miserable, pitiable, poor, blind, and naked" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you do...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you do...realize](#)

ULT

¹⁷ For you say, 'I am rich and have become wealthy and have need of nothing,' and yet [you do](#) not [know](#) that you are miserable and pitiable and poor and blind and naked.

UST

¹⁷ You are saying, 'I am rich and have acquired a lot of wealth. I lack nothing!' But [you do](#) not [realize](#) that you are lacking in many ways. You are like people who are very wretched and pitiful, poor, blind, and naked.

Revelation 3:18

Buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, and brilliant white garments so you may clothe yourself and not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so you will see

Here, **to buy** represents receiving things from Jesus that have true spiritual value. The **gold refined by fire** represents spiritual wealth. The **brilliant white garments** represents righteousness. And the **salve to anoint your eyes** represents the ability to understand spiritual things. Alternate translation: “to come to me and receive spiritual wealth, which is more valuable than gold that is refined by fire. Receive from me righteousness, which is like brilliant white garments, so that you will not be ashamed. And receive from me wisdom, which is like salve for the eyes, so that you may understand spiritual things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I counsel
- gold
- fire
- garments
- you might clothe yourself
- would...show
- shame
- to anoint

Translation Words - UST

- I advise
- pure
- gold
- Let me make you righteous...garments
- you might wear clothes
- instead of
- ashamed
- the truth, as though you were buying from me eye salve to put on sick eyes

ULT

¹⁸ I counsel you to buy from me gold refined by fire so that you might become rich, and brilliant white garments so that you might clothe yourself and would not show the shame of your nakedness, and salve to anoint your eyes so that you might see.

UST

¹⁸ I advise you to obtain from me all that you need, as though you were buying from me pure gold so that you may be truly rich. Let me make you righteous, as though you were buying from me white garments so that you might wear clothes instead of being naked and ashamed. Let me help you to understand the truth, as though you were buying from me eye salve to put on sick eyes.

Revelation 3:19

be earnest...and...repent (ULT)
with all your heart...and...turn away...from
your sinful behavior (UST)

Alternate translation: "be serious and repent"

Translation Words - ULT

- rebuke
- discipline
- I love
- be earnest
- repent

Translation Words - UST

- rebuke
- correct
- I love
- turn away...from your sinful behavior
- with all your heart

ULT

¹⁹ I rebuke and discipline as many as I love. Therefore, be earnest and repent.

UST

¹⁹ Since I rebuke and correct all those whom I love, turn away with all your heart from your sinful behavior.

Revelation 3:20

I stand at the door and knock (ULT)
I am calling each one, and I am standing and waiting at your door and knocking on the door (UST)

Jesus speaks about wanting people to relate to him as if he wanted them to invite him into their home. Alternate translation: "I am like one standing at the door and knocking" (See: [Metaphor](#))

knock (ULT)
knocking on the door (UST)

When people want someone to welcome them into their home, they **knock** on the door. Alternate translation: "I want you to let me come inside" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

might hear my voice (ULT)
hear my voice (UST)

Here, **my voice** refers to Christ speaking. Alternate translation: "hears me speak" or "hears me call" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will indeed enter into him (ULT)
I will come in (UST)

Some languages might prefer the verb "go" here. Alternate translation: "I will indeed go into his home" (See: [Go and Come](#))

and will eat with him (ULT)
and we will eat...as friends (UST)

Here, **eat with him** represents being together as friends. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [voice](#)

ULT

²⁰ Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone might hear my [voice](#) and would open the door, I will indeed enter into him and will eat with him, and he with me.

UST

²⁰ I am here! I am calling each one, and I am standing and waiting at your door and knocking on the door. If you hear my [voice](#) and you open the door, I will come in and we will eat together as friends.

Revelation 3:21

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the Son of Man's messages to the angels of the seven churches.

The one who conquers (ULT) who conquers Satan (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: "Anyone who conquers" or "All who conquer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to sit down with me on my throne (ULT) to sit and rule with me on my throne (UST)

To **sit down** on a **throne** means to rule. Alternate translation: "to rule with me" or "to sit down on my throne and rule with me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

my Father (ULT) my Father (UST)

Here, **Father** is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [as](#)
- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [just as](#)
- [Father](#)

ULT

²¹ The one who conquers, I will grant to him to sit down with me on my [throne](#), [as](#) I also conquered and sat down with my [Father](#) on his [throne](#).

UST

²¹ I will permit everyone who conquers Satan to sit and rule with me on my [throne](#), [just as](#) I conquered Satan and now sit and rule with my [Father](#) on his [throne](#).

Revelation 3:22

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let the one who has an ear hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must
listen carefully (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#) (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

²² Let the one who has an ear hear what the [Spirit](#) says to the [churches](#).""

UST

²² Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to the message that [God's Spirit](#) is saying to [the groups of believers assembled together](#).""

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [to...churches](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [the groups of believers assembled together](#)

Revelation 4

Revelation 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 8 and 11.

John has finished describing the letters to the churches. He now begins to describe a vision that God showed him.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jasper, carnelian, and emerald

These words refer to kinds of special stones that the people in John's day considered valuable. It may be difficult for you to translate these words if people in your culture do not value special kinds of stones.

Twenty-four elders

Elders are church leaders. Twenty-four elders may be symbolic of the whole church through the ages. There were twelve tribes in Old Testament Israel and twelve apostles in the New Testament church. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Seven spirits of God

These spirits are the seven spirits of [Revelation 1:4](#).

Giving glory to God

God's glory is the great beauty and radiant majesty that God has because he is God. Other Bible writers describe it as if it were a light so bright that no one can look at it. No one can give God this kind of glory, because it is already his. When people give glory to God or when God receives glory, people say that God has the glory that is his, that it is right for God to have that glory, and that people should worship God because he has that glory. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#) and [worthy](#), [worth](#), [unworthy](#), [worthless](#) and [prostrate](#), [bow down](#), [worship](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Difficult images

Such things as bolts of lightning coming from the throne, lamps that are spirits, and a sea in front of the throne may be difficult to imagine, and so the words for them may be difficult to translate. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Revelation 4:1

General Information:

John begins to describe his vision of the throne of God.

After these things (ULT)

After these things (UST)

See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:1-3:22](#) Alternate translation: "After I had just seen these things"

an open door in heaven (ULT)

that there was a door open in heaven (UST)

The expression **open door in heaven** stands for the ability that God gave John to see into heaven, at least by means of a vision. (See: [Metaphor](#))

speaking to me like a trumpet (ULT)

If your readers would misunderstand this simile, you can state explicitly how the voice was **like a trumpet**. Alternate translation: "speaking to me loudly like the sound of a trumpet" (See: [Simile](#))

a trumpet (ULT)

a loud trumpet (UST)

A **trumpet** is a instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [voice](#)
- [like](#)
- [a trumpet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [voice](#)
- [was like](#)
- [a loud trumpet](#)

ULT

¹ After these things I looked, and behold—an open door in [heaven](#), and the first [voice](#) that I had heard speaking to me [like a trumpet](#), saying, "Come up here, and I will show you what must happen after these things."

UST

¹ After these things I, John, saw in the vision that there was a door open in [heaven](#). The one whose [voice was like a loud trumpet](#), the one who had spoken to me previously, said to me, "Come up here! I will show you events that must happen later."

Revelation 4:2

I was in the Spirit (ULT) God's Spirit began revealing things to me (UST)

John speaks of being influenced by God's **Spirit** as if he were **in the Spirit**. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:10](#). Alternate translation: "I was influenced by the Spirit" or "the Spirit influenced me" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Spirit
- a throne
- throne
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit
- a throne
- the throne
- heaven

ULT

² Immediately I was in the Spirit, and behold—a throne was placed in heaven! And {someone is} sitting on the throne.

UST

² Immediately God's Spirit began revealing things to me. He showed me a throne in heaven, and on the throne a ruler was sitting.

Revelation 4:3

a jasper stone and carnelian (ULT) a crystalline jasper jewel and like a red carnelian jewel (UST)

The terms **jasper** and **carnelian** refer to valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal, and carnelian may have been red. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

an emerald (ULT) a brilliant green emerald jewel (UST)

An **emerald** is a green, valuable stone. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [like](#)
- [like](#) (2)
- [throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [like](#)
- [like](#) (2)
- [throne](#)

ULT

³ And the one who was sitting on it {had} the appearance [like](#) a jasper stone and carnelian, and a rainbow around the [throne](#) {had} the appearance [like](#) an emerald.

UST

³ The ruler on the throne shone [like](#) a crystalline jasper jewel and like a red carnelian jewel. Around the [throne](#) was a rainbow that shone [like](#) a brilliant green emerald jewel.

Revelation 4:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- throne
- thrones
- thrones (2)
- elders
- dressed
- garments
- heads
- golden
- were...crowns

Translation Words - UST

- throne
- there were...other thrones
- thrones (2)
- heads
- elders
- They were wearing
- pure...garments
- golden
- crowns

ULT

⁴ And around the throne {were} 24 thrones, and seated on the thrones {were} 24 elders dressed in white garments, and on their heads {were} golden crowns.

UST

⁴ Around the throne there were twenty-four other thrones. On these thrones twenty-four elders were sitting. They were wearing pure white garments and had golden crowns on their heads.

Revelation 4:5

flashes of lightning (ULT)

flashes of light (UST)

Use your language's way of describing what **lightning** looks like each time it appears.

And...rumblings...thunder (ULT)

Out of...loud voices...thunder (UST)

Here, **rumblings** are the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder.

the seven spirits of God (ULT)

the seven spirits of God (UST)

The number **seven** is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The **seven spirits** refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

ULT

⁵ And from the [throne](#) burst out flashes of lightning and [rumblings](#) and thunder. And seven [lamps of fire](#) are burning in front of the [throne](#), which are the seven [spirits of God](#).

UST

⁵ Out of the [throne](#) came flashes of light and [loud voices](#) and thunder. In front of the [throne](#) were seven [burning torches](#). These are the seven [spirits of God](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [rumblings](#)
- [lamps](#)
- [of fire](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [of God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [loud voices](#)
- [were...burning](#)
- [torches](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [of God](#)

Revelation 4:6

a glass sea (ULT)

a sea made of glass (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this metaphor, you can state how it was like **glass** or a **sea**. This could mean: (1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. Alternate translation: "a sea that was as smooth as glass" (2) glass is spoken of as if it were a sea. Alternate translation: "glass that was spread out like a sea" (See: [Metaphor](#))

like crystal (ULT)

It was clear, like crystal (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this simile, you can state how it was **like crystal**. Alternate translation: "clear as crystal" (See: [Simile](#))

In the middle of the throne and around the throne

Alternate translation: "immediately around the throne" or "close to the throne and around it"

were} four living creatures (ULT)

four...there was a living creature (UST)

Alternate translation: "four living beings" or "four living things"

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne](#)
- [of...throne](#) (2)
- [throne](#) (3)
- [was](#)
- [like](#)
- [were...living creatures](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [of the](#) (3)
- [there was also what looked like](#)
- [It was clear, like](#)
- [there was a living creature](#)

ULT

⁶ And in front of the [throne was](#) a glass sea, [like](#) crystal, and in the middle of the [throne](#) and around the [throne](#) {were} four [living creatures](#), full of eyes, front and back.

UST

⁶ In front of the [throne there was also what looked like](#) a sea made of glass. [It was clear, like](#) crystal. On each of the four sides [of the throne there was a living creature](#). Each one was covered with eyes in front and behind.

Revelation 4:7

the first living creature {was} like a lion, and the second living creature {was} like a calf, and the third living creature had a face as a man, and the fourth living creature {was} like an eagle flying (ULT)

How the head of each **living creature** appeared to John is expressed as a comparison with something more familiar. (See: [Simile](#))

living creature (ULT)

See how you translated this term in [Revelation 4:6](#) Alternate translation: “living being” or “living thing”

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creature](#)
- [living creature](#) (2)
- [living creature](#) (3)
- [living creature](#) (4)
- [was} like](#)
- [was} like](#) (2)
- [as](#)
- [was} like](#) (3)
- [an eagle](#)
- [a lion](#)
- [a calf](#)
- [a face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [creature, creation](#)
- [creature, creation](#) (2)
- [creature, creation](#) (3)
- [creature, creation](#) (4)
- [eagle](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#) (2)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#) (3)
- [lion, lioness](#)

ULT

⁷ And the first [living creature](#) {was} like a lion, and the second [living creature](#) {was} like a calf, and the third [living creature](#) had a face as a man, and the fourth [living creature](#) {was} like an eagle flying.

UST

⁷⁻⁸ The first living creature was like a lion. The second living creature was like an ox. The third living creature had a face like a man's face. The fourth living creature was like an eagle that was flying. Each of the four living creatures had six wings. These wings were covered with eyes both top and bottom. Day and night they constantly say: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God, who rules over all. He is the one who has always existed, who exists now, and who will always exist."

Revelation 4:8

And...all around...are full of eyes underneath (ULT)

The top and bottom of each wing was covered with **eyes**.

who is coming (ULT)

Existing in the future is spoken of as **coming**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creatures](#)
- [day](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [holy](#) (2)
- [holy](#) (3)
- [is} the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [Almighty](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Almighty](#)
- [God](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#) (2)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#) (3)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [day](#)
- [creature, creation](#)

ULT

⁸ And the four [living creatures](#), each one of them have in turn six wings all around and are full of eyes underneath, and do not have rest night and [day](#), saying, "[Holy, holy, holy {is} the Lord God Almighty](#), who was, and who is, and who is coming."

UST

⁷⁻⁸ The first living creature was like a lion. The second living creature was like an ox. The third living creature had a face like a man's face. The fourth living creature was like an eagle that was flying. Each of the four living creatures had six wings. These wings were covered with eyes both top and bottom. Day and night they constantly say: "Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God, who rules over all. He is the one who has always existed, who exists now, and who will always exist."

Revelation 4:9

the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever and ever

This is one person. The **one who sits on the throne** lives forever and ever.

forever {and} ever (ULT)

These two words mean about the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: “for all eternity” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creatures](#)
- [glory](#)
- [honor](#)
- [throne](#)
- [who lives](#)
- [forever](#)
- [and} ever](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [honor](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [age, aged](#)
- [age, aged](#)
- [creature, creation](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

ULT

⁹ And whenever the [living creatures](#) will give [glory](#) and [honor](#) and thanks to the one who sits on the [throne](#), the one [who lives forever {and} ever](#),

UST

⁹⁻¹⁰ The living creatures praise, honor, and thank the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever. Whenever they do that, the twenty-four elders lie down on the ground before the one who sits on the throne. They worship him, the one who lives forever and ever. They lay their crowns in front of the throne and say:

Revelation 4:10

will fall down (ULT)

They purposely lie down facing the ground to show that they are worshiping.

they will lay their crowns before the throne (ULT)

The elders were respectfully placing the **crowns** on the ground, showing that they were submitting to God's authority to rule. Alternate translation: "they lay their crowns before the throne to show that they were submitting to him" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

they will lay (ULT)

This could refer to: (1) placing something. (2) throwing down forcibly, as of something worthless ([Revelation 2:22](#)). The reader should understand that the elders are acting respectfully.

Translation Words - ULT

- [elders](#)
- [will fall down](#)
- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [worship](#)
- [who lives](#)
- [forever](#)
- [and} ever](#)
- [crowns](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [prostrate, bow down, worship](#)
- [age, aged](#)
- [age, aged](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [crown, crowned](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#) (2)

ULT

10 the 24 [elders will fall down](#) before the one seated on the [throne](#) and [worship](#) the one [who lives forever {and} ever](#), and they will lay their [crowns](#) before the [throne](#), saying,

UST

9-10 The living creatures praise, honor, and thank the one who sits on the throne, the one who lives forever. Whenever they do that, the twenty-four elders lie down on the ground before the one who sits on the throne. They worship him, the one who lives forever and ever. They lay their crowns in front of the throne and say:

Revelation 4:11

our Lord and our God

Here, **our Lord and God** is one person, the one who was sitting on the throne.

to receive the glory and the honor and the power (ULT)

Here, **the glory and the honor and the power** are things that God always has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. Alternate translation: “to be praised for your glory, honor, and power” or “for everyone to praise you because you are glorious, honorable, and powerful” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Worthy](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [glory](#)
- [honor](#)
- [power](#)
- [created](#)
- [were created](#)
- [your...will](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [God](#)
- [honor](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [power, powerful, powerfully](#)
- [will of God](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [create, created, creation, creator](#)
- [create, created, creation, creator](#)
- [receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance](#)

ULT

11 “[Worthy](#) are you, our [Lord](#) and [God](#), [to receive](#) the [glory](#) and the [honor](#) and the [power](#), because you [created](#) all things, and by your [will](#) they existed and [were created](#).”

UST

11 “Our Lord and God, You deserve for all beings to praise you because you are glorious, honorable, and all-powerful. You alone created everything, And because you intended that they should exist, you created them; as a result, they exist.”

Revelation 5

Revelation 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this in verses 9-13.

Special concepts in this chapter

Sealed scroll

Kings and important people in John's time wrote important documents on large pieces of paper or animal skin. They then rolled them up and sealed them with wax so they would stay closed. Only the person to whom the document was written had the authority to open it by breaking the seal. In this chapter, "the one who was seated on the throne" had written the scroll. Only the person called "the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David" and "the Lamb" had the authority to open it. (See: [scroll](#) and [authority](#))

Twenty-four elders

Elders are church leaders. Twenty-four elders may be symbolic of the whole church through the ages. There were twelve tribes in Old Testament Israel and twelve apostles in the New Testament church. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Christian prayers

The prayers of Christians are described as incense. Christian prayers have a good smell to God. He is pleased when Christians pray.

Seven spirits of God

These spirits are the seven spirits of [Revelation 1:4](#).

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

The "Lion of the tribe of Judah" and the "Root of David" are metaphors that refer to Jesus. Jesus descended from the tribe of Judah and the family of David. Lions are fierce, and all animals and people are afraid of them, so they are a metaphor for a king whom everyone obeys. The words **Root of David** speak of Israel's King David as if he were a seed that God had planted and of Jesus as if he were a root growing from that seed. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Revelation 5:1

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe what he saw in his vision of the throne of God.

And I saw (ULT)

I saw that there was a scroll (UST)

Alternate translation: "After I saw those things, I saw"

the one who was seated on the throne

This is the same **one** as in [Revelation 4:2-3](#).

And...a scroll written on the inside...on the back (ULT)

I saw that there was a scroll...The scroll was written on its outside...on its inside (UST)

Alternate translation: "a scroll with writing on the front and the back"

having been sealed with seven seals (ULT)

It was sealed with seven seals (UST)

Alternate translation: "and it had seven seals keeping it closed"

Translation Words - ULT

- right hand
- throne
- a scroll

Translation Words - UST

- right hand
- throne
- The scroll

ULT

¹ And I saw in the right hand of the one who was seated on the throne a scroll written on the inside and on the back, having been sealed with seven seals.

UST

¹ I saw that there was a scroll in the right hand of the one who was sitting on the throne. The scroll was written on its outside as well as on its inside. It was sealed with seven seals.

Revelation 5:2

Who {is} worthy to open the scroll and to break its seals (ULT)

The person who is worthy to break the seals of the scroll and then to open it should come and do it (UST)

Someone would need to break the **seals** in order **to open the scroll**.
Alternate translation: "Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?" (See: [Order of Events](#))

Who {is} worthy to open the scroll and to break its seals (ULT)

The person who is worthy to break the seals of the scroll and then to open it should come and do it (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can translate it as a statement: "Show us who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- mighty
- a...angel
- proclaiming
- a...voice
- is} worthy
- scroll
- seals

Translation Words - UST

- strong
- a...angel
- who was announcing
- a...voice
- is worthy
- seals
- scroll

ULT

² And I saw a [mighty angel](#) [proclaiming](#) with a loud [voice](#), "Who {is} [worthy](#) to open the [scroll](#) and to break its [seals](#)?"

UST

² I saw a [strong angel who was announcing](#) in a loud [voice](#), "The person who [is worthy](#) to break the [seals](#) of the [scroll](#) and then to open it should come and do it!"

Revelation 5:3

**in heaven or on the earth or under the earth
(ULT)**

**no created being in heaven...on the earth, or
under it...was able (UST)**

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. Alternate translation: “anywhere in heaven or on the earth or under the earth” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [earth](#)
- [earth](#) (2)
- [scroll](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [no created being in heaven...was able](#)
- [earth](#)
- [or under it](#) (2)
- [scroll](#)

ULT

³ And no one in [heaven](#) or on the [earth](#) or under the [earth](#) was able to open the [scroll](#) or to read it.

UST

³ But [no created being in heaven](#), on the [earth](#), [or under it was able](#) to open the [scroll](#) and see what was written on it.

Revelation 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I began to weep
- worthy
- scroll

Translation Words - UST

- I wept
- worthy
- to do that

ULT

⁴ And I began to weep bitterly because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to read it.

UST

⁴ I wept loudly because there was no one worthy to do that.

Revelation 5:5

Behold (ULT)

Look (UST)

Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

The Lion of the tribe of Judah

This is a title for the man **from the tribe of Judah** that God had promised would be the great king. Alternate translation: "The one who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah" or "The king who is called the Lion of the tribe of Judah"

the Lion (ULT)

the...who is called...Lion (UST)

The king is spoken of as if he were a **Lion** because a lion is very strong. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Root of David (ULT)

who is the descendant and heir of King David (UST)

This is a title for the descendant of **David** that God had promised would be the great king. Alternate translation: "the one who is called the Root of David"

the Root of David (ULT)

who is the descendant and heir of King David (UST)

The descendant is spoken of as if David's family were a tree and he were a root of that tree. Alternate translation: "the Descendant of David" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [elders](#)
- [Do...weep](#)
- [Lion](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of David](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [seals](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [elders](#)
- [Do...cry any longer](#)
- [called...Lion](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [and heir of King David](#)

ULT

⁵ And one of the [elders](#) said to me, "Do not [weep](#). Behold, the [Lion](#) who {is} from the [tribe of Judah](#), the Root of [David](#), has conquered. {He is able} to open the [scroll](#) and its seven [seals](#)."

UST

⁵ But one of the [elders](#) said to me, "Do not [cry any longer](#)! Look, the one who is [called](#) the [Lion](#) from the [tribe of Judah](#), who is the descendant [and heir of King David](#), has overcome Satan! As a result, he is worthy to break the seven [seals](#) on the [scroll](#) and to open it!"

- [seals](#)
- [scroll](#)

Revelation 5:6

General Information:

The Lamb appears in the throne room. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

a Lamb (ULT)

a Lamb (UST)

Here, **Lamb** is used symbolically to refer to Christ. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the seven spirits of God (ULT)

the seven spirits of God that God (UST)

The number **seven** is a symbol of completeness and perfection. The **seven spirits** refers either to the Spirit of God or to seven spirits who serve God. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:4](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

sent out into all the earth (ULT)

sends out over all the earth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can translate it with an active verb. Alternate translation: "which God sent out over all the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...throne
- living creatures
- elders
- a Lamb
- as though
- horns
- spirits
- of God
- sent out
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- a Lamb
- living creatures
- elders
- throne
- Although
- horns
- spirits of God
- God
- sends
- earth

ULT

⁶ And I saw in the middle of the [throne](#) and the four [living creatures](#), and among the [elders](#), [a Lamb](#) standing, [as though](#) having been killed, having seven [horns](#) and seven eyes, which are the seven [spirits of God sent out](#) into all the [earth](#).

UST

⁶ Then I saw [a Lamb](#) standing there in the midst of the four [living creatures](#) and the [elders](#) around the [throne](#). [Although](#) he was alive, he had marks that showed that someone had killed him. He had seven [horns](#), and he had seven eyes that are the seven [spirits of God](#) that [God sends](#) out over all the [earth](#).

Revelation 5:7

he came (ULT)

The Lamb came (UST)

He approached the throne. Some languages would use the verb “go.”
Alternate translation: “he went” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [right hand](#)
- [throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [right hand](#)
- [throne](#)

ULT

⁷ And he came and took {the scroll}
from the [right hand](#) of the one who was
seated on the [throne](#).

UST

⁷ The Lamb came and took the scroll
from the [right hand](#) of the one sitting
on the [throne](#).

Revelation 5:8

the Lamb (ULT) him (UST)

Here, **Lamb** is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

fell down (ULT) prostrated themselves (UST)

Their faces were toward the ground to show that they were worshiping the Lamb. They did this on purpose; they did not fall accidentally. Alternate translation: “lay down on the ground”

each one (ULT) They each (UST)

Here, **each one** could refer to: (1) each of the elders and living creatures. (2) each of the elders.

a golden bowl full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints (ULT) golden bowls full of incense that represents the prayers of God's people (UST)

Here, **incense** here is a symbol for the believers' **prayers** to God. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scroll](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [elders](#)
- [fell down](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [a harp](#)
- [golden](#)
- [incense](#)
- [prayers](#)
- [of...saints](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scroll](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [elders](#)
- [prostrated themselves](#)
- [him](#)
- [a harp](#)
- [golden](#)
- [incense](#)
- [prayers](#)
- [God's people](#)

ULT

⁸ And when he had taken the [scroll](#), the four [living creatures](#) and the 24 [elders](#) [fell down](#) before the [Lamb](#), each one having a [harp](#) and a [golden](#) bowl full of [incense](#), which are the [prayers](#) of the [saints](#).

UST

⁸ When he took the [scroll](#), the four [living creatures](#) and the twenty-four [elders](#) [prostrated themselves](#) before [him](#). They each had a [harp](#), and they had [golden](#) bowls full of [incense](#) that represents the [prayers](#) of [God's people](#).

Revelation 5:9

because you were slaughtered (ULT) **because you were killed (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “for they slaughtered you” or “for people killed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you were slaughtered (ULT) **you were killed (UST)**

If your language has a word for killing an animal for a sacrifice, consider using it here.

with your blood (ULT) **with your blood when you died (UST)**

Since **blood** represents a person’s life, losing the blood represents dying. This probably means “by your death” or “by dying.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you purchased people for God (ULT) **redeemed people for God (UST)**

Alternate translation: “you bought people so that they could belong to God” or “you paid the price so that people could belong to God”

from every tribe, language, people, and nation

This means that **people** from every ethnic group are included.

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [seals](#)
- [blood](#)
- [for God](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [people](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worthy](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [seals](#)
- [God](#)
- [tribe](#)

ULT

⁹ And they sing a new song, saying, “You are [worthy](#) to take the [scroll](#) and to open its [seals](#), because you were slaughtered, and with your [blood](#) you purchased people [for God](#) from every [tribe](#) and [tongue](#) and [people](#) and [nation](#).”

UST

⁹ The living creatures and the elders sang a new song. They sang: “You are [worthy](#) to receive the [scroll](#) and to open its [seals](#) because you were killed, and because you redeemed people for [God](#) from every [tribe](#), [language](#), [people](#), and [people group](#) with your [blood when you died](#).”

- language
- people
- people group
- blood when you died

Revelation 5:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a kingdom
- priests
- to...God
- they will reign
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- a people over whom...rules
- God
- to become priests who serve him
- they will rule
- earth

ULT

¹⁰ And you made them a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will reign on the earth."

UST

¹⁰ You have caused them to become a people over whom our God rules and to become priests who serve him; they will rule on the earth."

Revelation 5:11

myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands (ULT)
millions...a crowd...them (UST)

Use an expression in your language that shows that it is a huge number. Alternate translation: “millions” or “too many thousands to count” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sound](#)
- [of...angels](#)
- [throne](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the voices](#)
- [of...angels](#)
- [throne](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [elders](#)

ULT

¹¹ And I looked and heard [the sound](#) of many [angels](#) around the [throne](#) and the [living creatures](#) and the [elders](#) and the total number of them was myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands,

UST

¹¹ As I continued to look, I heard [the voices](#) of many [angels](#) around the [throne](#) and around the [living creatures](#) and the [elders](#). There were millions of them, a crowd so large that no one could count them.

Revelation 5:12

Worthy is the Lamb who has been slaughtered

Alternate translation: “wdwdThe Lamb who has been slaughtered is worthy”

**to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise (ULT)
should praise his power, wealth, wisdom, and strength. It is right that all created things should honor him and praise him (UST)**

These are all things that the Lamb has. Being praised for having them is spoken of as receiving them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹² saying in a loud voice, “Worthy is the Lamb who has been slaughtered to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise.”

UST

¹² They were singing in a loud voice: “The Lamb whom they killed— it is right that we should praise his power, wealth, wisdom, and strength. It is right that all created things should honor him and praise him!”

**to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise (ULT)
should praise his power, wealth, wisdom, and strength. It is right that all created things should honor him and praise him (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand these abstract nouns, you can express them as verbs. See how you translated a similar sentence in [Revelation 4:11](#). Alternate translation: “for everyone to honor, glorify, and praise him because he is powerful, wealthy, wise, and strong” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in a...voice
- praise
- Worthy
- Lamb
- to receive
- power
- wisdom
- strength
- honor
- glory

Translation Words - UST

- in a...voice
- praise him
- Lamb whom
- right that we
- should praise
- his power
- wisdom
- strength
- honor him
- honor him

Revelation 5:13

in heaven and on the earth and under the earth (ULT)

in...heaven and on the earth and under the earth (UST)

This means everywhere: the place where God and the angels live, the place where people and animals live, and the place where those who have died are. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:3](#). (See: [Merism](#))

To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb

Alternate translation: "May he who sits on the throne and the Lamb have"

Translation Words - ULT

- creature
- heaven
- forever
- and} ever
- earth
- earth (2)
- throne
- to...Lamb
- be...praise
- honor
- glory
- power to rule

Translation Words - UST

- creature
- heaven
- forever
- forever
- earth
- earth (2)
- praise
- honor
- glorify
- throne
- lamb
- May they reign with complete power

ULT

¹³ And I heard every creature that was in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea and everything that {is} in them, saying, "To the one who sits on the throne and to the Lamb {be} the praise and the honor and the glory and the power to rule, forever {and} ever."

UST

¹³ And I heard every creature in heaven and on the earth and under the earth and on the sea say, "We must forever praise, honor, and glorify the one who sits on the throne and the lamb. May they reign with complete power forever!"

Revelation 5:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- living creatures
- Amen
- elders
- fell down
- worshiped

Translation Words - UST

- living creatures
- May it be so
- elders
- prostrated themselves on the ground
- worshiped God and the lamb

ULT

¹⁴ And the four living creatures said, "Amen!" and the elders fell down and worshiped. ^[1]

5:14 ^[1]

UST

¹⁴ The four living creatures said, "May it be so!" Then the elders prostrated themselves on the ground and worshiped God and the lamb.

Revelation 6

Revelation 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The author describes what happened after the Lamb opens each of the first six seals. The Lamb does not open the seventh seal until Chapter 8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven Seals

Kings and important people in John's time wrote important documents on large pieces of paper or animal skin. They then rolled them up and sealed them with wax so they would stay closed. Only the person to whom the document was written had the authority to open it by breaking the seal. In this chapter, the Lamb opens the seals. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

The Four Horsemen

As the Lamb opens each of the first four seals, the author describes horsemen riding different colored horses. The colors of the horses seem to symbolize how the rider will affect the earth.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The Lamb

This refers to Jesus. In this chapter, it is also a title for Jesus. (See: [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Similes

In verses 12-14, the author uses several similes to try to describe the images he sees in the vision. He compares the images to everyday things. (See: [Simile](#))

Revelation 6:1

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the events that happened before the throne of God. The Lamb begins to open the seals on the scroll.

Come (ULT)

Come (UST)

This is a command to one person, apparently to the rider of the white horse who is spoken of in verse 2.

Translation Words - ULT

- I saw
- Lamb
- seals
- living creatures
- as
- with a voice

Translation Words - UST

- I saw
- Lamb
- seals of the scroll
- living creatures
- a voice
- as

ULT

¹ And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures saying as with a voice of thunder, "Come!"

UST

¹ I saw the Lamb open the first of the seven seals of the scroll. Then one of the four living creatures said in a voice as loud as thunder, "Come!"

Revelation 6:2

to him was given a crown (ULT)
God gave him a wreath of leaves to wear on his head to show that he was (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “he received a crown” or “God gave him a crown” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...horse
- a bow
- a crown

Translation Words - UST

- a...horse
- a bow...arrows
- a wreath of leaves to wear on his head to show that he was

ULT

² And I looked and behold, a white horse! And the one sitting on it having a bow and to him was given a crown, and he went out conquering, and in order that he might conquer.

UST

² and a white horse appeared. There was someone riding it, and he had a bow and arrows. God gave him a wreath of leaves to wear on his head to show that he was to conquer evil. He went out to continue to do battle and to win.

Revelation 6:3

the second seal (ULT)

the...the second seal (UST)

The word **second** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next seal” or “seal number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the second living creature (ULT)

the second living creature (UST)

The word **second** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next living creature” or “living creature number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seal](#)
- [living creature](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seal](#)
- [living creature](#)

ULT

³ And when he opened the second [seal](#), I heard the second [living creature](#) saying, “Come!”

UST

³ Then the one looking like a Lamb opened the second [seal](#), and I heard the second [living creature](#) say, “Come!”

Revelation 6:4

came out...fiery red (ULT)
appeared...red (UST)

This can be stated as a second sentence. Alternate translation: "came out. It was red like fire" or "came out. It was bright red"

to the one sitting on it was granted to him (ULT)

There was...someone riding it...God had given him...power (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God gave permission to its rider" or "its rider received permission" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to him was given a huge sword (ULT)
but instead...he carried a large sword (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "this rider received a huge sword" or "God gave this rider a huge sword" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#)
- [peace](#)
- [earth](#)
- [people will slaughter](#)
- [a...sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a...horse](#)
- [live peacefully](#)
- [live peacefully](#)
- [to kill](#)
- [carried a...sword](#)

ULT

⁴ And another [horse](#) came out—fiery red! And to the one sitting on it was granted to him to take [peace](#) from the [earth](#), and so that [people will slaughter](#) one another, and to him was given a huge [sword](#).

UST

⁴ When he said that, a red [horse](#) appeared. There was also someone riding it, and God had given him the power to cause people to no longer [live peacefully](#), but instead [to kill](#) each other. For this purpose he [carried a](#) large [sword](#).

Revelation 6:5

the third seal (ULT) the...the third seal (UST)

The word **third** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next seal” or “seal number three” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the third living creature (ULT) the third living creature (UST)

The word **third** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next living creature” or “living creature number three” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

a pair of scales (ULT) a pair of balance scales (UST)

A **scales** is a tool used for weighing things.

Translation Words - ULT

- [seal](#)
- [living creature](#)
- [a...horse](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seal](#)
- [living creature](#)
- [a...horse](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁵ And when he opened the third [seal](#), I heard the third [living creature](#) saying, “Come!” And I looked and behold, a black [horse](#), and the one sitting on it having a pair of scales in his [hand](#).

UST

⁵ Then the Lamb opened the third [seal](#), and I heard the third [living creature](#) say, “Come!” This time, I saw a black [horse](#) appear. There was someone riding it, and he had a pair of balance scales in his [hand](#).

Revelation 6:6

**A choenix of wheat for one denarius (ULT)
one liter of wheat will cost so much that a
man must work a whole day to earn enough
money to (UST)**

Some languages might want a verb such as “cost” or “buy” in the sentence. There was very little wheat for all the people, so its price was very high. Alternate translation: “A choenix of wheat now costs one denarius” or “Buy a choenix of wheat with one denarius”

**A choenix of wheat...three choenices of barley (ULT)
one liter of wheat...three liters of barley (UST)**

A **choenix** was a specific measure that was about one liter. The plural of **choenix** is “choenices.” Alternate translation: “one liter of wheat ... three liters of barley” or “one bowl of wheat ... three bowls of barley” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

**for one denarius (ULT)
will cost so much that a man must work a whole day to earn enough money
to (UST)**

The **denarius** was a coin that was worth a day’s wages. Alternate translation: “one silver coin” or “the pay for one day of work” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

But do not harm the oil and the wine

If the **oil and wine** were harmed, there would be less of them for people to buy, and their prices would go up.

**the oil and the wine (ULT)
the...the...olive oil or wine (UST)**

The **oil** and the **wine** probably stand for the olive oil harvest and the grape harvest. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- as if
- a voice
- of...living creatures
- of wheat
- of barley
- oil
- wine

ULT

⁶ And I heard [as if a voice](#) in the midst of the four [living creatures](#) saying, “A choenix [of wheat](#) for one denarius, and three choenices [of barley](#) for a denarius. But do not harm the [oil](#) and the [wine](#).”

UST

⁶ Then I heard [a voice that sounded like it was coming](#) from among the four [living creatures](#). It said to the person on the horse, “Make it happen that one liter [of wheat](#) will cost so much that a man must work a whole day to earn enough money to buy it. Also make it happen that three liters [of barley](#) will sell for the same price. But do not reduce the supply of [olive oil](#) or [wine](#).”

Translation Words - UST

- a voice
- that sounded like it was coming
- living creatures
- of wheat
- of barley
- olive oil
- the...wine

Revelation 6:7

the fourth seal (ULT)

the...the fourth seal (UST)

The word **fourth** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next seal” or “seal number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

of the fourth living creature (ULT)

the fourth living creature (UST)

The word **fourth** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next living creature” or “living creature number four” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seal](#)
- [the voice](#)
- [of...living creature](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seal](#)
- [and I heard](#)
- [living creature](#)

ULT

⁷ And when he opened the fourth [seal](#), I heard [the voice](#) of the fourth [living creature](#) saying, “Come!”

UST

⁷ Then the Lamb opened the fourth [seal](#), and I heard the fourth [living creature](#) say, “Come!”

Revelation 6:8

a pale horse (ULT)

a pale horse (UST)

Here, **pale** is the color of a dead body, so its color is a symbol of death. Alternate translation: “a grey horse”

one-fourth of the earth (ULT)

one-fourth of all people...earth (UST)

Here, **the earth** represents the people of the earth. Alternate translation: “one-fourth of the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

one-fourth of the earth (ULT)

one-fourth of all people...earth (UST)

Alternate translation: “one out of every four of the people on the earth” (See: [Fractions](#))

the sword (ULT)

weapons (UST)

Here, **the sword** represents war. (See: [Metonymy](#))

of the earth...by the wild animals (ULT)

earth...with wild animals (UST)

This means that Death and Hades would cause **the wild animals** to attack and kill people.

Translation Words - ULT

- a...horse
- was named
- Death
- disease
- Hades
- authority
- of...earth
- of...earth (2)
- the sword
- famine
- wild animals

Translation Words - UST

- a...horse
- name
- wild animals
- The one who causes people to die
- sickness

ULT

⁸ And I looked, and behold, a pale horse! And the one sitting on it was named Death, and Hades was following after him. And authority was given to them over one-fourth of the earth, to kill with the sword and with famine and with disease and by the wild animals of the earth.

UST

⁸ This time I saw a pale horse appear. Someone was riding it; his name was “The one who causes people to die.” Someone else was following him; this person’s name was “The place where dead people go.” God gave these two persons power to kill one-fourth of all people on earth. They could kill them with weapons, or with famine, or with sickness, or with wild animals.

- The place where dead people go
- power to kill
- earth
- wild animals (2)
- weapons
- famine

Revelation 6:9

the fifth seal (ULT) the fifth seal (UST)

The word **fifth** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next seal” or “seal number five” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

under the altar (ULT) under the altar in heaven (UST)

This may have been “at the base of the altar.”

of those who had been killed (ULT) whom others had killed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom others had killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because of the word of God and because of the testimony which they held (ULT) and...because these servants had believed God’s message, the message to which God himself bore witness (UST)

Here, **the word of God** is a metonym for the message from God. (See: [Metonymy](#))

because of the word of God and because of the testimony which they held (ULT) and...because these servants had believed God’s message, the message to which God himself bore witness (UST)

Here, **held** is a metaphor. Here, holding **the testimony** could refer to: (1) believing God’s word and testimony. Alternate translation: “because of the teachings of scripture and what they taught about Jesus Christ” or “because they believed the word of God, which is his testimony” (2) testifying about the word of God. Alternate translation: “because they testified about the word of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seal](#)
- [altar](#)
- [souls](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [testimony](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seal](#)
- [altar in heaven](#)
- [spirits of God’s servants](#)

ULT

⁹ And when he opened the fifth [seal](#), I saw under the [altar](#) the [souls](#) of those who had been killed because of the [word of God](#) and because of the [testimony](#) which they held.

UST

⁹ Then the Lamb opened the fifth [seal](#), and I saw under the [altar in heaven](#) the [spirits of God’s servants](#) whom others had killed because these servants had believed God’s message, the [message to which God himself bore witness](#).

- message to which God himself
- bore witness

Revelation 6:10

avenge our blood (ULT) punish...who murdered us (UST)

Here, **blood** represents their deaths. Alternate translation: “punish those who killed us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they cried out
- with a...voice
- earth
- Ruler over all
- holy
- true
- do you...judge
- avenge
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- They loudly
- They loudly
- Sovereign Lord
- you are holy
- true
- you condemn
- punish
- earth
- murdered

ULT

¹⁰ And they cried out with a loud voice, saying, “How long, Ruler over all, holy and true, do you not judge and avenge our blood from those who live on the earth?”

UST

¹⁰ They loudly asked God, “Sovereign Lord, you are holy and true. How long will it be before you condemn and punish the people on earth who murdered us?”

Revelation 6:11

until {the number} was completed of both their fellow servants and their brothers who were going to be killed, as also they {were (ULT)

They had to wait until the complete number of the Lord's other servants and followers would be killed (UST)

This implies that God had decided that a certain number of people should **be killed** by their enemies. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "until people had killed the full number of their fellow servants and brothers that they were going to kill" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their fellow servants and their brothers

This is one group of people described in two ways: as **fellow servants** and as **brothers**. Alternate translation: "their brothers who serve God with them" or "their fellow believers who serve God with them"

brothers (ULT)
and followers (UST)

Christians are often spoken of as being one another's **brothers**. Females were among those spoken of here. Alternate translation: "fellow Christians" or "fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...robe
- they should wait
- a...time
- the number} was completed
- brothers
- as

Translation Words - UST

- a...robe
- to be patient
- a...longer
- complete number of
- and followers
- killed

ULT

¹¹ And to each of them was given a white robe, and they were told that they should wait yet a little time until {the number} was completed of both their fellow servants and their brothers who were going to be killed, as also they {were}.

UST

¹¹ Then God gave to each of them a white robe, and he told them to be patient a little longer. They had to wait until the complete number of the Lord's other servants and followers would be killed.

Revelation 6:12

the sixth seal (ULT)

the...the sixth seal (UST)

The word **sixth** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next seal” or “seal number six” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

black as sackcloth (ULT)

as black as cloth made of black (UST)

Sometimes **sackcloth** was made of black hair. People would wear sackcloth when they were mourning. The image of sackcloth is meant to lead people to think of death and mourning. Alternate translation: “as black as mourning clothes” (See: [Simile](#))

as blood (ULT)

red like blood (UST)

The image of **blood** is meant to lead people to think of death. If your readers would misunderstand this simile, you can state how it was like blood. Alternate translation: “red like blood” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seal](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [sackcloth](#)
- [blood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seal](#)
- [as](#)
- [like](#) (2)
- [cloth made of black](#)
- [red...blood](#)

ULT

¹² And when he opened the sixth [seal](#), I watched, and there was a great earthquake, and the sun became black [as sackcloth](#) made of hair, and the full moon became [as blood](#),

UST

¹² Then I saw the Lamb open the sixth [seal](#), and the earth shook violently. The sun became as black [as cloth made of black](#) wool. The whole moon became [red like blood](#).

Revelation 6:13

as a fig tree drops its unripe fruit, being shaken by a stormy wind (ULT)
just as immature figs fall when a fig tree shakes in a strong wind (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "just as a stormy wind shakes a fig tree and causes it to drop its unripe fruit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- in...heavens
- earth
- as
- a fig tree
- unripe fruit

Translation Words - UST

- Stars...in great numbers
- earth
- just as...when
- immature figs fall...a fig tree
- immature figs fall...a fig tree

ULT

¹³ and the stars in the heavens fell to the earth, as a fig tree drops its unripe fruit, being shaken by a stormy wind.

UST

¹³ Stars fell to the earth in great numbers, just as immature figs fall when a fig tree shakes in a strong wind.

Revelation 6:14

the sky vanished as a scroll being rolled up (ULT)

The...sky split open and rolled up on either side just as an old scroll rolls up when it is split in two (UST)

The **sky** was normally thought of as being strong like a sheet of metal, but now it was weak like a sheet of paper and easily torn and **rolled up**. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sky
- as
- a scroll

Translation Words - UST

- sky
- just as
- an old scroll

ULT

¹⁴ And the sky vanished as a scroll being rolled up, and every mountain and island was removed from its place.

UST

¹⁴ The sky split open and rolled up on either side just as an old scroll rolls up when it is split in two. Every mountain and island was shaken out of its place.

Revelation 6:15

the...generals (ULT) including kings...generals (UST)

Here, **the generals** refers to the warriors who command in the battle.

the caves (ULT) caves (UST)

These **caves** are large holes in the sides of hills.

Translation Words - ULT

- kings
- of...earth
- generals
- powerful
- slave
- free man

Translation Words - UST

- on earth
- including kings
- generals
- powerful people
- slave
- free

ULT

¹⁵ And the **kings** of the **earth** and the great ones and the **generals** and the rich and the **powerful** and every **slave** and **free man** hid themselves in the caves and among the rocks of the mountains;

UST

¹⁵ As a result, all the people **on earth**, **including kings**, high-ranking people, **generals**, rich people, **powerful people**, along with everybody else, both **slave** and **free**, hid in caves and between the mountain rocks.

Revelation 6:16

the face of the one (ULT)

the...will not be able to see us (UST)

Here, **face** represents “presence.” Alternate translation: “the presence of the one” or “the one” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the face](#)
- [throne](#)
- [wrath](#)
- [of...Lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throne](#)
- [will not be able to see us](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [will not be able to punish us](#)

ULT

¹⁶ and they say to the mountains and to the rocks, “Fall on us and hide us from [the face](#) of the one who is seated on the [throne](#) and from the [wrath](#) of the [Lamb](#),

UST

¹⁶ They shouted to the mountains and to the rocks, “Fall on us and hide us so that the one who sits on the [throne](#) [will not be able to see us](#), and so that the [Lamb](#) [will not be able to punish us](#)!

Revelation 6:17

the great day of their wrath has come (ULT)
This is...the terrible day on which they will punish us (UST)

The **great day of their wrath** refers to the time when they would punish wicked people. Alternate translation: "this is the terrible time when they will punish people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

has come (ULT)
This is (UST)

Existing now is spoken of as having **come**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of...their...wrath (ULT)
on which they will punish us (UST)

Here, **their** refers to the one on the throne and the Lamb.

who is able to stand (ULT)
No one...will be able to survive (UST)

Surviving, or staying alive, is spoken of as standing. Alternate translation: "Who can survive?" (See: [Metonymy](#))

who is able to stand (ULT)
No one...will be able to survive (UST)

This question is used to express their great sadness and fear that no one will be able to survive when God punishes them. Alternate translation: "no one can survive!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [of...wrath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [day](#)
- [on which they will punish us](#)

ULT

¹⁷ because the great [day](#) of their [wrath](#) has come, and who is able to stand?"

UST

¹⁷ This is the terrible [day on which they will punish us](#). No one will be able to survive!"

Revelation 7

Revelation 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Scholars have interpreted parts of this chapter in many different ways. Translators do not need to fully understand what this chapter means to accurately translate its contents. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

It is important to accurately translate the large numbers in this chapter. The number 144,000 is twelve times twelve thousand.

Translators should be aware that the tribes of the people of Israel are not listed in this chapter the same as they are generally listed in the Old Testament.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 5-8 and 15-17.

Special concepts in this chapter

Worship

God saves his people and keeps them through times of trouble. His people respond by worshipping him. (See: [prostrate, bow down, worship](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

The Lamb

This refers to Jesus. In this chapter, it is also a title for Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Revelation 7:1

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of 144,000 servants of God who become marked with seals. Their marking takes place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal and before he opens the seventh seal.

four...the...corners of the earth (ULT)
four...the earth...One was standing at...the...north, one at the east, one at the south, and one at...west (UST)

The **earth** is spoken of as if it were flat and square like a sheet of paper. The phrase **the four corners** refers to the north, south, east, and west.

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- of...earth
- of...earth (2)
- earth (3)

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- earth
- on the earth (2)
- blowing and destroying things (3)

ULT

¹ After this I saw four **angels** standing at the four corners of the **earth**, tightly holding back the four winds of the **earth** so that the wind would not blow on the **earth**, nor on the sea, nor against any tree.

UST

¹ After this I saw four **angels** standing on the **earth**. One was standing at the north, one at the east, one at the south, and one at the west. They were keeping back the winds from **blowing and destroying things on the earth**, on the ocean, or even on any tree.

Revelation 7:2

the seal (ULT)

God's seal (UST)

Here, **the seal** refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God's people. Alternate translation: "the marker" or "stamp" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [to...angels](#)
- [the seal](#)
- [of the...God](#)
- [living](#)
- [he cried out](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [angels](#)
- [God's seal](#)
- [God's seal](#)
- [God, who is all-powerful, marks his own people to protect them](#)
- [This angel called out](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

² And I saw another [angel](#) coming up from the rising of the sun, having [the seal of the living God](#). And [he cried out with a loud voice](#) to the four [angels](#) to whom it was given to them to harm the [earth](#) and the sea,

UST

² Then I saw another [angel](#) come up from the east. He was carrying [God's seal](#). With this seal [God, who is all-powerful, marks his own people to protect them](#). This angel called out with a loud [voice](#) to the four [angels](#) whom God had told to harm the [earth](#) and the ocean.

Revelation 7:3

we might seal the servants of our God on their foreheads (ULT)

we have marked the servants of our God on their foreheads (UST)

Here, to **seal** refers to placing a mark on something. This mark shows that the people belong to God and that he will protect them. Alternate translation: “we put a mark on the foreheads of the servants of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

foreheads (ULT)

foreheads (UST)

The **forehead** is the top of the face, above the eyes.

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [we might seal](#)
- [servants](#)
- [of...God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [we have marked](#)
- [servants](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³ saying, “Do not harm the [earth](#), nor the sea, nor the trees until [we might seal](#) the [servants](#) of our [God](#) on their foreheads.”

UST

³ He said to them, “Do not harm the [earth](#) or the ocean or the trees until [we have marked](#) the [servants](#) of our [God](#) on their foreheads.”

Revelation 7:4

of those who had been sealed (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom God’s angel marked” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

144,000 (ULT)

Alternate translation: “one hundred forty-four thousand people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who had been sealed](#)
- [who had been sealed](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [of the sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [seal, sealed, unsealed](#)
- [seal, sealed, unsealed](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

ULT

⁴ And I heard the number of those [who had been sealed](#): 144,000, [who had been sealed](#) from every [tribe of the sons of Israel](#):

UST

⁴ Then the angel and his fellow angels marked all God’s servants. I heard the number of people whom they marked. The number was 144,000. They were people from every tribe of Israel. They symbolized the complete number of people whom God would protect.

Revelation 7:5

12,000 (ULT)

twelve thousand people (UST)

Alternate translation: "12,000 people" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were sealed
- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Judah
- of Reuben
- of Gad

Translation Words - UST

- The angels marked
- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Judah
- of Reuben
- of Gad

ULT

⁵ 12,000 were sealed from the tribe of Judah, 12,000 from the tribe of Reuben, 12,000 from the tribe of Gad,

UST

⁵ The angels marked twelve thousand people from the tribe of Judah, twelve thousand from the tribe of Reuben, twelve thousand from the tribe of Gad,

Revelation 7:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Asher
- of Naphtali
- of Manasseh

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Asher
- of Naphtali, and
- of Manasseh

ULT

⁶ 12,000 from the tribe of Asher, 12,000 from the tribe of Naphtali, 12,000 from the tribe of Manasseh,

UST

⁶ twelve thousand from the tribe of Asher, twelve thousand from the tribe of Naphtali, and twelve thousand from the tribe of Manasseh.

Revelation 7:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Simeon
- of Levi
- of Issachar

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Simeon
- of Levi
- of Issachar

ULT

⁷ 12,000 from the tribe of Simeon,
12,000 from the tribe of Levi, 12,000
from the tribe of Issachar,

UST

⁷ In addition, there were twelve
thousand from the tribe of Simeon,
twelve thousand from the tribe of Levi,
twelve thousand from the tribe of
Issachar,

Revelation 7:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Zebulun
- of Joseph
- of Benjamin
- had been sealed

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe
- the tribe (2)
- the tribe (3)
- of Zebulun
- of Joseph, and
- of Benjamin
- were sealed

ULT

⁸ 12,000 from the tribe of Zebulun, 12,000 from the tribe of Joseph, and 12,000 from the tribe of Benjamin had been sealed.

UST

⁸ twelve thousand from the tribe of Zebulun, twelve thousand from the tribe of Joseph, and twelve thousand from the tribe of Benjamin were sealed.

Revelation 7:9

General Information:

John begins to describe a second vision about a multitude praising God. This vision also takes place after the Lamb opens the sixth seal and before he opens the seventh seal.

a huge multitude (ULT)

a huge crowd (UST)

Alternate translation: “a huge crowd” or “a great number of people”

white robes (ULT)

white robes (UST)

Here the color **white** represents purity.

Translation Words - ULT

- nation
- tribe
- people
- language
- throne
- Lamb
- having been clothed in
- robes
- palm branches
- hands

Translation Words - UST

- nation
- tribe
- people group
- every language. They were
- throne
- lamb
- They were wearing
- robes
- held palm branches to wave...in order to celebrate
- hands

ULT

⁹ After these things I looked, and behold, a huge multitude that no one was able to count—from every nation and tribe and people and language—standing before the throne and before the Lamb, having been clothed in white robes, and palm branches {were} in their hands,

UST

⁹ After these things happened, I saw a huge crowd. There were so many people that no one could count them. They were from every nation, every tribe, every people group, and every language. They were standing before the throne and before the lamb. They were wearing white robes and held palm branches to wave with their hands in order to celebrate.

Revelation 7:10

Salvation {belongs} to our God (ULT)
Our God...have rescued us from Satan's power (UST)

Alternate translation: "Salvation comes from our God"

Salvation {belongs} to our God, to the one who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb (ULT)
Our God, the one who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have rescued us from Satan's power (UST)

They were praising **God** and **the Lamb**. If your readers would misunderstand the abstract **Salvation**, you can express it with the verb "save." Alternate translation: "Our God, who sits on the throne, and the Lamb have saved us!" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

¹⁰ and [they call out with a loud voice](#), saying, "[Salvation {belongs} to our God](#), to the one who is seated on the [throne](#), and to the [Lamb](#)!"

UST

¹⁰ [They shouted loudly](#), "Our [God](#), the one who sits on the [throne](#), and the [Lamb have rescued us from Satan's power](#)!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [they call out](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [Salvation](#)
- [belongs} to...God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [to...Lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They shouted](#)
- [loudly](#)
- [God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [have rescued us from Satan's power](#)

Revelation 7:11

the...four living creatures (ULT)

the...four living creatures (UST)

These are the **four living creatures** mentioned in [Revelation 4:6-8](#).

they fell...on their faces (ULT)

lay...with their faces to the ground (UST)

Here, **fell on their faces** is an idiom that means they lay down facing the ground. See how you translated "prostrated themselves" in [Revelation 4:10](#). Alternate translation: "they bowed down" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [elders](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [they fell](#)
- [faces](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [elders](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [lay](#)
- [faces to the ground](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

¹¹ And all the [angels](#) were standing around the [throne](#) and the [elders](#) and the four [living creatures](#), and [they fell](#) on their [faces](#) before the [throne](#) and [worshiped God](#),

UST

¹¹ All the [angels](#) were standing around the [throne](#), around the [elders](#), and around the four [living creatures](#). They all [lay](#) before the [throne](#) with their [faces to the ground](#) and [worshiped God](#).

Revelation 7:12

Praise, glory ... be to our God

Alternate translation: "Our God is worthy of all praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power and strength"

Praise, glory ... thanksgiving, honor ... be to our God

You can use the verb "give" to show how **praise, glory, wisdom, thanksgiving, honor, power, and strength** are to be **to our God**.
Alternate translation: "We must give praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power, and strength to our God"

forever {and} ever (ULT)

forever (UST)

These two words **forever** and **ever** mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the praise will never end.

Translation Words - ULT

- Amen
- Amen (2)
- praise
- glory
- wisdom
- honor
- power
- strength
- be} to...God
- forever
- and} ever

Translation Words - UST

- Yes, it is so
- It is so (2)
- We praise
- honor
- you, our God, forever
- We acknowledge that you are completely wise
- the powerful one
- who is able to do all things
- God
- forever
- forever

ULT

¹² saying, "Amen! The **praise** and the **glory** and the **wisdom** and the thanksgiving and the **honor** and the **power** and the **strength** {be} to our **God** forever {and} ever! Amen!"

UST

¹² They said, "Yes, it is so! We praise, thank, and **honor you, our God, forever!** We acknowledge that you are completely wise, the powerful one, who is able to do all things. Our **God** forever! It is so!"

Revelation 7:13

clothed with white robes

These **white robes** showed that they were righteous.

Translation Words - ULT

- elders
- who have been clothed
- with...robes

Translation Words - UST

- one of the elders asked
- are wearing
- robes

ULT

¹³ And one of the elders replied, saying to me, "These who have been clothed with white robes—who are they, and from where did they come?"

UST

¹³ Then one of the elders asked me, "These people who are wearing white robes, do you know who they are and from where they come?"

Revelation 7:14

have come out of the great tribulation

Alternate translation: "the one who have survived the great tribulation" or "are the people who have lived through the great tribulation"

the great tribulation

Alternate translation: "the time of terrible suffering" or "the time when people suffered terribly"

they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb (ULT)

The Lamb died for them...God has forgiven them for their sins. It is as if they have washed their robes in his blood and made them clean (UST)

Being made righteous by **the blood of the Lamb** is spoken of as washing **their robes** in his blood. Alternate translation: "they have been made righteous by washing their robes white in his blood" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the blood of the Lamb (ULT)

The Lamb died for them...his blood (UST)

Here, **blood** is used to refer to the death of Lamb. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord
- know
- tribulation
- robes
- blood
- of...Lamb

Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- do...know
- tribulation
- Lamb died for them
- robes
- blood

ULT

14 And I said to him, "My [lord](#), you [know](#)." And he said to me, "These are the ones coming from the great [tribulation](#), and they have washed their [robes](#) and made them white in the [blood](#) of the [Lamb](#)."

UST

14 I answered him, "[Sir](#), I do not [know](#). Surely you know who they are!" He said to me, "These are the people have come through the great [tribulation](#). The [Lamb died for them](#), and God has forgiven them for their sins. It is as if they have washed their [robes](#) in his [blood](#) and made them clean."

Revelation 7:15

they are...them (ULT)

they are...them (UST)

Here, **they** and **them** refer to those people who have come out of the great tribulation.

day and night (ULT)

day and night (UST)

Here, **day** and **night** are used together to mean “all the time” or “without stopping” (See: [Merism](#))

will spread his tent over them (ULT)

will protect them (UST)

Protecting them is spoken of as if he were giving them shelter to live under. Alternate translation: “will shelter them” or “will protect them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [of God](#)
- [worship](#)
- [day](#)
- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's](#)
- [throne](#)
- [throne](#) (2)
- [they worship](#)
- [day](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

¹⁵ For this reason, they are before the [throne of God](#) and [worship](#) him [day](#) and night in his [temple](#). And the one who is seated on the [throne](#) will spread his tent over them.

UST

¹⁵ Because of this, they are in front of [God's throne](#), and [they worship](#) him [day](#) and night in his [temple](#). God, the one who sits on the [throne](#), will protect them.

Revelation 7:16

They will not be hungry...them (ULT)
As a result, they will never...be hungry...They...will (UST)

Here, **They** and **them** refer to those people who have come out of the great tribulation.

and the sun will not beat down on them at all (ULT)
They...The sun...nor...will (UST)

The heat of the **sun** is compared to punishment that causes people to suffer. Alternate translation: “and the sun will not burn them” or “and the sun will not make them weak” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁶ They will not be hungry anymore, and they will not be thirsty anymore, and the sun will not beat down on them at all, nor any burning heat,

UST

¹⁶ As a result, they will never again be hungry. They will never again be thirsty. The sun will never again beat on them, nor will any heat scorch them.

Revelation 7:17

them...them (ULT)

them...them (UST)

Both occurrences of **them** refer to those people who have come out of the great tribulation.

the Lamb at the center of the throne

Alternate translation: "the Lamb, who is standing in the middle of the area around the throne"

because the Lamb...will shepherd them (ULT)

This is because the Lamb...will take care of them...as a shepherd takes care of his sheep (UST)

The elder speaks of the Lamb's care for his people as if it were a shepherd's care for his sheep. Alternate translation: "for the Lamb ... will be like a shepherd to them" or "for the Lamb ... will care for them as a shepherd cares for his sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will guide them to springs of living water (ULT)

He will guide them to the source of eternal life, just as a shepherd leads his sheep to springs of water (UST)

The elder speaks of what gives life as if it were **springs** of fresh **water**. Alternate translation: "he will guide them like a shepherd guiding his sheep to fresh water" or "he will guide them to life like a shepherd guiding his sheep to living water" (See: [Metaphor](#))

God will wipe away every tear from their eyes (ULT)

God will cause them to no longer be sad...It will be as if he were wiping away...all tears from their eyes (UST)

Here, a **tear** represents sadness. Alternate translation: "God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lamb](#)
- [of...throne](#)
- [will shepherd](#)
- [springs](#)
- [living](#)
- [of...water](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

¹⁷ because the [Lamb](#) who {is} at the center of the [throne will shepherd](#) them and will guide them to [springs of living water](#), and [God](#) will wipe away every tear from their eyes."

UST

¹⁷ This is because the [Lamb](#) who is at the [throne will take care of](#) them, just as [a shepherd takes care of his sheep](#). He will guide them to [the source of eternal life, just as a shepherd leads his sheep to springs of water](#). [God will cause them to no longer be sad](#). It will be as if he were wiping away all tears from their eyes."

Translation Words - UST

- Lamb
- throne
- will take care of...as a shepherd takes care of his sheep
- the source of eternal life
- just as a shepherd leads his sheep to springs of
- water
- God will cause them to no longer be sad

Revelation 8

Revelation 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven seals and seven trumpets

This chapter begins to show what happens when the Lamb opens the seventh seal. God uses the prayers of all believers to cause dramatic things to happen on earth. John then describes what happens when angels sound the first four of seven trumpets. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Passive voice

John uses the passive voice several times in this chapter. This hides who performs the action. This will be difficult to convey if the translator's language does not have a passive voice. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Similes

In verses 8 and 10, John uses similes to try to describe the images he sees in the vision. He compares the images to everyday things. (See: [Simile](#))

Revelation 8:1

Connecting Statement:

The Lamb opens the seventh seal.

the seventh seal (ULT)

the seventh seal (UST)

This is the last of the seven seals on the scroll. The word **seventh** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next seal” or “the final seal” or “seal number seven” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seal](#)
- [heaven](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seal](#)
- [heaven](#)

ULT

¹ And when he opened the seventh [seal](#), there was silence in [heaven](#) for about half an hour.

UST

¹ Then the Lamb opened the seventh [seal](#), and there was no sound at all in [heaven](#) for a short time.

Revelation 8:2

seven trumpets were given to them (ULT)

He gave...each of them a trumpet (UST)

Each of the seven angels were given one trumpet. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. This could mean: (1) God gave them seven trumpets. (2) the Lamb gave them seven trumpets. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [God](#)
- [trumpets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [God](#)
- [a trumpet](#)

ULT

² And I saw the seven [angels](#) who stand before [God](#), and seven [trumpets](#) were given to them.

UST

² I saw the seven [angels](#) who stand in front of [God](#). He gave each of them [a trumpet](#).

Revelation 8:3

he would offer it (ULT)

he might offer it (UST)

Alternate translation: "he would offer the incense to God by burning it"

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- golden
- golden (2)
- altar
- altar
- incense
- with...prayers
- of...saints
- throne

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- altar
- altar
- golden
- on the gold altar (2)
- incense
- prayers
- God's people
- God's throne. Then he burned this incense

ULT

³ And another **angel** came, holding a **golden** incense bowl, and was stationed at the **altar**, and much **incense** was given to him so that he would offer it with the **prayers** of all the **saints** on the **golden altar** that {was} before the **throne**.

UST

³ Another **angel** came and stood at the **altar**. He had a **golden** bowl for burning **incense**. God gave him a large quantity of incense in order that he might offer it, with the **prayers** of all **God's people**, **on the gold altar** that is in front of **God's throne**. Then he burned this incense on the **altar**.

Revelation 8:4

from the hand of the angel (ULT)

From the bowl in the angel's hand (UST)

This refers to the bowl in the angel's hand. Alternate translation: "from the bowl in the angel's hand" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...incense
- with...prayers
- of...saints
- God
- the hand
- of...angel

Translation Words - UST

- angel's
- hand
- incense
- prayers
- God's people
- God

ULT

⁴ And the smoke of the [incense](#), with the [prayers](#) of the [saints](#), rose up before [God](#) from [the hand](#) of the [angel](#).

UST

⁴ From the bowl in the [angel's hand](#), the smoke of the [incense](#), along with the [prayers](#) of [God's people](#), went up to [God](#).

Revelation 8:5

filled it with the fire (ULT)

filled it with coals of fire (UST)

Here, **the fire** probably refers to burning coals. Alternate translation: “filled it with burning coals” or “filled it with coals of fire” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [fire](#)
- [of...altar](#)
- [earth](#)
- [loud sounds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [coals of fire](#)
- [altar](#)
- [earth](#)
- [rumbled](#)

ULT

⁵ And the [angel](#) took the incense bowl and filled it with the [fire](#) of the [altar](#) and threw it onto the [earth](#), and there were crashes of thunder and [loud sounds](#) and flashes of lightning and an earthquake.

UST

⁵ Then the [angel](#) took the golden bowl and filled it with [coals of fire](#) from the [altar](#). He threw it all onto the [earth](#). Thunder crashed and [rumbled](#), lightning flashed, and the earth shook.

Revelation 8:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- trumpets
- they might sound them

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- trumpets
- blow

ULT

⁶ And the seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared themselves that they might sound them.

UST

⁶ Then the seven angels, each of which had one of the seven trumpets, got ready to blow them.

Revelation 8:7

it was thrown onto the earth (ULT) poured down...onto the earth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the angel threw the hail and fire mixed with blood down onto the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a third of the earth was burned up, and a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up (ULT) of everything on the surface of the land was burned up: one-third of the trees burned up, and one-third of all the green grass was burned up (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "it burned up a third of the earth, a third of the trees, and all the green grass" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sounded a trumpet
- hail
- fire
- blood
- earth
- of...earth

Translation Words - UST

- blew his trumpet
- hail
- fire
- blood
- earth
- everything on the surface of the land

ULT

⁷ And the first angel **sounded a trumpet**, and there was **hail** and **fire** mixed with **blood**, and it was thrown onto the **earth**, and a third of the **earth** was burned up, and a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up. ^[1]

UST

⁷ The first angel **blew his trumpet**, and **hail** and **fire** mixed with **blood** poured down onto the **earth**. As a result, one-third of **everything on the surface of the land** was burned up: one-third of the trees burned up, and one-third of all the green grass was burned up.

Revelation 8:8

the second angel (ULT)

the second angel (UST)

The word **second** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the next angel” or “angel number two” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown (ULT)

something that was like a huge mountain burning with fire fell (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the angel threw something like a great mountain burning with fire” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a third of the sea became blood (ULT)

one-third of the ocean became red like blood (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the fraction **a third**, you can explain it in translation. Alternate translation: “it was like the sea was divided into three parts, and one of those parts became blood” (See: [Fractions](#))

became...blood (ULT)

became...red like blood (UST)

Here, **became blood** could mean: (1) it became red like blood. (2) it really became blood. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [sounded a trumpet](#)
- [something like](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [blood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [blew his trumpet](#)
- [something that was like](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [red like blood](#)

ULT

⁸ And the second [angel sounded a trumpet](#), and [something like](#) a great mountain burning [with fire](#) was thrown into the sea, and a third of the sea became [blood](#),

UST

⁸ Then the second [angel blew his trumpet](#), and [something that was like](#) a huge mountain burning [with fire](#) fell into the ocean. As a result, one-third of the ocean became [red like blood](#),

Revelation 8:9

the living creatures in the sea

Alternate translation: “of the things living in the sea” or “of the fish and other animals that lived in the sea”

Translation Words - ULT

- of...creatures
- life
- died

Translation Words - UST

- living
- creatures
- died

ULT

⁹ and a third of the creatures—those having life in the sea—died, and a third of the ships were destroyed.

UST

⁹ one-third of the living creatures in the ocean died, and one-third of the ships in the ocean were destroyed.

Revelation 8:10

a huge star fell from the sky, blazing as a torch (ULT)

a huge star, which was burning like a torch, fell from the sky (UST)

The fire of the **huge star** looked similar to the fire of **a torch**.

Alternate translation: "a huge star that was blazing like a torch fell from the sky" (See: [Simile](#))

a torch (ULT)

a torch (UST)

A **torch** a stick with one end lit on fire to provide light.

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [sounded a trumpet](#)
- [sky](#)
- [as](#)
- [a torch](#)
- [springs](#)
- [of water](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [blew his trumpet](#)
- [like](#)
- [a torch](#)
- [sky](#)
- [springs](#)
- [water](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And the third [angel](#) [sounded a trumpet](#), and a huge star fell from the [sky](#), blazing [as a torch](#), and it fell on a third of the rivers and on the [springs of water](#).

UST

¹⁰ Then the third [angel](#) [blew his trumpet](#), and a huge star, which was burning [like a torch](#), fell from the [sky](#) into one-third of the rivers and into one-third of the [springs of water](#).

Revelation 8:11

the name of the star is called Wormwood (ULT)

The...name of the star is Bitterness (UST)

Wormwood is a shrub that tastes bitter. People made medicine out of it, but they also believed that it was poisonous. Alternate translation: “the name of the star is Bitterness” or “the name of the star is Bitter Medicine” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

became...wormwood (ULT)

became...bitter (UST)

The bitter taste of the water is spoken of as if it were **wormwood**. Alternate translation: “became bitter like wormwood” or “became bitter” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the waters...died from...that became bitter (ULT)

the water...of the...died from drinking...because it had become bitter (UST)

Alternate translation: “died when they drank the bitter water”

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [of...waters](#)
- [waters](#) (2)
- [died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [the water](#)
- [water](#) (2)
- [died...drinking](#)

ULT

¹¹ And the [name](#) of the star is called Wormwood. And a third of the [waters](#) became wormwood, and many of the men [died](#) from the [waters](#) that became bitter.

UST

¹¹ The [name](#) of the star is Bitterness. As a result, [the water](#) in one-third of the rivers and springs became bitter. Many people [died](#) from [drinking](#) the [water](#) because it had become bitter.

Revelation 8:12

a third of the sun was struck (ULT) God struck the sun, the...one-third of (UST)

Causing something bad to happen to **the sun** is spoken of as striking, or hitting, it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a third of the sun was struck (ULT) God struck the sun, the...one-third of (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “a third of the sun changed” or “God changed a third of the sun” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a third...of them turned dark (ULT) the...lost their light for...one-third...time. The sun did not shine (UST)

The phrase **a third of then turned dark** could mean: (1) one third of the time, they were dark. (2) one third of the sun, one third of the moon, and one third of the stars became dark.

a third of the day and a third of the night had no light

Alternate translation: “there was no light during one third of the day and one third of the night” or “they did not shine during one third of the day and one third of the night”

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [sounded a trumpet](#)
- [turned dark](#)
- [day](#)
- [likewise](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [blew his trumpet](#)
- [time. The sun did not shine](#)
- [day](#)
- [during...night](#)

ULT

¹² And the fourth [angel sounded a trumpet](#), and a third of the sun was struck, and a third of the moon and a third of the stars, so that a third of them [turned dark](#), and the [day](#) did not shine {for} a third of it, and [likewise](#) the night.

UST

¹² Then the fourth [angel blew his trumpet](#), and God struck the sun, the moon, and the stars so that they lost their light for one-third of the [time](#). [The sun did not shine](#) during one-third of the [day](#), and the moon and stars did not shine [during](#) one-third of the [night](#).

Revelation 8:13

**from the remaining blasts of the trumpet of the three angels who are about to sound {their} trumpets (ULT)
when the three remaining angels blow their trumpets! They are about to blow them (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “because the three angels who have not yet sounded their trumpets are about to sound them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- eagle
- the mid-heaven
- of...trumpet
- to sound {their} trumpets
- of...angels
- calling out
- with a...voice
- blasts
- Woe
- woe (2)
- woe (3)
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- eagle
- high...the sky
- angels
- blow their trumpets
- to blow them
- shouting
- voice
- remaining
- Terrible things will happen
- Terrible things will happen (2)
- Terrible things will happen (3)
- earth

ULT

¹³ And I looked, and I heard one eagle ^[2] flying in the mid-heaven, calling out with a loud voice, “Woe, woe, woe, to those who live on the earth, from the remaining blasts of the trumpet of the three angels who are about to sound {their} trumpets.”

8:7 ^[1]

8:13 ^[2] instead of

UST

¹³ As I watched, I heard an eagle that was flying high in the sky shouting in a loud voice, “Terrible things will happen to the people who live on the earth when the three remaining angels blow their trumpets! They are about to blow them!”

Revelation 9

Revelation 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, John continues to describe what happens when angels sound seven trumpets. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Woe

John describes several “woes” in the Book of Revelation. This chapter begins to describe three “woes” announced at the end of Chapter 8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Animal imagery

This chapter includes several animals: locusts, scorpions, horses, lions, and snakes. Animals convey different qualities or traits. For example, a lion is powerful and dangerous. Translators should use the same animals in their translation if possible. If the animal is unknown, one with similar qualities or traits should be used.

Bottomless pit

This image is seen several times in the Book of Revelation. It is a picture of hell as being inescapable and the opposite direction as heaven. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Abaddon and Apollyon

“Abaddon” is a Hebrew word. “Apollyon” is a Greek word. Both words mean “Destroyer.” John used the sounds of the Hebrew word and wrote them with Greek letters. The ULT and UST write the sounds of both words with English letters. Translators are encouraged to transliterate these words using the letters of the target language. The original Greek readers would have understood “Apollyon” to mean “Destroyer.” So translators may also supply what it means in the text or in a footnote. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Repentance

Despite great signs, people are described as not repenting and so remain in their sin. People refusing to repent are also mentioned in Chapter 16. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

John uses many similes in this chapter. They help to describe the images that he sees in his vision. (See: [Simile](#))

Revelation 9:1

Connecting Statement:

The fifth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

I saw a star from heaven that had fallen (ULT)

I saw a star that had fallen from the sky (UST)

John saw the **star** after it **had fallen**. He did not watch it fall.

heaven...the key to...shaft of the abyss (ULT)

the...the key...shaft that went down but had no ending (UST)

Alternate translation: "the key that unlocks the shaft of the bottomless pit"

heaven...to...shaft of the abyss (ULT)

the...shaft that went down but had no ending (UST)

Here, **shaft** could be: (1) another way of referring to the abyss and describes it as long and narrow. (2) the opening of the abyss.

of the abyss (ULT)

but had no ending (UST)

The **abyss** is an extremely deep narrow hole. This could mean: (1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever. (2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom.

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- sounded a trumpet
- heaven
- earth
- to...shaft
- of...abyss

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- blew his trumpet
- sky
- earth
- shaft that went down
- but had no ending

ULT

¹ And the fifth angel sounded a trumpet, and I saw a star from heaven that had fallen to the earth, and the key to the shaft of the abyss was given to him.

UST

¹ Then the fifth angel blew his trumpet, and I saw a star that had fallen from the sky to the earth. God gave it the key to the shaft that went down but had no ending.

Revelation 9:2

as smoke of a huge furnace (ULT)
like smoke...a great burning furnace (UST)

A **huge furnace** gives off a great amount of thick, dark **smoke**.
 Alternate translation: "like the great amount of smoke that comes from a huge furnace" (See: [Simile](#))

were darkened (ULT)
prevented anyone from seeing (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this passive phrase **were darkened**, you can state it in active form. Alternate translation: "became dark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shaft](#)
- [shaft](#)
- [of...shaft](#) (2)
- [of...abyss](#)
- [as](#)
- [of a...furnace](#)
- [were darkened](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [shaft](#)
- [it](#)
- [smoke](#) (2)
- [shaft](#)
- [like](#)
- [a...burning furnace](#)
- [prevented anyone from seeing](#)

ULT

² And he opened the [shaft](#) of the [abyss](#), and smoke went up from the [shaft as](#) smoke [of a](#) huge [furnace](#), and the sun and the air [were darkened](#) from the smoke of the [shaft](#).

UST

² When he opened that [shaft](#), smoke rose from [it like](#) smoke from a great [burning furnace](#). The [smoke prevented anyone from seeing](#) the light of the sun and the sky.

Revelation 9:3

locusts (ULT)

Locusts (UST)

The **locusts** are insects that fly together in large groups. People fear them because they can eat up all the leaves in gardens and on trees. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

power was given to them as scorpions have

power (ULT)

God gave...them power to sting people as scorpions (UST)

These **scorpions** have the ability to sting and poison people. Alternate translation: “they have the ability to sting people as scorpions do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

scorpions (ULT)

scorpions (UST)

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger on its tail. Its sting is extremely painful and the pain lasts a long time. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- locusts
- earth
- on...earth
- power
- power
- as

Translation Words - UST

- Locusts
- earth
- sting people
- power to sting people as
- power to sting people as
- power to sting people as

ULT

³ And out from the smoke **locusts** came on the **earth**, and **power** was given to them **as** scorpions have **power** on the **earth**.

UST

³ **Locusts** also came out of the smoke onto the **earth**. God gave them **power to sting people as** scorpions **sting people**.

Revelation 9:4

They were told not to damage the grass on the earth or any green plant or tree

Ordinary locusts were a terrible threat to people because when they swarm, they can eat up all the grass and all the leaves on plants and trees. These locusts were told not to do this.

but only the men (ULT) God said that they should harm only...people (UST)

The phrase “to damage” or “to harm” is understood. Alternate translation: “but only to harm the men” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the seal of God (ULT) the mark on...to show that they belonged...God (UST)

Here, **seal** refers to a tool that is used to press a mark onto a wax seal. In this case the tool would be used to put a mark on God’s people. See how you translated “seal” in [Revelation 7:3](#). Alternate translation: “the marker of God” or “stamp of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

foreheads (ULT) foreheads (UST)

The **forehead** is the top of the face, above the eyes.

Translation Words - ULT

- on...earth
- seal
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- earth
- mark on...to show that they belonged
- God

ULT

⁴ And it was told to them that they should not damage the grass on the [earth](#) or any green plant or any tree, but only the men who did not have the [seal of God](#) on {their} foreheads.

UST

⁴ God told the locusts that they should not harm the grass of the [earth](#) or any plants or any tree. God said that they should harm only those people who did not have the [mark on](#) their foreheads [to show that they belonged to God](#).

Revelation 9:5

it was given to them (ULT)
God did...allow...the locusts (UST)

Here, **them** refers to the locusts. ([Revelation 9:3](#))

them (ULT)
those people (UST)

Here, **them** refers to the people whom the locusts were stinging.

they will be tormented for five months (ULT)
the locusts kept torturing people for five months (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this passive phrase **will be tormented**, you can state it in active form. Alternate translation: “the locusts will torment the people for five months” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they will be tormented (ULT)
the locusts kept torturing people (UST)

Alternate translation: “will suffer terrible pain”

torment...of a scorpion (ULT)
pain...people felt was...a scorpion causes (UST)

A **scorpion** is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death.

Translation Words - ULT

- they will be tormented
- torment
- the torment (2)
- for...months
- will be} as

Translation Words - UST

- the locusts kept torturing people
- pain...people felt was
- the pain (2)
- for...months
- like

ULT

⁵ And it was given to them that they should not kill them, but that **they will be tormented** for five **months**, and their **torment** {will be} as the torment of a scorpion when it would strike a man.

UST

⁵ God did not allow the locusts to kill those people. Instead, **the locusts kept torturing people** for five **months**. The **pain** those **people felt was like the pain** that a scorpion causes when it stings someone.

Revelation 9:6

men will seek death but will certainly not find it (ULT)

people, the pain will be so bad that people will want to find a way to die, but they will not find any way (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **death**, you can express it with a verb. Alternate translation: “people will try to find a way to die, but will not find it” or “people will try to kill themselves, but will not find a way to die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

death flees from them (ULT)
they will not be able to die (UST)

John speaks of **death** as if it were a person or animal that could run away. Alternate translation: “they will not be able to die” or “they will not die” (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

⁶ And in those [days](#), men [will seek death](#) but will certainly not find it, and they will greatly desire [to die](#), but [death](#) flees from them.

UST

⁶ During the [time](#) when the locusts torture rebellious people, the [pain will be so bad that people will want to find a way to die](#), but they will not find any way. They will long [to die](#), but [they will not be able to die](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [will seek](#)
- [death](#)
- [to die](#)
- [death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [pain will be so bad that people will want to find a way](#)
- [to die](#)
- [to die](#)
- [they will not be able to die](#)

Revelation 9:7

General Information:

These locusts did not look like ordinary locusts. John describes them by telling how parts of them looked like other things.

Translation Words - ULT

- of...locusts
- was} like
- were something} like
- like
- were} like (2)
- horses
- heads
- crowns
- gold
- faces
- faces (2)

Translation Words - UST

- locusts
- like
- like
- what looked
- were like (2)
- horses
- heads
- golden
- crowns
- faces
- the faces (2)

ULT

⁷ And the appearance of the locusts {was} like horses prepared for war. And on their heads {were something} like crowns like gold, and their faces {were} like faces of men.

UST

⁷ The locusts looked like horses that are ready for battle. They had on their heads what looked like golden crowns. Their faces were like the faces of people.

Revelation 9:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- like
- as (2)
- of lions

Translation Words - UST

- long...like
- as strong as (2)
- lions' teeth

ULT

⁸ And they had hair like hair of women, and their teeth were as of lions.

UST

⁸ They had long hair like women's long hair. Their teeth were as strong as lions' teeth.

Revelation 9:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- breastplates
- breastplates (2)
- like
- was} like (2)
- of chariots
- of...horses
- running

Translation Words - UST

- breastplates
- like (2)
- breastplates
- breastplates (2)
- horses pulling
- of...chariots
- as they are rushing

ULT

⁹ And they had breastplates like iron breastplates, and the sound of their wings {was} like the sound of chariots— of many horses running into battle.

UST

⁹ They wore breastplates made of metal. When they were flying, their wings made a noise like the roar of many horses pulling chariots as they are rushing into battle.

Revelation 9:10

they have tails (ULT)

They had...tails (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the locusts.

with stingers like scorpions (ULT)
like tails of scorpions. With these tails they
could sting people (UST)

A scorpion is a small insect with a poisonous stinger at the end of its long tail. The sting can cause severe pain or even death. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 9:6](#). Alternate translation:

“with stingers like scorpion stingers” or “with stingers that could cause terrible pain as scorpion stingers can” (See: [Simile](#))

in their tails they had power to harm people for five months

This could mean: (1) they had power for five months to harm people. (2) they could sting people and the people would be in pain for five months.

Translation Words - ULT

- like
- power
- for...months

Translation Words - UST

- like
- power
- during those...months

ULT

¹⁰ And they have tails with stingers like scorpions, and in their tails, their power to harm men for five months.

UST

¹⁰ They had tails like tails of scorpions. With these tails they could sting people. Their power to harm people during those five months was in their tails.

Revelation 9:11

of the abyss (ULT) of the shaft that went down but had no ending (UST)

The **abyss** is an extremely deep narrow hole. This could mean: (1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever. (2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

is} Abaddon...Apollyon (ULT) is Abaddon...Apollyon (UST)

Both **Abaddon** and **Apollyon** mean "Destroyer." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- as} king
- angel
- of...abyss
- name
- the name (2)
- in Hebrew
- Greek

Translation Words - UST

- The king
- angel
- shaft that went down but had no ending
- name
- it (2)
- in the Hebrew language
- Greek language

ULT

¹¹ They have {as} king over them the angel of the abyss. His name in Hebrew {is} Abaddon, and in Greek he has the name Apollyon.

UST

¹¹ The king who ruled over them was the angel of the shaft that went down but had no ending. His name in the Hebrew language is Abaddon. In the Greek language it is Apollyon. Both of these names mean "Destroyer."

Revelation 9:12

two woes are still coming (ULT)
two more terrible events are still to come (UST)

Existing in the future is spoken of as **coming**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [woe](#)
- [woes](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [terrible event](#)
- [terrible events](#) (2)

ULT

¹² The first [woe](#) has passed. Behold, two [woes](#) are still coming after these things.

UST

¹² That ended the first [terrible event](#). But be aware that two more [terrible events](#) are still to come.

Revelation 9:13

Connecting Statement:

The sixth of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

I heard a voice from (ULT)

I heard a voice from (UST)

The **voice** refers to the one who was speaking. John does not say who the speaker was, but it may have been God. Alternate translation: "I heard someone speaking" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

horns of the golden altar

These are horn-shaped extensions at each of the four corners of the top of the **altar**.

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- sounded a trumpet
- voice
- horns
- golden
- of...altar
- God

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- blew his trumpet
- voice
- four corners
- golden
- altar
- God's

ULT

¹³ And the sixth angel sounded a trumpet, and I heard a voice from the horns of the golden altar that {is} before God,

UST

¹³ Then the sixth angel blew his trumpet, and I heard a voice from the four corners of the golden altar that is in God's presence.

Revelation 9:14

saying (ULT)

The voice was saying (UST)

This one who is speaking is the voice in verse 13. Alternate translation: “the voice said” or “the speaker said” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the four angels who have been bound (ULT)

the four angels whom I have bound (UST)

The text does not say who has **bound** the **angels**, but it implies that God told someone to bind them. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the four angels whom God has commanded them to bind” or “the four angels whom God has commanded someone to bind” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁴ saying to the sixth [angel](#) who has the [trumpet](#), “Release the four [angels who have been bound](#) at the great [Euphrates](#) River.”

UST

¹⁴ The voice was saying to the sixth [angel](#), the one who had the [trumpet](#), “Release the four [angels](#) whom [I have bound](#) at the great river [Euphrates](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...angel](#)
- [angels](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [who have been bound](#)
- [Euphrates](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [angels](#)
- [trumpet](#)
- [I have bound](#)
- [Euphrates](#)

Revelation 9:15

the four angels who had been prepared for that hour and day and month and year were released (ULT)

Then...those four angels...went free...those who had waited for that exact hour of that day, month, and year (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the angel released the four angels who had been prepared for that hour and day and month and year" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the four angels who had been prepared (ULT)
those four angels...those who had waited (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the four angels whom God had prepared" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for that hour and day and month and year (ULT)
for that exact hour of that day, month, and year (UST)**

These words are used to show that there is a specific, chosen time and not just any time. Alternate translation: "for that exact time" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [hour](#)
- [day](#)
- [month](#)
- [year](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [exact hour](#)
- [that day](#)
- [month](#)
- [year](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And the four [angels](#) who had been prepared for that [hour](#) and [day](#) and [month](#) and [year](#) were released so that they might kill a third of mankind.

UST

¹⁵ Then those four [angels](#) went free, those who had waited for that [exact hour](#) of [that day](#), [month](#), and [year](#). They went free in order that they might enable their soldiers to kill one-third of the people.

Revelation 9:16

General Information:

Suddenly, a huge number of soldiers on horseback appear in John's vision. John is no longer speaking about the four angels mentioned in the previous verse.

was} two myriads of myriads (ULT) **two hundred million (UST)**

Some ways to express **two myriads** are: "two hundred million" or "two hundred thousand thousand" or "twenty thousand times ten thousand." If your language does not have a specific number for this, you could also see how you translated a similar large number in [Revelation 5:11](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

16 And the number of the soldiers on horseback {was} two myriads of myriads; I heard their number.

UST

16 The number of those soldiers riding on horses was two hundred million. I heard someone say how many there were.

Revelation 9:17

that were} fiery red (ULT)

that were red like fire (UST)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 6:3](#). Alternate translation: “red like fire” or “bright red”

sulfurous yellow (ULT)

yellow like sulfur (UST)

Alternate translation: “yellow like sulfur” or “bright yellow like sulfur”

Translation Words - ULT

- [horses](#)
- [of...horses](#)
- [vision](#)
- [breastplates](#)
- [that were} fiery red](#)
- [fire](#)
- [sulfurous yellow](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [heads](#)
- [heads \(2\)](#)
- [were} as](#)
- [of lions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [horses](#)
- [horses](#)
- [looked like](#)
- [breastplates](#)
- [that were red like fire](#)
- [fire](#)
- [yellow like sulfur](#)
- [fumes of burning sulfur](#)
- [heads](#)
- [the heads \(2\)](#)
- [were like](#)
- [of lions](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And this is how I saw the [horses](#) in {my} [vision](#) and those who rode on them—having [breastplates {that were} fiery red](#) and dark blue and [sulfurous yellow](#). And the [heads](#) of the [horses](#) {were} [as heads of lions](#), and from their mouths came [fire](#) and smoke and [sulfur](#).

UST

¹⁷ In the vision I saw what the [horses](#) and the soldiers who rode them [looked like](#). The soldiers wore [breastplates that were red like fire](#), dusky blue like smoke, and [yellow like sulfur](#). The [heads](#) of the [horses were like the heads of lions](#). From their mouths came [fire](#), smoke, and [fumes of burning sulfur](#).

Revelation 9:18

A third of mankind (ULT) one-third of the people (UST)

See how you translated “A third” in [Revelation 8:7](#). Alternate translation: “One third of the people” (See: [Fractions](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [plagues](#)
- [fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [things](#)
- [fire](#)
- [burning sulfur](#)

ULT

¹⁸ A third of mankind were killed by these three [plagues](#): by the [fire](#) and the smoke and the [sulfur](#) that came out from their mouths.

UST

¹⁸ Those three [things](#)—the [fire](#), the smoke, and the [burning sulfur](#) from the horses’ mouths—killed one-third of the people.

Revelation 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- power
- of...horses
- are} like
- snakes
- heads

Translation Words - UST

- power
- horses
- heads
- like
- snakes

ULT

¹⁹ For the power of the horses is in their mouths and in their tails—for their tails {are} like snakes having heads, and with them they injure people.

UST

¹⁹ The power of the horses was in their mouths and in their tails. Their tails had heads like snakes by which they harmed people.

Revelation 9:20

those who were not killed by these plagues (ULT)

those who were not killed by the plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur...They (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom the plagues had not killed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that are neither able to see nor to hear nor to walk (ULT)

them, even though they were idols that could not see, hear, or walk (UST)

This phrase reminds us that idols are not alive and do not deserve to be worshiped. But the people did not stop worshiping them.

Alternate translation: "even though these idols cannot see, hear, or walk" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- plagues
- did...repent
- bronze
- to walk
- works
- of...hands
- they will...worship
- demons
- idols
- of gold
- silver

Translation Words - UST

- plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur
- did...turn from the sinful things they were doing
- walk
- did
- worshiping
- demons
- idols
- had made
- of gold
- of silver
- of bronze

ULT

²⁰ And the rest of mankind, those who were not killed by these [plagues](#), did not [repent](#) of the [works](#) of their [hands](#), so that [they will](#) not [worship](#) the [demons](#) and the [idols of gold](#) and [silver](#) and [bronze](#) and stone and wood, that are neither able to see nor to hear nor to walk.

UST

²⁰ But the rest of the people, those who were not killed by the [plagues of fire and smoke and burning sulfur](#), did not [turn from the sinful things they were doing](#). They [did](#) not stop [worshiping demons](#) or the [idols](#) that they themselves [had made of gold, of silver, of bronze](#), of stone, and of wood. The people did not stop worshiping them, even though they were idols that could not see, hear, or [walk](#).

Revelation 9:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they did...repent
- sorcery
- sexual immorality

Translation Words - UST

- They did...stop
- practicing sorcery
- acting in sexually immoral ways

ULT

²¹ And they did not repent of their murders, nor of their sorcery nor of their sexual immorality nor of their thefts.

UST

²¹ They did not stop murdering people, or practicing sorcery, or acting in sexually immoral ways, or stealing things.

Revelation 10

Revelation 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Seven thunders

John here describes the seven thunders as making sounds that he could understand as words. However, translators should use their normal word for “thunder” when translating these verses. (See: [Personification](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

“The mystery of God”

This refers to some aspect of the hidden plan of God. It is not necessary to know what this mystery is to translate it. (See: [reveal](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

John uses similes to help him describe the face, legs, and voice of the mighty angel. Translators should understand other objects in this chapter, such as the rainbow and the cloud, with their normal meanings. (See: [Simile](#))

Revelation 10:1

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of a mighty angel holding a scroll. In John's vision he is viewing what is happening from earth. This takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.

having been clothed in a cloud (ULT)

A cloud surrounded him (UST)

John speaks of the angel as if he were wearing **a cloud** as his clothing. This expression may be understood as metaphor. However, because very unusual things were often seen in visions, it might be understood as a literally true statement in its context. (See: [Metaphor](#))

his face like the sun (ULT)

His...face...shone like the sun (UST)

John compares the brightness of **his face** with the brightness of **the sun**. Alternate translation: "his face was bright like the sun" (See: [Simile](#))

his feet like pillars of fire (ULT)

His...legs...looked like columns of fire (UST)

Here, **feet** refers to the legs. Alternate translation: "his legs were like pillars of fire" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- mighty
- angel
- heaven
- having been clothed in
- head
- face
- like
- like (2)
- pillars
- of fire

Translation Words - UST

- mighty
- angel
- heaven
- surrounded him
- head
- face
- like
- looked like (2)
- columns

ULT

¹ And I saw another **mighty angel** coming down from **heaven**, **having been clothed in** a cloud, with a rainbow above his **head** and his **face like** the sun and his feet **like pillars of fire**,

UST

¹ In the vision I saw another **mighty angel** come down out of **heaven**. A cloud **surrounded him**. There was a rainbow over his **head**. His **face** shone **like** the sun. His legs **looked like columns of fire**.

- of fire

Revelation 10:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- hand

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

² and having in his hand a little scroll, which had been opened. And he put his right foot on the sea and {his} left on the land,

UST

² He had in his hand a small scroll that was open. He set his right foot on the ocean and his left foot on the land.

Revelation 10:3

and he shouted (ULT)

He shouted something (UST)

Alternate translation: "then the angel shouted"

the seven thunders spoke out (ULT)

he shouted...it thundered seven times (UST)

The **seven thunders** are described as if they were people who could speak. Alternate translation: "the seven thunders made a loud noise" or "the thunder sounded very loudly seven times"

seven thunders (ULT)

it thundered...seven times (UST)

This may refer to thunder occurring **seven** times, yet being spoken of as if it were **seven** different **thunders**.

Translation Words - ULT

- he shouted
- he shouted (2)
- in a...voice
- with...voices
- like
- a...lion

Translation Words - UST

- He shouted something
- he shouted (2)
- with a...voice
- in the thunder were words that I could understand
- a voice like the...of
- a lion

ULT

³ and he shouted in a loud voice like a roaring lion. And when he shouted, the seven thunders spoke out with {their} own voices.

UST

³ He shouted something with a loud voice, a voice like the roar of a lion. When he shouted, it thundered seven times; in the thunder were words that I could understand.

Revelation 10:4

but I heard a voice from heaven (ULT) write...a voice from heaven (UST)

Here, **voice** refers to words spoken by someone other than the angel. Alternate translation: “but I heard someone speaking from heaven” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- heaven
- Seal up

Translation Words - UST

- a voice
- heaven
- Keep secret

ULT

⁴ And when the seven thunders spoke out, I was about to write, but I heard a voice from heaven saying, “Seal up what the seven thunders said, and do not write it down.”

UST

⁴ I was about to write the words of the seven thunders, but a voice from heaven said to me, “Keep secret what the thunders said! Do not write it down!”

Revelation 10:5

raised his right hand to heaven (ULT)

raised his right hand toward heaven (UST)

He **raised his right hand to heaven** to show that he was swearing by God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [earth](#)
- [his right...hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [heaven](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [the land](#)
- [his right...hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [heaven](#)

ULT

⁵ And the [angel](#) that I saw standing on the sea and on the [earth](#) raised [his right hand](#) to [heaven](#)

UST

⁵ Then the [angel](#) whom I had seen standing on the ocean and [the land](#) raised [his right hand](#) toward [heaven](#),

Revelation 10:6

swore by the one who lives forever {and} ever (ULT)

he asked the one who lives forever (UST)

Alternate translation: "and he asked that what he was going to say would be confirmed by the one who lives forever and ever"

by the one who lives forever {and} ever (ULT)
the one who lives forever (UST)

Here, **the one who lives forever and ever** refers to God.

There will no longer be a delay (ULT)
God would no longer delay in doing what he had planned to do (UST)

Alternate translation: "There will be no more waiting" or "God will not delay"

ULT

⁶ and **swore** by the one **who lives forever {and} ever**, who **created heaven** and the things in it and the **earth** and the things in it and the sea and the things in it, "There will no longer be a delay.

UST

⁶ and **he asked** the **one who lives forever**—the one who **created heaven** and everything that is in it, who created the **earth** and everything that is on it, and who created the ocean and everything that is in it—to say that what he was going to say was true. The angel said that God would no longer delay in doing what he had planned to do.

Translation Words - ULT

- **swore**
- **who lives**
- **forever**
- **{and} ever**
- **created**
- **heaven**
- **earth**

Translation Words - UST

- **he asked**
- **one who lives**
- **forever**
- **forever**
- **created**
- **heaven**
- **earth**

Revelation 10:7

the mystery of God will be accomplished (ULT) God's secret plan...would be finished (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will accomplish his mystery" or "God will complete his secret plan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- days
- of...voice
- of...angel
- to sound a trumpet
- mystery
- of God
- just as
- he proclaimed the good news
- to...servants
- prophets

Translation Words - UST

- time came for
- seventh
- angel
- to blow his trumpet
- God's
- secret plan
- just as
- he had said long ago
- servants
- prophets

ULT

⁷ But in the [days](#) of the [voice](#) of the seventh [angel](#), when he is about to [sound a trumpet](#), then the [mystery of God](#) will be accomplished, [just as he proclaimed the good news](#) to {his} own [servants](#) the [prophets](#)."

UST

⁷ He said that when the [time came for](#) the [seventh angel to blow his trumpet](#), [God's secret plan](#) would be finished, [just as he had said long ago](#) to his [servants](#), the [prophets](#).

Revelation 10:8

Connecting Statement:

John hears the voice from heaven, which he had heard in [Revelation 10:4](#), speak to him again.

the voice that I heard from heaven (ULT) The...one whom I had heard speak from heaven (UST)

Here, **voice** refers to the speaker. Alternate translation: “the one I heard speak from heaven” or “the one who had spoken to me from heaven” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I heard (ULT) had heard (UST)

John heard.

Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [hand](#)
- [of...angel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [one whom I...speak](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [scroll](#)
- [hand](#)
- [angel](#)

ULT

⁸ And the [voice](#) that I heard from [heaven](#) is speaking to me again, and saying: “Go, take the [scroll](#) that has been opened in the [hand](#) of the [angel](#) who is standing on the sea and on the land.”

UST

⁸ The [one whom I](#) had heard [speak](#) from [heaven](#) spoke to me again. He said, “Go and take the open [scroll](#) from the [hand](#) of the [angel](#) who is standing on the ocean and on the land.”

Revelation 10:9

me...he says (ULT)

me...He said (UST)

Alternate translation: "the angel said to me"

it will make your stomach bitter (ULT)

In your...it will...stomach bitter (UST)

This refers to a bad taste from the **stomach** after eating something that is not good. Alternate translation: "it will make your stomach sour"

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- little scroll
- eat
- as
- honey

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- little scroll
- eat
- like
- honey

ULT

⁹ And I went to the [angel](#), telling him to give me the [little scroll](#). And he says to me, "Take and [eat](#) it, and it will make your stomach bitter; but in your mouth it will be sweet [as honey](#)."

UST

⁹ So I went to the [angel](#) and asked him to give me the [little scroll](#). He said to me, "Take it and [eat](#) it. In your mouth it will taste sweet [like honey](#), but it will make your stomach bitter."

Revelation 10:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- little scroll
- hand
- of...angel
- ate
- as
- sweet

Translation Words - UST

- little scroll
- angel's
- hand
- ate
- like
- honey

ULT

¹⁰ And I took the little scroll from the hand of the angel and ate it, and it was as sweet {as} honey in my mouth, but after I ate it, my stomach became bitter.

UST

¹⁰ I took the little scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. In my mouth it tasted sweet like honey, but then it made my stomach bitter.

Revelation 10:11

tongues (ULT) speakers of many languages (UST)

Here, **tongues** refers to the people who speak the languages.
Alternate translation: “many language communities” or “many groups of people who speak their own languages” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to prophesy](#)
- [peoples](#)
- [nations](#)
- [tongues](#)
- [kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's messages](#)
- [many nations](#)
- [people groups](#)
- [speakers of many languages](#)
- [kings](#)

ULT

¹¹ And they said to me, “It is necessary for you [to prophesy](#) again about many [peoples](#) and [nations](#) and [tongues](#) and [kings](#).”

UST

¹¹ Then someone said to me, “You must speak [God's messages](#) again about [many nations](#), [people groups](#), [speakers of many languages](#), and many [kings](#).”

Revelation 11

Revelation 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 15 and 17-18.

Woe

John describes several “woes” in the book of Revelation. This chapter describes a second and third “woe” announced at the end of Chapter 8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Gentiles

The word “Gentiles” here refers to ungodly people groups and not Gentile Christians. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Two witnesses

Scholars have suggested many different ideas about these two witnesses. Translators do not need to understand this passage to accurately translate it. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bottomless pit

This image is seen several times in the Book of Revelation. It is a picture of hell as being inescapable and the opposite direction as heaven. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Revelation 11:1

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision about receiving a measuring rod and two witnesses that God appointed. This vision also takes place between the blowing of the sixth and seventh trumpets.

a reed like a measuring rod was given to me (ULT)

gave to me a reed similar to a measuring stick (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone gave me a reed like a measuring rod" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

was given to me...someone} said (ULT)

gave to me...said to me (UST)

Here, **me** refers to John.

those who worship in it (ULT)

and count the people who...are worshiping there (UST)

Alternate translation: "count those who worship in the temple"

Translation Words - ULT

- a reed
- like
- a measuring rod
- Get up
- temple
- of God
- altar
- who worship

Translation Words - UST

- a reed
- similar to
- a measuring stick
- God
- Go
- temple
- altar in it
- are worshiping

ULT

¹ And a reed like a measuring rod was given to me, {someone} said, "Get up and measure the temple of God and the altar, and those who worship in it.

UST

¹ Then an angel gave to me a reed similar to a measuring stick. God said to me, "Go to the temple, measure it and the altar in it, and count the people who are worshiping there.

Revelation 11:2

they will trample (ULT)

As a result, they will trample (UST)

To **trample** to treat something as worthless by walking on it.

Translation Words - ULT

- courtyard
- temple
- to...Gentiles
- they will trample
- holy city
- holy
- for...months

Translation Words - UST

- courtyard
- outside
- non-Jewish people groups
- As a result, they will trample
- city of Jerusalem
- city of Jerusalem
- for...months

ULT

² But leave out the **courtyard** that is outside the **temple**, and do not measure it, for it has been given to the **Gentiles**, and **they will trample** the **holy** city for 42 **months**.

UST

² But do not measure the **courtyard** **outside** of the temple building because I have given it to the **non-Jewish people groups**. **As a result, they will trample** the **city of Jerusalem** for forty-two **months**.

Revelation 11:3

clothed in sackcloth (ULT)

You can make it explicit why they will wear **sackcloth**. Alternate translation: “wearing rough mourning clothes” or “wearing scratchy clothes to show that they are very sad” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...witnesses](#)
- [they will prophesy](#)
- [for...days](#)
- [clothed in](#)
- [sackcloth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence](#)
- [day](#)
- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments](#)
- [sackcloth](#)

ULT

³ And I will grant to my two [witnesses](#), and [they will prophesy](#) for 1, 260 [days](#), [clothed in sackcloth](#).”

UST

³ I will send two witnesses to announce what I reveal to them for 1, 260 days. They will show they are sad about the people's sin by wearing rough clothes made from goat's hair.”

Revelation 11:4

These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth (ULT)

Those witnesses are the ones that are represented by the two olive trees and the two lampstands that are in the presence of the Lord, who rules the earth (UST)

The **two olive trees** and the **two lampstands** symbolize these people, but they are not literally the people. Alternate translation: “The two olive trees and the two lampstands that have stood before the Lord of the earth represent these witnesses” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

ULT

⁴ These are the two [olive trees](#) and the two [lampstands](#) that stand before the [Lord](#) of the [earth](#).

UST

⁴ Those witnesses are the ones that are represented by the two [olive trees](#) and the two [lampstands](#) that are in the presence of the [Lord](#), who rules the [earth](#).

the two olive trees and the two lampstands that (ULT)
the ones that are represented by the two olive trees and the two lampstands that are in the (UST)

John expects his readers to know about the **two olive trees and the two lampstands** because many years earlier another prophet had written about them. Alternate translation: “the two olive trees and the two lampstands, told about in scripture, that” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [olive trees](#)
- [lampstands](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of...earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [olive trees](#)
- [lampstands](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [earth](#)

Revelation 11:5

fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies

Because this is about future events, you can state this in the future tense. Alternate translation: “fire will come out of their mouth and devour their enemies”

fire...devours their enemies (ULT)

fire...and destroys them (UST)

Here, **fire** burning and killing people is spoken of as if it were an animal that could eat them up. Alternate translation: “fire ... will destroy their enemies” or “fire ... will completely burn up their enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [devours](#)
- [enemies](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fire](#)
- [and destroys them](#)
- [and destroys them](#)

ULT

⁵ And if anyone wishes to harm them, [fire](#) comes out from their mouth and [devours](#) their [enemies](#), and if anyone might wish to harm them, he must be killed in this way.

UST

⁵ If anyone tries to harm those witnesses, [fire](#) comes from the witnesses' mouths [and destroys them](#). If people want to harm them, the two witnesses certainly kill them in the same way.

Revelation 11:6

to close up the sky so that no rain might fall (ULT)

the sky in order to keep rain from falling (UST)

John speaks of **the sky** as if it had a door that someone can open to let **rain fall** or close to stop the rain. Alternate translation: “to keep rain from falling from the sky” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to turn (ULT)

to cause...will...have authority (UST)

Alternate translation: “to change”

to strike the earth with every plague (ULT)

send down to the earth all kinds of plagues (UST)

John speaks of the plagues as if they were a stick that someone could hit the earth with. Alternate translation: “to cause all kinds of trouble to occur on earth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [sky](#)
- [plague](#)
- [during...days](#)
- [of...prophecy](#)
- [power](#) (2)
- [waters](#)
- [to turn](#)
- [blood](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [authority over](#)
- [the sky in order to keep rain](#)
- [earth](#)
- [plagues](#)
- [during...time](#)
- [are announcing what God reveals to them](#)
- [will...authority...to](#) (2)
- [to cause...will...have authority](#)
- [water everywhere](#)
- [blood](#)

ULT

⁶ They have [authority](#) to close up the [sky](#) so that no rain might fall {[during](#)} the [days](#) of their [prophecy](#), and they have [power](#) over the [waters to turn](#) them into [blood](#) and to strike the [earth](#) with every [plague](#) whenever they would desire.

UST

⁶ Those witnesses will have [authority over the sky in order to keep rain](#) from falling [during](#) the [time](#) that they [are announcing what God reveals to them](#). They also will have [authority to cause water everywhere](#) to become [blood](#); they will also [have authority to](#) send down to the [earth](#) all kinds of [plagues](#). They will do this as often as they wish.

Revelation 11:7

abyss (ULT)

shaft that went down but had no ending (UST)

The **abyss** is an extremely deep narrow hole. This could mean: (1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever. (2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#)
- [beast](#)
- [abyss](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [announcing to people...message from God](#)
- [beast](#)
- [shaft that went down but had no ending](#)

ULT

⁷ And when they have finished their [testimony](#), the [beast](#) that comes up from the [abyss](#) will make war against them, and he will conquer them and kill them.

UST

⁷ When they have finished [announcing to people](#) the [message from God](#), the [beast](#) that comes up from the [shaft that went down but had no ending](#) will attack them, overcome them, and kill them.

Revelation 11:8

their corpses (ULT)

The...dead bodies of the two witnesses (UST)

Here, **their corpses** refers to the bodies of the two witnesses.

in the street of the great city

The city had more than one **street**. This was a public place where people could see them. Alternate translation: "in one of the streets of the great city" or "in the main street of the great city"

their...Lord (ULT)

of the two witnesses...Lord (UST)

They served the **Lord**, and like him, would die in that city.

Translation Words - ULT

- corpses
- is...called
- Sodom
- Egypt
- Lord
- was crucified

Translation Words - UST

- dead bodies
- Lord
- was crucified
- called
- Sodom
- Egypt because its people are very evil like the people who lived in Sodom and Egypt

ULT

⁸ And their **corpses** {will be} in the street of the great city (which is spiritually **called Sodom** and **Egypt**) where also their **Lord was crucified**.

UST

⁸ The **dead bodies** of the two witnesses will lie in the street of the great city where their **Lord was crucified**, the city that is symbolically **called Sodom** or **Egypt because its people are very evil like the people who lived in Sodom and Egypt**.

Revelation 11:9

for three and a half days (ULT)

for three and a half days (UST)

Alternate translation: "three full days and one half day" or "3.5 days" or "3-1/2 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

their...they do not permit...corpses to be

placed in a tomb (ULT)

their...they will not allow anyone to bury...

bodies (UST)

They will leave their bodies in the street as a sign of disrespect.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for...days](#)
- [people](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [nation](#)
- [corpses](#)
- [corpses](#)
- [a tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [many people groups](#)
- [tribes](#)
- [language groups](#)
- [nations](#)
- [dead bodies](#)
- [bodies](#)
- [for...days](#)
- [bury](#)

ULT

⁹ And for three and a half [days](#) {some} from {every} [people](#) and [tribe](#) and [tongue](#) and [nation](#) look at their [corpses](#), and they do not permit their [corpses](#) to be placed in [a tomb](#).

UST

⁹ Individuals of [many people groups](#), [tribes](#), [language groups](#), and [nations](#) will look at their [dead bodies](#) for three and a half [days](#). But they will not allow anyone to [bury](#) their [bodies](#).

Revelation 11:10

And...rejoice over them...celebrate (ULT)
When...see that the witnesses are dead, they
will rejoice...celebrate (UST)

Alternate translation: "will rejoice and celebrate that the two witnesses have died"

send gifts to one another (ULT)
They will send...gifts...to each other (UST)

Sending **gifts to one another** shows how happy the people were.
 (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

those...on the earth...because these two...
prophets...tormented those who live (ULT)
the...on the earth...because these...two...prophets had sent plagues that
tormented them (UST)

This is the reason that the people will be so happy that the witnesses have died.

ULT

¹⁰ And those who live on the [earth](#) [rejoice](#) over them and celebrate and [send gifts](#) to one another, because these two [prophets tormented](#) those who live on the [earth](#).

UST

¹⁰ When the people who live on the [earth](#) see that the witnesses are dead, they [will rejoice](#) and celebrate. [They will send gifts](#) to each other because these two [prophets had sent plagues that tormented them](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [earth](#) (2)
- [rejoice](#)
- [send](#)
- [gifts](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [tormented](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [them](#) (2)
- [will rejoice](#)
- [They will send](#)
- [gifts](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [had sent plagues that tormented](#)

Revelation 11:11

three and a half days (ULT)

three and a half days (UST)

Alternate translation: “three full days and one half day” or “3.5 days” or “3-1/2 days.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 11:9](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

a breath of life from God entered into them (ULT)

God will cause them to breathe again...live (UST)

The ability to breathe is spoken of as if it were something that can go into people. Alternate translation: “God will cause the two witnesses to breathe again and live” (See: [Metaphor](#))

great fear fell on those seeing them (ULT)
the people who see them will be terrified (UST)

Here, **fear** is spoken of as if it were a object that can fall on people. Alternate translation: “those who see them will be extremely afraid” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [a breath](#)
- [of life](#)
- [God](#)
- [fear](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)
- [God](#)
- [will cause them to breathe](#)
- [live](#)
- [will be terrified](#)

ULT

¹¹ But after three and a half [days](#), [a breath of life](#) from [God](#) entered into them, and they stood on their feet, and great [fear](#) fell on those seeing them.

UST

¹¹ But after three and a half [days](#), [God](#) [will cause them to breathe](#) again and [live](#). They will stand up, and the people who see them [will be terrified](#).

Revelation 11:12

And they heard (ULT)

The two witnesses will hear (UST)

Here, **they heard** could mean: (1) the two witnesses will hear. (2) the people will hear what is said to the two witnesses.

a loud voice from heaven (ULT)

a loud voice from heaven (UST)

Here, **a loud voice** refers to the one who speaks. Alternate translation: "someone speak loudly to them from heaven and" (See: [Metonymy](#))

saying to them (ULT)

saying to them (UST)

Alternate translation: "saying to the two witnesses"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...voice](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [enemies](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a...voice](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [enemies](#)

ULT

¹² And they heard a loud [voice](#) from [heaven](#) saying to them, "Come up here!" And they went up into [heaven](#) in a cloud, and their [enemies](#) watched them.

UST

¹² The two witnesses will hear a loud [voice](#) from [heaven](#) saying to them: "Come up here!" Then they will go up into [heaven](#) in a cloud. Their [enemies](#) will watch them go up.

Revelation 11:13

the survivors (ULT)

The rest of the (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who do not die" or "those who are still living"

the...gave glory to...God of heaven (ULT)
people will die...God who rules in heaven...is awesome (UST)

Alternate translation: "said that the God of heaven is glorious"

Translation Words - ULT

- hour
- the names
- terrified
- glory
- to...God
- of heaven

Translation Words - UST

- same time
- afraid
- will acknowledge that
- God
- who rules in heaven
- is awesome

ULT

¹³ And at that hour a great earthquake happened, and a tenth part of the city collapsed. And in the earthquake, the names of 7,000 men were killed, and the survivors became terrified and gave glory to the God of heaven.

UST

¹³ At that same time there will be a great earthquake, as a result of which a tenth of the buildings in the city will collapse, and seven thousand people will die. The rest of the people will be afraid and will acknowledge that the God who rules in heaven is awesome.

Revelation 11:14

The second woe is past

See how you translated "The first woe is past" in [Revelation 9:12](#).
Alternate translation: "The second terrible event is over"

the third woe is coming quickly (ULT)
Be aware that...the third terrible event will happen soon after (UST)

Existing in the future is spoken of as **coming**. Alternate translation: "The third woe will happen soon" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [woe](#)
- [woe](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [terrible event](#)
- [terrible event](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁴ The second [woe](#) has passed. Behold, the third [woe](#) is coming quickly.

UST

¹⁴ That will be the second [terrible event](#). Be aware that the third [terrible event](#) will happen soon after.

Revelation 11:15

Connecting Statement:

The last of the seven angels begins to sound his trumpet.

the seventh angel (ULT)

the seventh angel (UST)

This is the last of the seven angels. See how you translated **seventh** in [Revelation 8:1](#). The word **seventh** is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “the final angel” or “angel number seven” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

loud voices spoke in heaven, saying (ULT)

Voices...in heaven shouted loudly (UST)

The phrase **loud voices** represents speakers who spoke loudly. Alternate translation: “speakers in heaven spoke loudly and said”

The kingdom of the world has become {the kingdom} of our Lord and of his Christ (ULT)

Our Lord God and the Messiah whom he has appointed can now govern all the people in the world...they (UST)

Here, **kingdom** refers to the authority to rule **the world**. Alternate translation: “The authority to rule the world has become the authority that belongs to our Lord and his Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

of the world (ULT)

the people in the world (UST)

Here, **the world** refers to every person in **the world**. Alternate translation: “everyone in the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The kingdom of the world has become {the kingdom} of our Lord and of his Christ (ULT)

Our Lord God and the Messiah whom he has appointed can now govern all the people in the world...they (UST)

Alternate translation: “Our Lord and his Christ are now the rulers of the world”

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [sounded a trumpet](#)
- [forever](#)
- [and} ever](#)
- [voices](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [kingdom](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And the seventh [angel sounded a trumpet](#), and loud [voices](#) spoke in [heaven](#), saying, “The [kingdom](#) of the [world](#) has become {the [kingdom](#)} of our [Lord](#) and of his [Christ](#), and [he will reign forever](#) {and} [ever](#).”

UST

¹⁵ Then the seventh [angel blew his trumpet](#). [Voices](#) in [heaven](#) shouted loudly, “Our [Lord God](#) and the [Messiah](#) [whom he has appointed can now govern all](#) the [people in the world](#), and they [will continue to rule](#) those people [forever](#)!”

- of...world
- the kingdom} of...Lord
- of...Christ
- he will reign

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- blew his trumpet
- Voices
- heaven
- Lord God
- Messiah whom he has appointed can now
- govern all
- people in the world
- will continue to rule
- forever
- forever

Revelation 11:16

fell upon their faces (ULT) bowed down their faces to the ground (UST)

Here, **fell upon their faces** is an idiom that means they lay down facing the ground. See how you translated “prostrated themselves” in [Revelation 4:10](#). Alternate translation: “they bowed down” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [elders](#)
- [thrones](#)
- [of God](#)
- [God](#)
- [fell](#)
- [faces](#)
- [worshiped](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [elders](#)
- [thrones](#)
- [God's](#)
- [him](#)
- [bowed down...the ground](#)
- [faces](#)
- [worshiped](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And the 24 [elders](#), who sit on their [thrones](#) in the presence [of God](#), [fell](#) upon their [faces](#) and [worshiped God](#),

UST

¹⁶ The twenty-four [elders](#), who sit on their [thrones](#) in [God's](#) presence, [bowed down](#) their [faces](#) to [the ground](#) and [worshiped him](#).

Revelation 11:17

to you, O Lord God Almighty, the one who is, and who was (ULT)

Lord God, you are the one who rules over everything! You are the one who exists now! You are the one who has always existed...you (UST)

You can state these phrases as sentences. Alternate translation: “you, Lord God, the ruler over all. You are the one who is, and you are the one who was” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

God...who is (ULT)

God...the one who exists now (UST)

Alternate translation: “the one who exists” or “the one who lives”

God...was (ULT)

God...who has always existed (UST)

Alternate translation: “who has always existed” or “who has always lived”

you have taken your great power (ULT)

have defeated with your power everyone who has rebelled against you (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you can state explicitly what God did with his **great power**.

Alternate translation: “you have defeated with your power everyone who has rebelled against you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- O Lord
- God
- Almighty
- power
- have begun to reign

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- God
- you are...who rules over everything
- with...power
- you now rule over all the people in the world

ULT

¹⁷ saying, “We give thanks to you, O [Lord God Almighty](#), the one who is, and who was, and because you have taken your great [power](#) and [have begun to reign](#). ^[1]”

UST

¹⁷ They said: “[Lord God, you are](#) the one [who rules over everything](#)! You are the one who exists now! You are the one who has always existed! We thank you that you have defeated with your [power](#) everyone who has rebelled against you, and [you now rule over all the people in the world](#).”

Revelation 11:18

General Information:

The words **you** and **your** refer to God.

your wrath has come (ULT)
you have become very angry with them. You (UST)

Existing in the present is spoken of as having **come**. Alternate translation: "you are ready to show your anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the dead to be judged (ULT)
for you to judge all those who have died (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "for God to judge the dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the dead (ULT)
all those who have died (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the nominal adjective **dead**, you can state it as a verb or adjective. Alternate translation: "for those who have died" or "for the dead people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

to those who fear your name (ULT)
all...who...all those who honor you (UST)

Here, **name** is a metonym for the person of Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "to those who fear you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [nations](#)
- [wrath](#)
- [name](#)
- [great](#)
- [to destroy](#)
- [who are destroying](#)
- [earth](#)
- [time](#)
- [for...dead](#)
- [to be judged](#)
- [reward](#)
- [to...servants](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [to...saints](#)
- [who fear](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And the [nations](#) were enraged, but your [wrath](#) has come, and the [time](#) for the [dead to be judged](#), and to give the [reward](#) to your [servants](#) the [prophets](#) and to the [saints](#) and to those [who fear](#) your [name](#), the small and the [great](#), and [to destroy](#) those [who are destroying](#) the [earth](#)."

UST

¹⁸ The [unbelieving people of the nations](#) were angrily raging at you. As a result you have become [very angry with them](#). You have decided that this is the [right time for you to judge all those who have died](#). The time has come for you [to reward](#) all your [servants](#) who were the [prophets](#) and the others who [believe in you](#), and [all those who honor](#) you, and this includes those who are small and those who [are great](#). It is time for you [to destroy](#) the people who [destroy](#) the [earth](#)."

Translation Words - UST

- unbelieving people of the nations
- very angry with them
- all those who honor
- are great
- to destroy
- destroy
- earth
- right time
- for you to judge
- all those who have died
- to reward
- servants
- prophets
- believe in you
- all those who honor

Revelation 11:19

And the temple of God that {is} in heaven was opened (ULT)

Then God opened his temple in heaven (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Then someone opened God's temple in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the ark of the covenant of the Lord was seen in his temple (ULT)

I saw in it the sacred chest, containing God's promise (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "I saw the ark of his covenant in his temple" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

flashes of lightning (ULT)

Lightning was flashing (UST)

Use your language's way of describing what **lightning** looks like each time it appears. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

And...loud sounds...crashes of thunder (ULT)

Then...thundering...and rumbling (UST)

Here, **loud sounds and crashes of thunder** refers to the loud noises that thunder makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

ULT

¹⁹ And the [temple of God](#) that {is} in [heaven](#) was opened and the [ark](#) of the [covenant](#) of the [Lord](#) was seen in his [temple](#). And there were flashes of lightning and [loud sounds](#) and crashes of thunder and an earthquake and a great hailstorm.

11:17 ^[1] but most modern versions do not.

UST

¹⁹ Then [God](#) opened his [temple](#) in [heaven](#), and I saw in [it](#) the [sacred chest](#), [containing God's promise](#). Lightning was flashing; it was thundering [and rumbling](#); the earth shook, and large hailstones fell from the sky.

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [of God](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [ark of the covenant](#)
- [ark](#)
- [of...covenant](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [loud sounds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [temple](#)
- [it](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [sacred](#)

- chest, containing God's promise
- chest
- containing God's promise
- and rumbling

Revelation 12

Revelation 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 10-12.

Special concepts in this chapter

Serpent

The Book of Revelation uses imagery from the Old Testament. For example, John refers to Satan as the serpent. This image comes from the account of the Garden of Eden when Satan tempted Eve. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“A great sign was seen in heaven”

By using the passive voice here, John does not say who saw this great sign in heaven. The translation may be difficult when the subject is unclear, if your language does not have a passive voice. Many English translations use the past tense here and say “A great sign appeared in heaven.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Revelation 12:1

General Information:

John begins to describe a woman who appears in his vision.

a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet (ULT)

**It was a woman, whose clothing was the sun.
The moon was under her feet (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "a woman who was wearing the sun and had the moon under her feet" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...sign
- heaven
- clothed with
- a crown
- head

Translation Words - UST

- something
- sky
- clothing was
- head
- was a wreath of victory

ULT

¹ And a great [sign](#) appeared in [heaven](#): a woman [clothed with](#) the sun, and the moon under her feet, and [a crown](#) of 12 stars on her [head](#),

UST

¹ Then [something](#) very important appeared in the [sky](#). It was a woman, whose [clothing was](#) the sun. The moon was under her feet. On her [head was a wreath of victory](#) that was made of twelve stars.

Revelation 12:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the womb
- she cries out
- in birth pains and is struggling to give birth

Translation Words - UST

- She was about to deliver a child
- she cried out
- because she was suffering pain

ULT

² and having in the womb, and she cries out in birth pains and is struggling to give birth.

UST

² She was about to deliver a child, and she cried out because she was suffering pain.

Revelation 12:3

Connecting Statement:

John describes a dragon that appears in his vision.

a...dragon (ULT) dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heads](#)
- [heads](#) (2)
- [horns](#)
- [crowns](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Something...very unusual](#)
- [sky](#)
- [heads](#)
- [heads](#) (2)
- [horns](#)
- [was a royal crown](#)

ULT

³ And another [sign](#) appeared in [heaven](#): and behold, a huge red dragon having seven [heads](#) and ten [horns](#) and seven [crowns](#) on his [heads](#).

UST

³ [Something](#) else [very unusual](#) appeared in the [sky](#). It was a huge red dragon. It had seven [heads](#) and ten [horns](#). On each of its [heads](#) was a royal crown.

Revelation 12:4

a third (ULT)

a third (UST)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 8:7](#). Alternate translation: "one third" (See: [Fractions](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in heaven](#)
- [earth](#)
- [he might devour](#)
- [child](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [earth](#)
- [he might eat](#)
- [child](#)

ULT

⁴ And his tail sweeps away a third of the stars [in heaven](#) and hurled them down to the [earth](#). And the dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she would give birth, [he might devour](#) her [child](#).

UST

⁴ The dragon's tail dragged a third of the stars from the [sky](#) and threw them to the [earth](#). The dragon set himself in front of the woman who was about to give birth in order that [he might eat](#) her [child](#) as soon as it was born.

Revelation 12:5

to rule all the nations with an iron rod (ULT)
rule all groups of people with complete authority as if he were using an iron rod (UST)

Here, ruling harshly is spoken of as ruling **with an iron rod**. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:27](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

her child was snatched away to God (ULT)
God...snatched away...her child...to (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God quickly took her child to himself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- to rule
- nations
- iron
- child
- was snatched away
- God
- throne

Translation Words - UST

- to a son
- rule
- groups of people
- rod
- God
- snatched away
- child
- throne

ULT

⁵ And she gave birth to a son, a male child, who is going to rule all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was snatched away to God and to his throne,

UST

⁵ Then she gave birth to a son who is destined to rule all groups of people with complete authority as if he were using an iron rod. God snatched away her child and took him to his throne.

Revelation 12:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- wilderness
- God
- for...days

Translation Words - UST

- God
- day
- desert, wilderness

ULT

⁶ and the woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared by God there, so that they might provide for her there for 1, 260 days.

UST

⁶ But the woman fled into the wilderness. She has a place there that God has prepared for her in order that he may take care of her for 1, 260 days.

Revelation 12:7

dragon (ULT)

dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Michael](#)
- [angels](#)
- [angels](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Michael](#)
- [angels](#)
- [angels](#) (2)

ULT

⁷ And there was war in [heaven](#). [Michael](#) and his [angels](#) fought with the dragon; and the dragon and his [angels](#) fought back.

UST

⁷ Then there was a battle in [heaven](#). [Michael](#) and the [angels](#) that he commanded fought against the dragon. The dragon and his angels fought back against Michael and his [angels](#).

Revelation 12:8

nor was a place found for them any longer in heaven (ULT)

nor did God allow the dragon and his angels to stay in heaven any longer (UST)

Alternate translation: "so the dragon and his angels could no longer stay in heaven"

Translation Words - ULT

- he was...strong enough
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- did...win the battle
- heaven

ULT

⁸ But he was not strong enough, nor was a place found for them any longer in heaven.

UST

⁸ But the dragon did not win the battle; nor did God allow the dragon and his angels to stay in heaven any longer.

Revelation 12:9

the great dragon...the ancient serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, the one who deceives the whole world—he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him (ULT)

the huge dragon...The dragon is the ancient serpent, the one whose names are the Devil and Satan. He is the one who deceives people all over the earth. He was thrown to the earth along with all his angels (UST)

You can give the information about the serpent in a separate sentence after the statement that it was thrown down to the earth. Alternate translation: “the great dragon was thrown down to earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. He is the old serpent who deceives the world and is called the devil or Satan” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

ULT

⁹ And the great dragon was thrown down—the ancient [serpent, who is called the devil](#) and [Satan](#), the one [who deceives](#) the whole [world](#)—he was thrown down to the [earth](#), and his [angels](#) were thrown down with him.

UST

⁹ Instead, God threw the huge dragon out of heaven. The dragon is the ancient [serpent](#), the one whose [names are the Devil](#) and [Satan](#). [He is the one who deceives people](#) all over the [earth](#). He was thrown to the [earth](#) along with all his [angels](#).

the great dragon was thrown down—the ancient serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, the one who deceives the whole world—he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him (ULT)
threw the huge dragon out of heaven. The dragon is the ancient serpent, the one whose names are the Devil and Satan. He is the one who deceives people all over the earth. He was thrown to the earth along with all his angels (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God threw the great dragon—the ancient serpent, who people also call the devil and Satan—and his angels out of heaven and sent them to the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [serpent](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [the devil](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [who deceives](#)
- [world](#)
- [earth](#)
- [angels](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [serpent](#)
- [names are](#)
- [the Devil](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [He is the one who deceives people](#)

- over...earth
- earth
- angels

Revelation 12:10

I heard (ULT)

I heard (UST)

The word **I** refers to John.

I heard a loud voice in heaven (ULT)

I heard someone in heaven...loudly (UST)

Here, the **voice** refers to someone who speaks. Alternate translation: "I heard someone saying loudly from heaven" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ (ULT)

Now our God has saved his people by his power, and he rules all people! Now the Messiah has begun to rule...and (UST)

God saving people by his power is spoken of as if his **salvation** and **power** were things that **have come**. God's ruling and Christ's authority are also spoken of as if they have come. Alternate translation: "Now God has saved his people by his power, God rules as king, and his Christ has all authority" (See: [Metaphor](#))

have come (ULT)

has (UST)

God is revealing these things because their time to occur has **come**. It is not that they did not exist before. Alternate translation: "have begun to really exist" or "have appeared" or "have become real"

our...the accuser of...brothers has been thrown down (ULT)

our God...power, and he rules...has thrown the accuser of...fellow believers out of heaven. He was the one who stood...and (UST)

Here, **the accuser of our brothers** is the dragon that was thrown down in [Revelation 12:9](#).

of our brothers (ULT)

of our fellow believers (UST)

Fellow believers are spoken of as if they were **brothers**. Alternate translation: "our fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#))

day and night (ULT)

day...night and (UST)

These two parts of the day are used together to mean "all the time" or "without stopping" (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And I heard a loud [voice](#) in [heaven](#), saying, "Now have come the [salvation](#) and the [power](#) and the [kingdom of our God](#), and the [authority](#) of his [Christ](#), because the [accuser](#) of our [brothers](#) has been thrown down, the one [who accused](#) them before our [God day](#) and night.

UST

¹⁰ Then I heard [someone](#) in [heaven](#) shout loudly, "Now [our God](#) has [saved](#) his people by his [power](#), and [he rules](#) all people! Now [the Messiah](#) has begun to rule! This is because God has thrown the [accuser](#) of our [fellow believers](#) out of heaven. [He was the one who stood](#) before [God day and night](#) and [told him that](#) they [had done what is wrong](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- a...voice
- heaven
- God (2)
- day
- salvation
- power
- kingdom of...God
- authority
- of...Christ
- accuser
- who accused
- of...brothers

Translation Words - UST

- someone
- heaven
- accuser...He was the one who stood
- told him that...had done what is wrong
- fellow believers
- God (2)
- day
- our God...power, and he rules...and
- our God...power, and he rules...and
- our God...power, and he rules...and
- saved
- the Messiah

Revelation 12:11

they conquered him (ULT)
Our fellow believers...overcame him (UST)

Alternate translation: "they conquered the accuser"

through the blood of the Lamb (ULT)
because the Lamb had shed his blood and died for them (UST)

Here, **the blood** refers to the death of the Lamb. Alternate translation: "because the Lamb had shed his blood and died for them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

by the word of their testimony (ULT)
because they spoke the truth about him to other people. They (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **testimony**, you can express it with the verb "testify" and you can state who they testified. Alternate translation: "by what they said when they testified" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

by the word of their testimony (ULT)
because they spoke the truth about him to other people. They (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you can state explicitly what they testified. Alternate translation: "by what they said when they testified to others about Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

even to death (ULT)
but were willing to let people kill...for speaking the truth about him (UST)

The believers told the truth about Jesus, even though they knew that their enemies might try to kill them because of it. Alternate translation: "but they kept testifying even though they knew that they might die for it"

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- of...Lamb
- of...testimony
- they did...love
- lives
- death

Translation Words - UST

- Lamb
- had shed his blood and died for them
- truth about him to other people
- did...seek to
- remain alive
- but were willing to let people kill...for speaking the truth about him

ULT

¹¹ And they conquered him through the [blood](#) of the [Lamb](#) and by the word of their [testimony](#), and [they did](#) not [love](#) their [lives](#) even to [death](#).

UST

¹¹ Our fellow believers overcame him because the [Lamb had shed his blood and died for them](#) and because they spoke the [truth about him to other people](#). They did not [seek to remain alive](#), [but were willing to let people kill them for speaking the truth about him](#).

Revelation 12:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- O heavens
- Woe
- to...earth
- devil
- he knows
- time

Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- terrible things will happen
- earth
- devil
- because he knows
- only a...time

ULT

¹² Therefore rejoice, O heavens, and those who reside in them! Woe to the earth and to the sea, because the devil has gone down to you, having terrible anger because he knows he has {only} a little time!"

UST

¹² So everyone in heaven should rejoice. But terrible things will happen to you people who live on the earth and on the ocean because the devil has come down to you. He is very angry because he knows that he has only a short time before God judges and punishes him."

Revelation 12:13

the dragon realized that he had been thrown down to the earth (ULT)

the dragon realized that he had been thrown down to the earth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the dragon realized that God had thrown him out of heaven and sent him to earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the dragon (ULT)

the dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [he pursued](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [he pursued](#)

ULT

¹³ And when the dragon realized that he had been thrown down to the [earth](#), [he pursued](#) the woman who had given birth to the male child.

UST

¹³ When the dragon realized that he had been thrown down to the [earth](#), [he pursued](#) the woman who had given birth to a son.

Revelation 12:14

of a...eagle...of...serpent (ULT)
like the wings of a...The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there (UST)

Here, **the serpent** is another way of referring to the dragon.

Translation Words - ULT

- of a...eagle
- wilderness
- for a time
- times
- a time
- the face
- of...serpent

Translation Words - UST

- eagle
- wilderness
- for three and one-half years
- for three and one-half years
- for three and one-half years
- The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there
- The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there

ULT

¹⁴ But two wings of a great eagle were given to the woman so that she might flee to the wilderness to her place, where she is taken care of there for a time and times and half a time—away from the face of the serpent.

UST

¹⁴ But God gave to the woman two wings like the wings of a very large eagle in order that she might fly into the wilderness. There is a place there that God had prepared for her. There God took care of her for three and one-half years. The serpent, that is, the dragon, was not able to reach her there.

Revelation 12:15

serpent (ULT)

serpent (UST)

Here, **the serpent** is the same being as the dragon mentioned earlier in [Revelation 12:9](#).

like a river (ULT)

like a river (UST)

The water flowed from his mouth **like a river** flows. Alternate translation: "in large volume" (See: [Simile](#))

he might cause her to be swept away by a flood (ULT)

sweep her away with the water (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "he might sweep her away with a flood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [serpent](#)
- [water](#)
- [like](#)
- [to be swept away by a flood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [serpent](#)
- [water](#)
- [like](#)
- [sweep...away with the water](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And the [serpent](#) poured [water like](#) a river out from his mouth after the woman, so that he might cause her [to be swept away by a flood](#).

UST

¹⁵ Then the [serpent](#) poured [water like](#) a river from his mouth toward the woman in order to [sweep](#) her [away with the water](#).

Revelation 12:16

**the earth opened its mouth and swallowed
the river that the dragon poured out from his
mouth (ULT)**

**by opening up...and swallowing the river that
the dragon poured out from his mouth (UST)**

Here, **the earth** is spoken of as if it were a living thing, and a hole in the earth is spoken of as if it were a **mouth** that could drink up the water. Alternate translation: “a hole in the ground opened up and the river from the dragon went down into the hole” (See: [Personification](#))

dragon (ULT)

dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [earth](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [ground](#)
- [and swallowing](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁶ But the [earth](#) helped the woman, and the [earth](#) opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon poured out from his mouth.

UST

¹⁶ But the [ground](#) helped the woman by opening up [and swallowing](#) the river that the dragon poured out from his mouth.

Revelation 12:17

who hold to the testimony of Jesus (ULT) who speak the truth about Jesus (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **testimony**, you can express it as a verb. Alternate translation: “who continue to testify about Jesus” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...seed
- who keep
- commandments
- of God
- testimony
- of Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- descendants
- are...people who obey
- God's
- commandments
- who speak the truth about
- Jesus

ULT

¹⁷ And the dragon was enraged at the woman and went off to make war with the rest of her [seed](#), those [who keep](#) the [commandments of God](#) and who hold to the [testimony of Jesus](#).

UST

¹⁷ Then the dragon was very angry with the woman, so he went away to fight against the rest of her [descendants](#). They are the [people who obey God's commandments](#) and [who speak the truth about Jesus](#).

Revelation 13

Revelation 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the words of verse 10, which are from the Old Testament.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Similes

John uses many similes in this chapter. They help to describe the images that he sees in his vision. (See: [Simile](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Unknown animals

John uses different animals to try to describe what he saw. Some of these animals may not be known in the target language. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Revelation 13:1

General Information:

John begins to describe a beast who appears in his vision. Here, **I** refers to John.

Translation Words - ULT

- a beast
- horns
- horns
- heads...were
- heads (2)
- crowns
- was} a...name
- blasphemous

Translation Words - UST

- a beast
- horns
- horns
- heads
- heads (2)
- there was a royal crown
- a name
- insulted God

ULT

¹ And I saw a **beast** coming up out of the sea, having ten **horns** and seven **heads**, and on its **horns** {were} ten **crowns**, and on its **heads** {was} a **blasphemous name**. ^[1]

UST

¹ Then I saw a **beast** come up out of the ocean. It had ten **horns** and seven **heads**. On each of its **horns** there was a **royal crown**. On each of its **heads** there was a **name** that **insulted God**.

Revelation 13:2

dragon (ULT)

dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as “the devil or Satan.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

its...the dragon gave...power to it (ULT)

its feet were like...The dragon...He gave...him the authority (UST)

The **dragon** made the beast as powerful as he was. He did not lose **his power**, however, by giving it to the beast.

his power ... his throne, and his great authority to rule

The words **power**, **throne**, and **authority** are three ways of referring to the dragon’s authority, and together they emphasize that the authority was great.

his throne (ULT)

made the beast...very powerful...to rule over people (UST)

Here, **throne** refers to the dragon’s authority to rule as king. Alternate translation: “his royal authority” or “his authority to rule as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)
- [like](#)
- [were} like](#)
- [was} like \(2\)](#)
- [a leopard](#)
- [a bear’s](#)
- [a lion’s](#)
- [power](#)
- [throne](#)
- [his...authority](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)
- [was like](#)
- [its feet were like](#)
- [was like \(2\)](#)
- [as king](#)
- [a leopard](#)
- [the feet of a bear](#)
- [of a lion](#)
- [very powerful...to rule over people](#)

ULT

² And the [beast](#) that I saw was [like a leopard](#), and its feet {[were](#)} [like a bear’s](#), and its mouth {[was](#)} [like a lion’s](#) mouth, and the dragon gave his [power](#) to it, and his [throne](#) and [his](#) great [authority](#).

UST

² This [beast](#) was [like a leopard](#). But [its feet were like the feet of a bear](#), and its mouth [was like](#) the mouth [of a lion](#). The dragon made the beast [very powerful](#). He gave him the [authority to rule over people as king](#).

- [authority](#)

Revelation 13:3

but its fatal wound was healed (ULT)

But its wound had healed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “but its fatal wound healed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

fatal wound (ULT)

wound (UST)

This is an injury that is serious enough to cause a person to die.
Alternate translation: “deadly wound”

the whole earth (ULT)

all the people of the earth (UST)

Here, **the whole earth** refers to all the people who live anywhere on it. Alternate translation: “all the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

fatal...and followed} after...beast (ULT)

wound...beast...followed it (UST)

Alternate translation: “obeyed the beast”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heads](#)
- [was} like](#)
- [it had been killed](#)
- [fatal](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [earth](#)
- [marveled](#)
- [beast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heads of the beast](#)
- [looked as if](#)
- [died](#)
- [wound](#)
- [had healed](#)
- [earth](#)
- [marveled](#)
- [beast](#)

ULT

³ And one of its [heads](#) {[was](#)} [like it had been killed](#), but its [fatal](#) wound [was healed](#). And the whole [earth](#) [marveled](#) {and followed} after the [beast](#),

UST

³ One of the [heads of the beast](#) [looked as if](#) someone had wounded it so that it [died](#). But its [wound had healed](#). As a result, all the people of the [earth](#) [marveled](#) at the [beast](#) and followed it.

Revelation 13:4

dragon (ULT)

dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the...he gave {his} authority to...beast (ULT)

the...he had given...beast authority to rule over them (UST)

Alternate translation: "he had caused the beast to have as much authority as he had"

Who {is} like the beast, and who is able to fight against it (ULT)

and...No one is as powerful as the beast! Who could ever fight against it (UST)

This question shows how amazed they were about the beast. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can translate it as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one is as powerful as the beast or able to fight against it and win!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ and [they worshiped](#) the dragon, because he gave {his} [authority](#) to the [beast](#), and [they worshiped](#) the [beast](#), saying, "Who {is} like the [beast](#), and who is able to fight against it?"

UST

⁴ [They](#) also [worshiped](#) the dragon because he had given the [beast authority to rule over them](#). [They](#) also [worshiped](#) the [beast](#) and said, "No one [is as](#) powerful as the [beast](#)! Who could ever fight against it?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [they worshiped](#)
- [they worshiped](#) (2)
- [authority](#)
- [to...beast](#)
- [beast](#) (2)
- [beast](#) (3)
- [is} like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They...worshiped](#)
- [They...worshiped](#) (2)
- [beast](#)
- [beast](#) (2)
- [beast](#) (3)
- [authority to rule over them](#)
- [is as](#)

Revelation 13:5

to it was given...was given to it (ULT)
God allowed...the beast...God...allowed it (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God gave the beast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to it was given a mouth speaking (ULT)
God allowed...the beast to speak (UST)

Being **given a mouth** refers to being allowed to speak. Alternate translation: "the beast was allowed to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blasphemies](#)
- [authority](#)
- [for...months](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to insult him](#)
- [to rule the people](#)
- [for...months](#)

ULT

⁵ And to it was given a mouth speaking great things and [blasphemies](#), and [authority](#) was given to it to act for 42 [months](#).

UST

⁵ God allowed the beast to speak proudly and [to insult him](#). God also allowed it [to rule the people](#) for forty-two [months](#).

Revelation 13:6

for blasphemies against God (ULT)
it insulted God (UST)

Alternate translation: "to say disrespectful things about God"

blaspheming his name, the place where he lives, and those who live in heaven

These phrases tell how the beast spoke blasphemies against God.

Translation Words - ULT

- blasphemies
- to blaspheme
- God
- name
- tabernacle
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- it insulted God
- it insulted God
- it insulted God
- name
- place where...lives
- heaven

ULT

⁶ And it opened its mouth for **blasphemies** against **God**, **to blaspheme** his **name** and his **tabernacle**—those who dwell in **heaven**.

UST

⁶ When it spoke, **it insulted God**, his **name**, the **place where** he **lives**, and all who live in **heaven**.

Revelation 13:7

authority was given to it (ULT)

It...had...authority to rule (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God gave authority to the beast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every tribe, people, language, and nation

This means that people from every ethnic group are included. See how you translated a similar list in [Revelation 5:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [saints](#)
- [authority](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [people](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his people](#)
- [authority to rule](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [over every nation](#)
- [over the speakers of every language](#)
- [over every people group](#)

ULT

⁷ And to it was granted to make war with the [saints](#) and to conquer them, and [authority](#) was given to it over every [tribe](#) and [people](#) and [tongue](#) and [nation](#).

UST

⁷ God also allowed the beast to fight against [his people](#) and conquer them. It had [authority to rule](#) over every [tribe](#), [over every nation](#), [over the speakers of every language](#), and [over every people group](#).

Revelation 13:8

will worship it (ULT)
will worship...it (UST)

Alternate translation: "will worship the beast"

everyone whose name has not been written in the Book of Life (ULT)
Those who worship it are the ones whose names are not written in the Book of Life (UST)

This phrase clarifies who on the earth will worship the beast. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone whose names the Lamb did not write in the Book of Life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the foundation of the world (ULT)
before the creation of the world (UST)

Alternate translation: "when God created the world"

of the Lamb (ULT)
That was the book that was written...and it belongs to the Lamb (UST)

A lamb is a young sheep. Here it is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

who was slaughtered (ULT)
who was killed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the people slaughtered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [will worship](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [name](#)
- [Book](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [of Life](#)
- [of...Lamb](#)
- [the foundation of the world](#)
- [the foundation](#)

ULT

⁸ And all those who live on the [earth](#) [will worship](#) it—everyone whose [name](#) has not been written in the [Book of Life](#) of the [Lamb](#) who was slaughtered from [the foundation of the world](#).

UST

⁸ All the people living on [earth](#) [will worship](#) it. Those who worship it are the ones whose [names](#) are not written in the [Book of Life](#). That was the book that was written before [the creation of the world](#), and it belongs to [the Lamb](#) who was killed.

Translation Words - UST

- earth
- will worship
- the Lamb
- names
- Book
- Book of Life
- Life
- the creation of the world
- the creation
- of the world

Revelation 13:9

General Information:

These verses are a break from John's account of his vision. Here he give a warning to the people reading his account.

If anyone has an ear, let him hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God (UST)

ULT

⁹ If anyone has an ear, let him hear.

UST

⁹ Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God.

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. Here, **has an ear** is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: "If anyone is willing to listen, listen" or "If anyone is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

If anyone has an ear, let him hear (ULT)
Everyone who wants to understand must listen carefully to this message from God (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 2:7](#). Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Revelation 13:10

If anyone {is} for captivity (ULT)
If God has decided that some people will be captured by their enemies (UST)

This expression means that someone has decided who should be taken. If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you may state explicitly who decided it. Alternate translation: "If God has decided that someone should be taken captive" or "If it is God's will that someone should be taken into captivity" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If anyone {is} for captivity (ULT)
If God has decided that some people will be captured by their enemies (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **captivity**, you can express it with the verb "capture." Alternate translation: "If it is God's will for a certain person to captured" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

If anyone {is} for captivity (ULT)
If God has decided that some people will be captured by their enemies (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "If it is God's will for the enemy to capture a certain person" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

if anyone will be killed with the sword (ULT)
If God has decided that some people will die in war (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "If it is God's will for the enemy to kill a certain person with a sword" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with the sword (ULT)
in war (UST)

Here, **the sword** represents war. Alternate translation: "in war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he must...be killed (ULT)
they will...die (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the enemy will kill him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Here is a call for the patient endurance and faith of the saints

Alternate translation: "God's holy people must endure patiently and be faithful"

ULT

¹⁰ If anyone {is} for **captivity**, {to captivity} he goes; if anyone will be killed with **the sword**, with **the sword** he must be killed. Here is the **endurance** and the **faith** of the **saints**.

UST

¹⁰ If God has decided that some people **will be captured by their enemies**, they will be captured. If God has decided that some people will die in **war**, they will die in **war**. So **God's people** must **endure suffering** and **be faithful to him**.

Translation Words - ULT

- captivity
- the sword
- the sword (2)
- endurance
- faith
- of...saints

Translation Words - UST

- will be captured by their enemies
- war
- war (2)
- God's people
- endure suffering
- be faithful to him

Revelation 13:11

Connecting Statement:

John begins to describe another beast who appears in his vision.

it was speaking like a dragon (ULT) it spoke harshly as a dragon does (UST)

Harsh speech is spoken of as if it were the roar of **a dragon**.

Alternate translation: "it spoke harshly like a dragon speaks" (See: [Simile](#))

a dragon (ULT) a dragon does (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)
- [earth](#)
- [horns](#)
- [like](#)
- [like](#)
- [a lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)
- [earth](#)
- [small horns](#)
- [on its head...a sheep has](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#)

ULT

11 And I saw another [beast](#) coming up out of the [earth](#), and it had two [horns like a lamb](#), and it was speaking [like](#) a dragon.

UST

11 Then I saw another [beast](#) come up from the [earth](#). It had two [small horns on its head as a sheep has](#). But it spoke harshly [as](#) a dragon does.

Revelation 13:12

And...the...earth...those who live on it (ULT)
It rules people with power...the people who...live on...earth (UST)

Alternate translation: "everyone on the earth"

the one whose lethal wound had been healed (ULT)
that is, the beast that almost died but whose wound was healed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the one who had a lethal wound that healed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the...lethal...wound (ULT)
to do what the...that almost died...wound (UST)

This was an injury that was serious enough that it could have made him die. Alternate translation: "deadly wound"

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [of...beast](#)
- [beast](#)
- [earth](#)
- [will worship](#)
- [lethal](#)
- [had been healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It rules people with power](#)
- [beast](#)
- [beast](#)
- [earth](#)
- [to worship](#)
- [that almost died](#)
- [was healed](#)

ULT

¹² And it exercises all the [authority](#) of the first [beast](#) in its presence, and it makes it so that the [earth](#) and those who live on it [will worship](#) the first [beast](#) —the one whose [lethal](#) wound [had been healed](#).

UST

¹² [It rules people with power](#) in order to do what the first [beast](#) wants. It forces the people who live on the [earth to worship](#) the first [beast](#), that is, the beast [that almost died](#) but whose wound [was healed](#).

Revelation 13:13

it does (ULT)

did (UST)

Alternate translation: "the beast from the earth performed"

Translation Words - ULT

- great
- signs
- fire
- earth
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- awesome
- miracles
- fire
- to fall
- earth

ULT

¹³ And it does **great signs**, so that he might even cause **fire** to come down to the **earth** from **heaven** in front of mankind.

UST

¹³ The second beast also did **awesome miracles**, even causing **fire** from the sky **to fall** to **earth** while people watched.

Revelation 13:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- deceives...it
- earth
- earth (2)
- signs
- of...beast
- to...beast
- an image
- of...sword
- lived

Translation Words - UST

- miracles...doing
- was alive
- with a sword
- he deceived
- earth
- earth (2)
- so that they thought they should worship...first beast...to make an idol to represent
- second beast
- The...first beast

ULT

¹⁴ And it **deceives** those who live on the **earth** through the **signs** that **it** has been granted to do in the presence of the **beast**, telling those who live on the **earth** to make **an image** to the **beast** that has the wound of the **sword**, but **lived**.

UST

¹⁴ He did these **miracles** on behalf of the first beast. By **doing** that, **he** **deceived** the people on the **earth** so that they thought they should worship the **first beast**. But this happened only because God allowed it to happen. The **second beast** told the people living on **earth** to make an idol to represent the **first beast**, the one that **was alive**, even though someone had killed him **with a sword**.

Revelation 13:15

it was granted to him (ULT) God allowed...the (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God permitted the beast from the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to give breath to the image of the beast (ULT) second beast to breathe life into...the idol (UST)

Here, **breath** represents life. Alternate translation: "to give life to the beast's image" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to the image of the beast (ULT) second beast...the idol (UST)

This is **the image** of the first **beast** that had been mentioned.

might cause whoever would not worship the image of the beast to be killed (ULT) commanded that whoever refused to worship the idol should be killed (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "might put to death anyone who refused to worship the first beast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to...image
- image
- image (2)
- of...beast
- of...beast (2)
- of...beast (3)
- would...worship

Translation Words - UST

- second beast
- beast (2)
- should be killed (3)
- idol
- idol
- idol (2)
- to worship

ULT

¹⁵ And it was granted to him to give breath to the **image** of the **beast**, so that the **image** of the **beast** might even speak, and might cause whoever would not **worship** the **image** of the **beast** to be killed.

UST

¹⁵ God allowed the **second beast** to breathe life into that **idol** in order that the **idol** might speak. And the **beast** commanded that whoever refused **to worship** the **idol** **should be killed**.

Revelation 13:16

And it caused everyone (ULT)
The second beast also required that...
Everyone (UST)

Alternate translation: "And the beast from the earth also forced everyone"

Translation Words - ULT

- great
- free
- slave
- their right...hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- first beast's name
- first beast's name...right hand
- whether these were important people
- free
- slave

ULT

¹⁶ And it caused everyone, the small and the great and the rich and the poor and the free and the slave, so that they might give to them a mark on their right hand or on their forehead,

UST

¹⁶ The second beast also required that people should write the first beast's name on the right hand or on the forehead of everyone, whether these were important people or unimportant people, rich or poor, free or slave. Everyone!

Revelation 13:17

no one was able to buy or to sell except the one who has the mark—the name of the beast (ULT)

people could not buy anything or sell anything if they did not have the mark, that is, the name of the beast (UST)

The implicit information is that the beast from the earth commanded these things. If your readers would misunderstand this phrase, you can state this explicitly. Alternate translation: “he commanded that people could buy or sell things only if they had the mark of the beast” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁷ and so that no one was able to buy or to sell except the one who has the mark —the [name](#) of the [beast](#), or the number of its [name](#).

UST

¹⁷ The second beast required this so that people could not buy anything or sell anything if they did not have the mark, that is, the [name](#) of the [beast](#) or the number representing its [name](#).

the mark of the name of the beast

The **mark** indicated that the person who received it worshiped **the beast**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [of...name](#)
- [of...beast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [beast](#)

Revelation 13:18

General Information:

This verse is a break from John's account of his vision. Here he gives another warning to the people reading his account.

Here is wisdom (ULT)

Alternate translation: "Wisdom is needed" or "You need to be wise about this"

The one who has understanding, let him calculate (ULT)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **insight**, you can express it with the verb "understand." Alternate translation: "If anyone is able to understand things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

let him calculate the number of the beast (ULT)

Alternate translation: "he should discern what the number of the beast means" or "he should figure out what the number of the beast means"

the number...is...of a man (ULT)

The **number** could represent: (1) one person. (2) all of humanity.

Translation Words - ULT

- [wisdom](#)
- [understanding](#)
- [of...beast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wise](#), [wisdom](#)
- [beast](#)
- [understand](#), [understanding](#), [thinking](#)

ULT

18 Here is [wisdom](#): The one who has [understanding](#), let him calculate the number of the [beast](#). For it is the number of a man, and its number is 666.

13:1 ^[1] at the beginning of this verse, but the best manuscripts include it as 12:18.

UST

18 You must think wisely to understand the meaning of the mark. Anyone who thinks wisely should understand that the number represents mankind. It is 666.

Revelation 14

Revelation 14 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to gather ripe food from plants. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about him so those people can be part of God's kingdom. This chapter uses the metaphor of two harvests. Jesus gathers in his people from the whole earth. Then an angel gathers in wicked people whom God will punish. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [faith](#))

Revelation 14:1

General Information:

The word **I** refers to John.

Connecting Statement:

John begins to describe the next part of his vision. There are 144,000 believers standing before the Lamb.

the Lamb (ULT)

A lamb is a young sheep. Here, **the Lamb** it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

were} 144,000 (ULT)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:4](#). Alternate translation: “one hundred forty-four thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads (ULT)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “on whose foreheads the Lamb and his Father had written their names” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of his Father (ULT)

Father is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lamb](#)
- [Mount...Zion](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#) (2)
- [of...Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God the Father, heavenly Father, Father](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#) (2)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)

ULT

¹ And I looked and behold, the [Lamb](#) standing on [Mount Zion](#), and with him {were} 144,000 having his [name](#) and the [name](#) of his [Father](#) written on their foreheads.

UST

¹ But then I saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion in Jerusalem. With him were 144,000 people. He had written his name and his Father's name on their foreheads.

Revelation 14:2

a voice from heaven (ULT) a sound from heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: "a sound from heaven"

Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- a roar (2)
- the sound (3)
- voice
- heaven
- as
- as (2)
- like (3)
- of...waters
- harps

Translation Words - UST

- a sound
- the sound (2)
- thunder (3)
- sounded
- heaven
- many people playing on harps
- which was as loud as
- like (2)
- sounded (3)
- of a...waterfall

ULT

² And I heard a voice from heaven as a roar of many waters and as the sound of loud thunder, and the voice I heard was like harpists playing on their harps.

UST

² I heard a sound from heaven, which was as loud as the sound of a huge waterfall or mighty thunder. It also sounded like many people playing on harps.

Revelation 14:3

they sing a new song (ULT)

This phrase explains what the sound was that John heard in verse 2. Alternate translation: “that sound was a new song that they sang” or “the sound was the 144,000 people singing a new song”

the four living creatures (ULT)

See how you translated “living creature” in [Revelation 4:6](#)

the...elders (ULT)

Here, **the elders** refers to the twenty-four elders around the throne. See how you translated “elders” in [Revelation 4:4](#).

144,000 (ULT)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:4](#). Alternate translation: “one hundred forty-four thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [elders](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [creature, creation](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

ULT

³ And they sing a new song before the [throne](#) and before the four [living creatures](#) and the [elders](#), and no one was able to learn the song except the 144,000 who had been bought from the [earth](#).

UST

³ The 144,000 people were singing a new song while they stood in front of the throne, in front of the four living creatures, and in front of the elders. Only the 144,000 people, the ones whom the Lamb had redeemed from among the people on the earth, could learn that song. No one else could learn that song.

Revelation 14:4

have not defiled themselves with women (ULT)

This could mean: (1) they have never had immoral sexual relations with a woman. (2) they have never had sexual relations with a woman. Defiling oneself with women may be a symbol of worshipping idols.

virgins (ULT)

This could mean: (1) they did not have sexual relations with a woman who was not their wife. (2) they are virgins.

the ones who follow the Lamb wherever he goes (ULT)

Doing what the Lamb does is spoken of as following him. Alternate translation: "they do whatever the Lamb does" or "they obey the Lamb" (See: [Metaphor](#))

have been redeemed from among mankind as firstfruits (ULT)

Here, **firstfruits** is a metaphor for the first offering to be made to God in celebration of harvest. Alternate translation: "have been purchased out of the midst of the rest of mankind as a special celebration of salvation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have...defiled themselves](#)
- [virgins](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [for...Lamb](#) (2)
- [have been redeemed](#)
- [as firstfruits](#)
- [for God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#) (2)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [defile, defiled, desecrate](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [virgin, virginity](#)

ULT

⁴ These are the ones that have not [defiled themselves](#) with women, for they are [virgins](#). These are the ones who follow the [Lamb](#) wherever he goes. These [have been redeemed](#) from among mankind [as firstfruits for God](#) and for the [Lamb](#),

UST

⁴ Those 144,000 are the people who are spiritually pure, like virgins are morally pure. They have not made themselves impure by worshipping any false god. They are the ones who accompany Jesus, the one who is like a lamb, wherever he goes. They represent all those whom he has redeemed for God from among the people of earth, in order that he might offer them to God and to the lamb.

Revelation 14:5

no lie was found in their mouth (ULT)
never lied when they spoke (UST)

Here, **their mouth** refers to “what they said.” Alternate translation: “they never lied when they spoke” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blameless](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and they never acted immorally](#)

ULT

⁵ and no lie was found in their mouth,
 for they are [blameless](#). ^[1]

UST

⁵ These people never lied when they
 spoke, [and they never acted immorally](#).

Revelation 14:6

Connecting Statement:

John begins to describe the next part of his vision. This is the first of three angels who proclaim judgment on the earth.

every nation, tribe, language, and people

This means that people from every ethnic group are included. See how you translated a similar list in [Revelation 5:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- eternal
- the...gospel
- earth
- nation
- tribe
- tongue
- people

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- bringing God's...good news
- eternal
- earth
- nation
- to every tribe
- to speakers of every language
- to every people group

ULT

⁶ And I saw another angel flying in midair, having the eternal gospel to proclaim to those who live on the earth—even to every nation and tribe and tongue and people—

UST

⁶ Then I saw another angel flying between the sky and heaven. He was bringing God's eternal good news to earth in order that he might proclaim it to people who live on the earth. He will proclaim it to every nation, to every tribe, to speakers of every language, and to every people group.

Revelation 14:7

the hour of his judgment has come (ULT)
it is now time for him to judge everyone (UST)

Here, **the hour** represents the time that has been chosen for something, and the hour having **come** is a metaphor for now being the chosen time. Alternate translation: "now is the time that God has chosen for judgment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the hour of his judgment has come (ULT)
it is now time for him to judge everyone (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **judgment**, you can express it with a verb. Alternate translation: "it is now the time for God to judge people" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...voice
- Fear
- of water
- God
- glory
- hour
- of...judgment
- worship
- heaven
- earth
- the springs

Translation Words - UST

- a...voice
- Honor
- of water
- God
- praise him
- time for
- him to judge
- Worship
- heaven
- earth
- the springs

ULT

⁷ saying in a loud [voice](#), "[Fear God](#) and give him [glory](#), because the [hour](#) of his [judgment](#) has come. And [worship](#) the one who made the [heaven](#) and the [earth](#) and the sea and [the springs of water](#)."

UST

⁷ He said in a loud [voice](#), "[Honor God](#) and [praise him](#) because it is now [time for him to judge](#) everyone! [Worship](#) him because he is the one who created the [heaven](#), the [earth](#), the ocean, and [the springs of water](#)."

Revelation 14:8

Fallen, fallen {is} Babylon the great (ULT) **The very evil city of Babylon is now completely destroyed (UST)**

The angel speaks of **Babylon** having been destroyed as if it had **fallen**. Alternate translation: "Babylon the great has been destroyed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

is} Babylon the great (ULT) **The very evil city of Babylon (UST)**

This was probably a symbol for the city of Rome, which was large, wealthy, and sinful. Alternate translation: "Babylon the large city" or "the important city of Babylon" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

who...caused all the nations to drink (ULT) **Babylon...all the nations...to drink (UST)**

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a person, instead of a city filled with people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

who caused all the nations to drink from the wine of her immoral passion (ULT)

Babylon made people of all the nations engage with her in the passion of sexual immorality. Babylon is like someone who gives another person too much wine to drink (UST)

Here, **to drink from the wine** is a symbol for participating in her sexually **immoral passion**. Alternate translation: "to be sexually immoral like her" or "to get drunk like her in sexual sin" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

of her immoral passion (ULT) **made people...engage with her in the passion of sexual immorality (UST)**

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along with her. (See: [Personification](#))

of her immoral passion (ULT) **made people...engage with her in the passion of sexual immorality (UST)**

Here, **immoral passion** may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is} Babylon](#)
- [nations](#)
- [wine](#)
- [immoral](#)

ULT

⁸ And another {angel}—a second—followed, saying, "Fallen, fallen {is} [Babylon](#) the great, who caused all the [nations](#) to drink from the [wine](#) of her [immoral](#) passion."

UST

⁸ Another angel, a second one, came after him saying, "The very evil [city of Babylon](#) is now completely destroyed! Babylon made people of all the [nations](#) [engage](#) with her in the passion of [sexual immorality](#). [Babylon is like someone who gives another person too much wine](#) to drink!"

Translation Words - UST

- city of Babylon
- nations
- engage...of sexual immorality
- Babylon is like someone who gives another person too much wine

Revelation 14:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- a...voice
- worships
- beast
- image
- receives
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- a...voice
- worship
- beast
- image
- allow
- hands

ULT

⁹ And another **angel**—a third—followed them, saying in a loud **voice**, “If anyone **worships** the **beast** and his **image** and **receives** a mark on his forehead or on his **hand**,

UST

⁹ Another **angel**, a third one, came afterward, saying in a loud **voice**, “If people **worship** the **beast** and its **image** or **allow** its mark to be put on their foreheads or on their **hands**,

Revelation 14:10

he will also drink from the wine of the wrath of God (ULT)

God will be angry with them and his anger will be like strong wine that he will make them drink (UST)

Here, **to drink from the wine of the wrath of God** is a symbol for being punished by God. Alternate translation: “will also drink some of the wine that represents God’s wrath” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

that has been poured undiluted (ULT)
his anger (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “that God has poured full strength” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that has been poured undiluted (ULT)
his anger (UST)

This means that the wine has no water mixed into it. It is strong, and a person who drinks much of it will get very drunk. As a symbol, it means that God will be extremely angry, not just a little angry. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the cup of his anger (ULT)
his anger...He (UST)

This symbolic **cup** holds the wine that represents God’s **anger**. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine](#)
- [of...wrath](#)
- [of...anger](#)
- [of God](#)
- [he will be tormented](#)
- [fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [holy](#)
- [the...angels](#)
- [Lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his anger](#)
- [his anger](#)
- [his anger](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [be...will be like strong wine that he will make them](#)

ULT

¹⁰ he will also drink from the [wine](#) of the [wrath of God](#) that has been poured undiluted into the cup of his [anger](#), and [he will be tormented](#) with [fire](#) and [sulfur](#) before the [holy angels](#) and before the [Lamb](#).

UST

¹⁰ God will be angry with them and [his anger will be like strong wine that he will make them](#) drink. He [will torment them](#) in [burning sulfur](#) in the presence of [his holy angels](#) and in the presence of the [Lamb](#).

- will torment them
- burning
- sulfur
- his...angels
- holy

Revelation 14:11

the smoke of their torment (ULT)

The...smoke from the fire that torments them (UST)

The phrase **their torment** refers to the fire that torments them.
Alternate translation: “the smoke from the fire that torments them”
(See: [Metonymy](#))

they have no rest (ULT)

torment them continually (UST)

Alternate translation: “they have no relief” or “the torment does not stop”

Translation Words - ULT

- of...torment
- forever
- and} ever
- day
- who worship
- beast
- image
- receives
- of...name

Translation Words - UST

- torments
- forever
- forever
- day
- worship
- beast
- image
- allow
- name

ULT

¹¹ And the smoke of their [torment](#) goes up [forever](#) {and} [ever](#), and they have no rest [day](#) and night—the ones [who](#) [worship](#) the [beast](#) and his [image](#), and whoever [receives](#) the mark of his [name](#).

UST

¹¹ The smoke from the fire that [torments](#) them will rise [forever](#). God will torment them continually, [day](#) and night. This is what will happen to the people who [worship](#) the [beast](#) and its [image](#) or who [allow](#) its [name](#) to be written on them.”

Revelation 14:12

Here is the endurance of the saints (ULT)
So God's people, those who obey what (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 13:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- endurance
- of...saints
- who keep
- commandments
- of God
- faith
- of Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- God's people
- those who obey what
- God
- commands
- who trust
- in Jesus
- must faithfully continue obeying and trusting him

ULT

¹² Here is the [endurance](#) of the [saints](#), those [who keep](#) the [commandments of God](#) and the [faith of Jesus](#)."

UST

¹² So God's people, those who obey what God commands and who trust in Jesus, must faithfully continue obeying and trusting him.

Revelation 14:13

the dead who die

Alternate translation: "those who die"

the...who die...in the Lord (ULT) are those who...in union with the Lord...after they die (UST)

This may refer to believers who are killed by their enemies. Alternate translation: "who are united to the Lord and die" or "who die because they are united to the Lord"

deeds...their...deeds...follow with them (ULT) Instead...they...everyone will know the good things that they (UST)

These **deeds** are spoken of as if they were alive and able to **follow** those who did them. This could mean: (1) others will know the good deeds these people have done. (2) God will reward them for their deeds. (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

13 And I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Write: Blessed {are} the dead who die in the Lord from now on." "Yes," says the Spirit, "so that they will rest from their labors, for their deeds follow with them."

UST

13 Then I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Write this: How fortunate from now on are those who die in union with the Lord." God's Spirit says, "Yes, after they die, they will no longer have to endure suffering. Instead, they will rest, and everyone will know the good things that they have done."

Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- heaven
- deeds
- Blessed {are}
- dead
- who die
- in the Lord
- the Lord
- Spirit
- labors

Translation Words - UST

- a voice
- heaven
- have done
- How fortunate
- die
- after they die
- in union with the Lord
- the Lord
- God's Spirit
- the good things that

Revelation 14:14

Connecting Statement:

John begins to describe the next part of his vision. This part is about the Son of Man harvesting the earth. Harvesting the grain is a symbol of God's judging people. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

was one} like a son of man (ULT) **who looked like the Son of Man (UST)**

Here, the expression **a son of man** describes a human figure, someone who looks human. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:13](#). (See: [Simile](#))

a sharp sickle (ULT) **a sharp sickle (UST)**

A **sickle** is a tool with a curved blade used for cutting grass, grain, and vines (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was one} like](#)
- [a son of man](#)
- [golden](#)
- [a...crown](#)
- [head](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who looked like](#)
- [the Son of Man](#)
- [golden](#)
- [a...crown](#)
- [head](#)
- [hand he held](#)

ULT

14 And I looked, and behold, a white cloud, and seated on the cloud {[was one} like a son of man](#), having a [golden crown](#) on his [head](#) and a sharp sickle in his [hand](#).

UST

14 Then I saw another surprising thing. It was a white cloud, and on the cloud someone was sitting [who looked like the Son of Man](#). He was wearing a [golden crown](#) on his [head](#). In his [hand](#) [he held](#) a sharp sickle.

Revelation 14:15

came out of the temple (ULT)

came out of the temple in heaven (UST)

Alternate translation: "came out of the heavenly temple"

the time to reap has come (ULT)

time...has come...reap the grain (UST)

Existing in the present is spoken of as having **come**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- temple
- crying out
- a...voice
- reap
- to reap
- harvest
- time
- of...earth

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- temple in heaven
- a...voice
- he said
- time
- reap the grain
- reap the grain
- grain
- earth

ULT

¹⁵ And another [angel](#) came out of the [temple](#), [crying out](#) in a loud [voice](#) to the one sitting on the cloud: "Send out your sickle and [reap](#), because the [time to reap](#) has come, since the [harvest](#) of the [earth](#) has ripened."

UST

¹⁵ Still another [angel](#) came out of the [temple in heaven](#). In a loud [voice](#), [he said](#) to the one who was sitting on the cloud, "The [time](#) has come to [reap the grain](#) on the [earth](#), so with your sickle [reap the grain](#) because the [grain](#) is ripe."

Revelation 14:16

the earth was harvested (ULT)
he harvested the earth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "he harvested the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [earth](#)
- [was harvested](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [earth](#)
- [he harvested](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the [earth](#), and the [earth was harvested](#).

UST

¹⁶ Then the one who was sitting on the cloud swung his sickle over the [earth](#), and [he harvested](#) the [earth](#).

Revelation 14:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- temple
- heaven

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- sanctuary
- heaven

ULT

¹⁷ And another angel came out from the temple that {is} in heaven, he himself also having a sharp sickle.

UST

¹⁷ Another angel came out of the sanctuary in heaven. He also held a sharp sickle.

Revelation 14:18

**the one who had authority over...fire...the
(ULT)**

**the...came...He is the one who takes care of...
fire of the altar (UST)**

Here, **authority over** refers to responsibility to tend **the fire**.

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- authority
- fire
- altar
- he shouted
- in a...voice
- of...vines
- of...earth
- grapes

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- angel
- He is the one who takes care of
- fire of the altar
- He
- in a...voice
- vineyards
- earth
- grapes

ULT

¹⁸ And another **angel**, the one who had **authority** over the **fire**, {came} from the **altar**, and **he shouted in a** loud **voice** to the one who has the sharp sickle, saying, "Send out your sharp sickle and gather in the clusters of grapes of the **vines** of the **earth**, since their **grapes** have ripened."

UST

¹⁸ From the **altar** came still another **angel**. **He is the one who takes care of** the **fire of the altar**. **He** said **in a** loud **voice** to the angel who held the sickle, "With your sickle cut off the clusters of grapes in the **vineyards** on the **earth**! Then gather the clusters of grapes together because its **grapes** are ripe!"

Revelation 14:19

the great wine vat of God's wrath

Alternate translation: "the large wine vat where God will show his wrath"

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- earth
- of...earth
- grapevine
- winepress
- of...wrath
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- earth
- the grapes
- the grapes
- place where
- God
- will angrily punish

ULT

¹⁹ And the [angel](#) swung his sickle to the [earth](#) and harvested the [grapevine](#) of the [earth](#), and he threw it into the great [winepress](#) of the [wrath of God](#).

UST

¹⁹ So the [angel](#) swung his sickle on the [earth](#). Then he threw [the grapes](#) into the huge [place where God will angrily punish](#).

Revelation 14:20

winepress (ULT)

winepress (UST)

This is “the great winepress” of [Revelation 14:19](#).

up to the height of a horse’s bridle

Alternate translation: “as high as the bridle in a horse’s mouth”

the bridles (ULT)

the bridles (UST)

A **bridle** is device made of leather straps that goes around a horse’s head and is used for directing the horse.

1, 600 stadia (ULT)

three hundred kilometers (UST)

Alternate translation: “one thousand six hundred stadia” or “sixteen hundred stadia” (See: [Numbers](#))

1, 600 stadia (ULT)

three hundred kilometers (UST)

A “stadium” is 185 meters. The plural form of “stradium” is **stadia**. In modern measures this would be about “300 kilometers” or “200 miles.” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [winepress](#)
- [winepress](#)
- [blood](#)
- [of...horses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [winepress](#)
- [grapes](#)
- [blood](#)
- [horses](#)

ULT

²⁰ And the [winepress](#) was trampled outside the city, and [blood](#) poured out from the [winepress](#) up to the bridles of the [horses](#), for 1, 600 stadia.

14:5 ^[1]

UST

²⁰ God trampled the [grapes](#) in the [winepress](#) outside the city, and [blood](#) came out! The blood flowed in a stream so deep that it reached up to the bridles of the [horses](#) and extended for three hundred kilometers.

Revelation 15

Revelation 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, John describes events and pictures that occur in heaven.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 3-4.

Special concepts in this chapter

“Victorious over the beast”

These people are spiritually victorious. While most spiritual battles cannot be seen, the Book of Revelation pictures spiritual battles as openly occurring. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

“The temple having the tent of witness, was open in heaven”

Scripture elsewhere indicates the earthly temple copied God’s perfect dwelling place in heaven. Here John seems to refer to God’s heavenly dwelling place or temple. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Songs

The Book of Revelation often describes heaven as a place where people sing. They worship God with songs. This illustrates that heaven is a place where God is always worshiped.

Revelation 15:1

General Information:

This verse is a summary of what will happen in 15:6-16:21.

great and marvelous (ULT) They were huge and amazing (UST)

The words **great** and **marvelous** have similar meanings and are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “something that greatly amazed me” (See: [Doublet](#))

seven angels with seven plagues

Alternate translation: “seven angels who had authority to send seven plagues on the earth”

the final {ones} (ULT) This is the last time (UST)

Alternate translation: “and after them, there will not be any more plagues”

because with them the wrath of God will be completed (ULT) in...that God will punish people this way, for it will fully show how angry he is (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “for these plagues will complete the wrath of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because with them the wrath of God will be completed (ULT) in...that God will punish people this way, for it will fully show how angry he is (UST)

This could mean: (1) these plagues will show all of God’s anger. (2) after these plagues, God will no longer be angry.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [angels](#)
- [plagues](#)
- [wrath](#)
- [of God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [very unusual](#) [appeared](#)
- [sky](#)
- [angels](#)

ULT

¹ And I saw another great and marvelous [sign](#) in [heaven](#): seven [angels](#) having seven [plagues](#)—the final {ones}, because with them the [wrath of God](#) will be completed.

UST

¹ Something else [very unusual](#) [appeared](#) in the [sky](#). I saw seven [angels](#). They were huge and amazing. It was their duty to punish rebellious people in seven [different ways](#). This is the last time [that God will punish people this way](#), for it will fully show how [angry he is](#).

- different ways
- that God will punish people this way
- angry he is

Revelation 15:2

General Information:

Here John begins to describe his vision of the people who had been victorious over the beast and who are praising God.

a sea of glass (ULT) an ocean that looked as though it was made of glass (UST)

You can state explicitly how it was like **glass** or **a sea**. This could mean: (1) a sea is spoken of as if it were glass. Alternate translation: “a sea that was as smooth as glass” (2) glass if spoken of as if it were a sea. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:6](#). Alternate translation: “glass that was spread out like a sea” (See: [Metaphor](#))

those who are victorious over the beast and over his image (ULT) the people who had overcome the beast by not worshipping it or its image (UST)

You can state explicitly how they were **victorious**. Alternate translation: “who had been victorious over the beast and his image by not worshipping them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

over the number of his name (ULT) with the number that represents the beast’s name (UST)

You can state explicitly how they were victorious over **the number**. Alternate translation: “over the number representing his name by not being marked with that number” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the number representing his name

This refers to **the number** described in [Revelation 13:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- something} like
- with fire
- beast
- image
- of...name
- harps
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- what looked like
- fire

ULT

² Then I saw {something} like a sea of glass having been mixed with fire. And those who are victorious over the beast and over his image and over the number of his name, standing on the sea of glass, holding harps of God.

UST

² I saw what looked like an ocean that looked as though it was made of glass and mixed with fire. I also saw the people who had overcome the beast by not worshipping it or its image, and by not allowing its servant to mark them with the number that represents the beast’s name. They were standing by the ocean (that was as clear as glass), and they were holding the harps that God gave them.

- [beast](#)
- [image](#)
- [that represents the beast's name](#)
- [the harps](#)
- [God](#)

Revelation 15:3

they sing (ULT)

They were singing (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who had been victorious over the beast were singing"

Translation Words - ULT

- of Moses
- servant
- true
- O King
- of...Ages
- of God
- God
- of...Lamb
- marvelous
- are...deeds
- O Lord
- Almighty
- Righteous

Translation Words - UST

- God's servant Moses sang long ago
- God's servant Moses sang long ago
- truthfully...are
- king...over all
- forever
- God's servant Moses sang long ago
- God
- Lamb
- Lord
- rules over everything
- marvelous
- always act
- righteously

ULT

³ And they sing the song of Moses, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying, "Great and marvelous {are} your deeds, O Lord God Almighty. Righteous and true {are} your ways, O King of the Ages. ^[1]"

UST

³ They were singing a song like God's servant Moses sang long ago. They sang this to praise the Lamb in this way: "Lord God, who rules over everything, whatever you do is powerful and marvelous! You always act righteously and truthfully. You are king forever over all the groups of people!"

Revelation 15:4

**Who will not fear, O Lord, and glorify your name, because {you} alone {are} holy (ULT)
O Lord, everyone will fear you and honor you because you alone are holy (UST)**

This question is used to show their amazement at how great and glorious the Lord is. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you can express it as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "Lord, everyone will fear you and glorify your name because you are holy!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**glorify your name (ULT)
honor you (UST)**

The phrase **your name** refers to God. Alternate translation: "glorify you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**your righteous deeds have been revealed (ULT)
you have shown that you have judged everyone in the right way (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "you have made everyone know about your righteous deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will...fear
- O Lord
- glorify
- name
- are} holy
- nations
- worship
- righteous deeds
- have been revealed

Translation Words - UST

- O Lord
- fear you
- honor
- you
- are holy
- people
- bow down
- have shown that you have judged everyone in
- right way

ULT

⁴ Who will not [fear](#), [O Lord](#), and [glorify](#) your [name](#), because {you} alone {[are](#)} [holy](#)? For all the [nations](#) will come and [worship](#) before you, because your [righteous deeds have been revealed](#)."

UST

⁴ [O Lord](#), everyone will [fear you](#) and [honor you](#) because you alone [are holy](#). All kinds of [people](#) will come and [bow down](#) before you because you [have shown that you have judged everyone in the right way](#)."

Revelation 15:5

Connecting Statement:

The seven angels with the seven plagues come out of the most holy place. They were spoken of previously in [Revelation 15:1](#).

after these things (ULT)

After...this (UST)

Alternate translation: "after the people finished singing"

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [of...tabernacle](#)
- [of...testimony](#)
- [heaven](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [sacred tent was](#)
- [sacred tent was](#)

ULT

⁵ And after these things I looked, and the [temple](#) of the [tabernacle](#) of the [testimony](#) in [heaven](#) had been opened.

UST

⁵ After this I saw that the [temple](#) in [heaven](#) was open, where the [sacred tent was](#).

Revelation 15:6

the seven angels holding the seven plagues

These **seven angels** were seen as **holding seven plagues** because in [Revelation 17:7](#) they are given seven bowls full of the wrath of God.

linen (ULT)

linen (UST)

Linen is a fine, expensive cloth made from flax.

with golden sashes (ULT)

garments...gold (UST)

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth worn on the upper body.

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- plagues
- temple
- having been clothed with
- pure
- golden
- having been wrapped

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- in...different ways
- very holy place
- were dressed in
- clean
- they wore...bands
- gold

ULT

⁶ And the seven [angels](#) holding the seven [plagues](#) came out from the [temple](#), [having been clothed with pure](#), bright linen and with [golden](#) sashes [having been wrapped](#) around {their} chests.

UST

⁶ The seven [angels](#) whose duty it was to punish rebellious people in seven [different ways](#) came out of the [very holy place](#). The angels [were dressed in clean](#), white linen garments; [they wore gold bands](#) around their chests.

Revelation 15:7

the four living creatures (ULT)

the four living creatures (UST)

See how you translated **living creatures** in [Revelation 4:6](#)

seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God (ULT)

a golden bowl filled with wine. The wine symbolized that God...was very angry with the people who had rebelled against him and was going to punish them (UST)

The word **wrath** here refers to punishment. Alternate translation: "seven gold bowls full of something that represents the wrath of God" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creatures](#)
- [to...angels](#)
- [golden](#)
- [of...wrath](#)
- [of God](#)
- [who lives](#)
- [forever](#)
- [and} ever](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [living creatures](#)
- [angels](#)
- [golden](#)
- [that God](#)
- [lives](#)
- [forever](#)
- [forever](#)
- [was very angry with the people who had rebelled against him and was going to punish them](#)

ULT

⁷ And one of the four [living creatures](#) gave to the seven [angels](#) seven [golden](#) bowls full of the [wrath of God, who lives forever {and} ever](#).

UST

⁷ One of the four [living creatures](#) gave each of the seven [angels](#) a [golden](#) bowl filled with wine. The wine symbolized [that God, who lives forever, was very angry with the people who had rebelled against him and was going to punish them](#).

Revelation 15:8

until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed (ULT)

until the seven angels finished punishing the people of the earth in seven different ways (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “until the seven angels finished sending the seven plagues to the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- temple
- glory
- of God
- power
- plagues
- of...angels

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- temple
- glorious
- all-powerful
- God
- angels
- different ways

ULT

⁸ And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power, and no one was able to enter into the temple until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed. 15:3 ^[1] instead of

UST

⁸ The temple was filled with smoke that symbolized the presence of the glorious and all-powerful God. No one was able to enter the temple until the seven angels finished punishing the people of the earth in seven different ways.

Revelation 16

Revelation 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the vision of chapter 15. Together they give the seven plagues that complete the wrath of God. (See: [wrath, fury](#))

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 5-7.

Special concepts in this chapter

“I heard a loud voice call out of the temple”

This is the same temple that was mentioned in chapter 15.

Seven bowls of God’s wrath

This chapter reveals severe judgments. They are pictured as angels pouring out seven bowls of God’s wrath. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The tone of this chapter is meant to astonish the reader. Translations should not minimize the vivid language expressed in this chapter.

Armageddon

This is a Hebrew word. It is the name of a place. John used the sounds of the Hebrew word and wrote them with Greek letters. Translators are encouraged to transliterate it using the letters of the target language. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Revelation 16:1

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the part of the vision about the seven angels with the seven plagues. The seven plagues are the seven bowls of God's wrath.

I heard (ULT)

I heard someone (UST)

Here, **I** refers to John.

bowls of the wrath of God (ULT)

bowls...the wine in the seven bowls. This will make the people suffer because God is angry with them (UST)

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 15:7](#). Alternate translation: "bowls full of something that represents God's wrath" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...voice
- temple
- to...angels
- of...wrath
- of God
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- a...voice
- angels who had
- earth
- the wine in the seven bowls. This will make the people suffer because God is
- angry with them

ULT

¹ And I heard a loud **voice** from the **temple** saying to the seven **angels**, "Go and pour out the seven bowls of the **wrath of God** onto the **earth**."

UST

¹ In the vision I heard someone in the **temple** speak in a loud **voice** to the **angels who had** the seven bowls. He said, "Go from here and pour out on the **earth the wine in the seven bowls. This will make the people suffer because God is angry with them.**"

Revelation 16:2

poured out his bowl (ULT)
poured out...what was contained in his bowl (UST)

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. Alternate translation: “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

So...an ugly...painful sore (ULT)
So...horrible...painful sores (UST)

These could be infections from diseases or injuries that have not healed.

the mark of the beast (ULT)
the beast’s servants to write the beast’s name on them (UST)

The **mark of the beast** was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast. See how you translated this in [Revelation 13:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#)
- [of...beast](#)
- [who worship](#)
- [image](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [beast’s name on them](#)
- [had worshiped](#)
- [beast’s image](#)

ULT

² So the first {angel} went and poured out his bowl on the [earth](#), and an ugly and painful sore happened on the men who have the mark of the [beast](#) and those [who worship](#) its [image](#).

UST

² So the first angel went and poured out on the [earth](#) what was contained in his bowl. As a result, horrible and painful sores broke out on the people who had allowed the beast’s servants to write the [beast’s name on them](#), those who [had worshiped](#) the [beast’s image](#).

Revelation 16:3

poured out his bowl (ULT)

poured out...what was contained in his bowl.

When he poured out his bowl (UST)

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). Alternate translation: “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sea (ULT)

the ocean (UST)

Here, **the sea** refers to all the salt water lakes and oceans. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- as
- of a dead {person}
- died
- living thing

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- but not living blood. It was like
- the blood of a dead man
- died
- that lived

ULT

³ And the second {angel} poured out his bowl into the sea, and it became [blood](#), [as of a dead {person}](#), and every [living thing](#) in the sea [died](#).

UST

³ Then the second angel poured out upon the ocean what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl, the water changed its appearance, and it turned into [blood](#), [but not living blood](#). [It was like the blood of a dead man](#), and every creature [that lived](#) in the ocean [died](#).

Revelation 16:4

poured out his bowl (ULT)
poured out upon the...what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl (UST)

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). Alternate translation: “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the rivers and the springs of water (ULT)
rivers...and water springs (UST)

This refers to all bodies of fresh **water**. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [springs](#)
- [of water](#)
- [blood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [water](#)
- [springs](#)
- [blood](#)

ULT

⁴ And the third {angel} poured out his bowl into the rivers and the [springs of water](#), and it became [blood](#).

UST

⁴ Then the third angel poured out upon the rivers and [water springs](#) what was contained in his bowl. When he poured out his bowl, the water in the rivers and springs turned into [blood](#).

Revelation 16:5

the angel of the waters (ULT) the angel who has power over the waters (UST)

This could refer to: (1) the third **angel** who was in charge of pouring out God's wrath on the rivers and springs of water. (2) another **angel** who was in charge of all the waters.

You are righteous (ULT) O God...fair (UST)

Here, **You** refers to God. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the one who is and who was

See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 1:4](#). Alternate translation: "God who is and who was"

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- of...waters
- righteous
- Holy One
- you have judged

Translation Words - UST

- angel who has power over
- waters
- You are the holy one
- You are a...judge of people
- fair

ULT

⁵ And I heard the [angel](#) of the [waters](#) saying, "You are [righteous](#)—the one who is and who was, the [Holy One](#)—because [you have judged](#) these things. ^[1]

UST

⁵ I heard the [angel who has power over the waters](#) say to God, "O God, you exist and have always existed. [You are the holy one. You are a fair judge of people.](#)

Revelation 16:6

**they poured out the blood of the saints and prophets (ULT)
murdered your holy people and the prophets...you are just in punishing them (UST)**

Here, **poured out the blood** means they killed them. Alternate translation: "they murdered God's holy people and the prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the blood...and...you have...given them...to drink (ULT)
murdered...and...by giving them...to drink (UST)**

God will make the evil people **drink** the waters that he turned to **blood**.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the blood](#)
- [blood](#) (2)
- [of the saints](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [what they deserve](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [murdered](#)
- [blood](#) (2)
- [your holy people](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [what they deserve](#)

ULT

⁶ Because they poured out [the blood of the saints](#) and [prophets](#), you have also given them [blood](#) to drink; it is [what they deserve](#)."

UST

⁶ The people who rebelled against you [murdered your holy people](#) and [the prophets](#). So you are just in punishing them by giving them [blood](#) to drink. This is [what they deserve](#)."

Revelation 16:7

I heard the altar saying (ULT)

I heard someone at the altar answer (UST)

Here, **altar** here refers perhaps to someone at the altar. "I heard someone at the altar reply" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- O Lord
- God
- Almighty
- judgments
- are} true
- righteous

Translation Words - UST

- someone at the altar
- Lord
- God
- you who rule over everything
- punish people
- rightly and justly
- rightly and justly

ULT

⁷ And I heard the altar saying, "Yes, O Lord God Almighty, your judgments {are} true and righteous."

UST

⁷ Then I heard someone at the altar answer, "Yes, Lord God, you who rule over everything, you punish people rightly and justly."

Revelation 16:8

poured out his bowl (ULT)
out on the...what was contained in his bowl (UST)

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). Alternate translation: “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

it was granted to it to scorch men (ULT)
He...was given permission...to make the sun so hot that it would scorch people (UST)

John speaks about the sun as if it were a person. (See: [Personification](#))

it was granted to it to scorch men (ULT)
He...was given permission...to make the sun so hot that it would scorch people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “and caused the sun to severely burn the people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fire](#)

ULT

⁸ And the fourth {angel} poured out his bowl on the sun and it was granted to it to scorch men with [fire](#).

UST

⁸ Then the fourth angel poured out on the sun what was contained in his bowl. He was given permission to make the sun so hot that it would scorch people with [fire](#).

Revelation 16:9

men were scorched by the great heat (ULT)
the people were severely burned (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the extreme heat burned them badly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they blasphemed the name of God (ULT)
they said evil things about God (UST)

Here, **the name of God** represents God. Alternate translation: "they blasphemed God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the name of God who has the authority over these plagues (ULT)
God because he had the power to make them suffer in these ways (UST)

This phrase reminds readers of something they already know about **God**. It helps to explain why the people were blaspheming God. Alternate translation: "God because he has the power over these plagues" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

the authority over these plagues (ULT)
the power to make them suffer in these ways (UST)

This refers to the power to inflict **these plague** on people, and the power to stop the plagues. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they blasphemed
- name
- of God
- authority
- plagues
- they did...repent
- glory

Translation Words - UST

- they said evil things about
- God
- God
- power
- to make them suffer
- to turn away from their evil behavior
- and refused to praise him

ULT

⁹ And men were scorched by the great heat, and [they blasphemed](#) the [name of God](#) who has the [authority](#) over these [plagues](#), but [they did](#) not [repent](#) to give him [glory](#).

UST

⁹ So the people were severely burned, and [they said evil things about God](#) because he had the [power to make them suffer](#) in these ways. But they still refused [to turn away from their evil behavior](#) and refused to praise him.

Revelation 16:10

poured out his bowl (ULT)
poured out...what was contained in his bowl (UST)

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). Alternate translation: “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the throne of the beast (ULT)
the throne of the beast (UST)

The **throne of the beast** is where the beast reigns from. It may refer to the capital city of his kingdom. (See: [Metonymy](#))

its kingdom became darkened (ULT)
it...became...dark where the beast ruled (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the contents of the bowl made the kingdom of the beast dark” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they chewed on (ULT)
So the beast and the people whom the beast ruled were biting their (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the people in the beast’s kingdom.

Translation Words - ULT

- throne
- of...beast
- kingdom
- darkened
- tongues

Translation Words - UST

- throne
- beast
- dark
- where...beast ruled
- tongues

ULT

¹⁰ And the fifth {angel} poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and its kingdom became darkened, and they chewed on their tongues because of the pain.

UST

¹⁰ When the fifth angel poured out on the throne of the beast what was contained in his bowl, it became dark where the beast ruled. So the beast and the people whom the beast ruled were biting their tongues because they were suffering intense pain.

Revelation 16:11

they blasphemed (ULT)

They insulted (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the people in the beast's kingdom.

Translation Words - ULT

- they blasphemed
- God
- of heaven
- they did...repent
- deeds

Translation Words - UST

- They insulted
- God
- heaven
- to stop doing
- evil things that...were doing

ULT

¹¹ And **they blasphemed** the **God of heaven** because of their pain and because of their sores, but **they did** not **repent** of their **deeds**.

UST

¹¹ **They insulted God** who rules in **heaven** because their sores were so painful. But they refused **to stop doing** the **evil things that** they **were doing**.

Revelation 16:12

poured out his bowl (ULT) **poured out...what was contained in his bowl (UST)**

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). Alternate translation: “poured out God’s wrath from his bowl” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Euphrates, and its water was dried up (ULT) **Euphrates...The...water...the...river...dried up... it (UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. You can also make it into two sentences. Alternate translation: “the Euphrates, and caused its water to dry up” or “the Euphrates. Its water dried up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Euphrates](#)
- [water](#)
- [of...kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Euphrates...The...river](#)
- [water](#)
- [rulers](#)

ULT

¹² And the sixth {angel} poured out his bowl into the great river, the [Euphrates](#), and its [water](#) was dried up so that the way of the [kings](#) from the rising of the sun might be prepared.

UST

¹² Then the sixth angel poured out on the [Euphrates](#) River what was contained in his bowl. The [water](#) in the [river](#) dried up so that the [rulers](#) from the eastern countries could cross it with their armies.

Revelation 16:13

like frogs (ULT)

looked like frogs (UST)

A frog is a small animal that lives near water. Jews considered them unclean animals.

of the dragon (ULT)

of the dragon (UST)

A **dragon** is a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. The dragon is also identified in verse 9 as "the devil or Satan." See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:3](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...beast
- of...false prophet
- three unclean spirits
- unclean
- like

Translation Words - UST

- evil spirits that...One came...one...one
- evil...that
- looked like
- beast
- false prophet

ULT

¹³ And I saw {coming} from the mouth of the dragon and from the mouth of the **beast** and from the mouth of the **false prophet** three unclean spirits like frogs,

UST

¹³ Then I saw evil spirits that looked like frogs. One came out of the mouth of the dragon, one from the mouth of the **beast**, and one from the mouth of the **false prophet**.

Revelation 16:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- spirits
- of demons
- signs
- kings
- of...world
- to gather...together
- on...day
- of God
- Almighty

Translation Words - UST

- spirits
- were demons
- miracles
- rulers
- world
- in order to gather...armies
- important day when...punishes his enemies
- Almighty
- God

ULT

¹⁴ for they are **spirits of demons** performing **signs**, who go out to the **kings** of the whole **world to gather** them **together** for the battle on the great **day** of God Almighty.

UST

¹⁴ Those **spirits were demons** who were able to perform **miracles**. They went out to the **rulers** of the whole **world in order to gather** their **armies**. This is so that they will fight on the **important day when Almighty God punishes his enemies**.

Revelation 16:15

General Information:

Verse 15 is a break from the main story line of John's vision. These are words spoken by Jesus. The story line continues in verse 16.

Behold! I come as a thief! Blessed {is} the one who watches and keeps his garments, so that he might not walk around naked and they might see his shameful condition (ULT)

I heard the Lord Jesus say, "You must listen carefully to me: I am coming unexpectedly, like a thief. So I will be happy with those who stay alert and keep on living in the right way so that they will not be ashamed. They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on so that he will not be ashamed in front of other people (UST)

This is in parentheses to show that it is not part of the story line in the vision. Rather, this is something that the Lord Jesus said. You can state explicitly that the Lord Jesus said this, as in the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I come as a thief (ULT)

I am coming unexpectedly, like a thief (UST)

Jesus will **come** at a time when people do not expect him, just as **a thief** comes when not expected. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 3:3](#). (See: [Simile](#))

keeps his garments (ULT)

keep on living in the right way...they will (UST)

Living the right way is spoken of as keeping one's clothes on. Alternate translation: "doing what is right, like keeping his clothes on" (See: [Metaphor](#))

keeps his garments (ULT)

keep on living in the right way...they will (UST)

Some versions translate this phrase as, "keeps his garments with him."

his...they might see...shameful condition (ULT)

they will...so that...will not be ashamed...in front of other people (UST)

Here the word **they** refers to other people.

ULT

¹⁵ ("Behold! I come **as a thief**! **Blessed {is}** the one **who watches** and keeps his **garments**, so that **he might** not **walk around** naked and they might see his shameful condition.")

UST

¹⁵ (I heard the Lord Jesus say, "You must listen carefully to me: I am coming **unexpectedly**, **like a thief**. **So I will be happy with those** who **stay alert** and keep on **living in the right way** so that they will not be ashamed. **They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on** so that he will not be ashamed in front of other people.")

Translation Words - ULT

- as
- a thief
- Blessed {is
- who watches
- garments
- he might...walk around

Translation Words - UST

- unexpectedly...a thief
- like
- So I will be happy with those
- stay alert
- living in the right way
- They will be just like a person who keeps his clothes on

Revelation 16:16

they brought them together (ULT) gather the rulers (UST)

Alternate translation: "the spirits of the demons brought the kings and their armies together"

the place that is called (ULT) a place named (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the place that people call" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Armageddon (ULT) Armageddon (UST)

Armageddon is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they brought...together
- is called
- in Hebrew

Translation Words - UST

- gather
- named
- in the Hebrew language

ULT

¹⁶ And they brought them together at the place that is called Armageddon in Hebrew.

UST

¹⁶ The evil spirits will gather the rulers at a place named in the Hebrew language Armageddon.

Revelation 16:17

Connecting Statement:

The seventh angel pours out the seventh bowl of God's wrath.

poured out his bowl (ULT) **poured out...what was contained in his bowl (UST)**

The word **bowl** refers to what is in it. See how you translated this in [Revelation 16:2](#). Alternate translation: "poured out God's wrath from his bowl" (See: [Metonymy](#))

and a loud voice came out from the temple, from the throne (ULT)

As a result...with a loud voice from the throne in the very holy place (UST)

This means someone sitting on **the throne** or someone standing near the throne spoke loudly. It is unclear who is speaking. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...voice](#)
- [temple](#)
- [throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a...voice](#)
- [throne](#)
- [very holy place](#)

ULT

17 And the seventh {angel} poured out his bowl into the air and a loud [voice](#) came out from the [temple](#), from the [throne](#), saying, "It is done!"

UST

17 Then the seventh angel poured out into the air what was contained in his bowl. As a result, someone said with a loud [voice](#) from the [throne](#) in the [very holy place](#), "The time for God to punish rebellious people is finished."

Revelation 16:18

flashes of lightning (ULT)

lightning flashed (UST)

Use your language's way of describing what **lightning** looks like each time it appears. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

And...sounds...crashes of thunder (ULT)

When the angel emptied his bowl...

rumblings...and thunder (UST)

These **sounds and crashes** are the loud noises that **thunder** makes. Use your language's way of describing the sound of thunder. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [sounds](#)
- [a...earthquake](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rumblings](#)
- [the earth shook](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

18 And there came about flashes of lightning and [sounds](#) and crashes of thunder, and a great [earthquake](#) happened—such as has not ever happened from {when} man had not {yet} been on the [earth](#), so powerful {and} great {was} the earthquake.

UST

18 When the angel emptied his bowl, lightning flashed, there were [rumblings](#) and thunder, and [the earth shook](#). It shook more violently than it had ever shaken since people first lived on [earth](#).

Revelation 16:19

the great city became {split} into (ULT)
the very large city split into (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the earthquake split the great city into" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Babylon the Great was remembered before God (ULT)
God did not forget that...the people of Babylon...had sinned very much (UST)

This does not mean that God remembered something he had forgotten. Alternate translation: "then God remembered Babylon the Great" or "then God thought of Babylon the Great" or "then God started to pay attention to Babylon the Great" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁹ And the great city became {split} into three parts and the cities of the [nations](#) collapsed, and [Babylon](#) the Great was remembered before [God](#) to give to her the cup of the [wine](#) of the [wrath](#) of his [fury](#).

UST

¹⁹ As a result, the very large city split into three parts. God also destroyed the cities in the [other nations](#). [God](#) did not forget that [the people of Babylon](#) had sinned very much. So he made them drink a cup of the [wine](#) that [made them suffer because](#) he [was angry with them](#).

to give to her the cup of the wine of the wrath of his fury (ULT)
So he made them drink a cup of the wine that made them suffer because he was angry with them (UST)

Here, **the wine** is a symbol of his **wrath**. Making people drink it is a symbol of punishing them. Alternate translation: "he made the people of that city drink the wine that represents his wrath" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...nations](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [God](#)
- [of...wine](#)
- [of...wrath](#)
- [of...fury](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [other nations](#)
- [God](#)
- [the people of Babylon](#)
- [wine](#)
- [made them suffer](#)
- [because...was angry with them](#)

Revelation 16:20

the mountains were not found (ULT) **the mountains became flat land (UST)**

The inability to see any **mountains** is metonymy expressing the idea that no mountains existed any longer. Alternate translation: “there were no longer any mountains” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁰ And every island fled, and the mountains were not found.

UST

²⁰ Also as a result of the earthquake, every island disappeared, and the mountains became flat land.

Revelation 16:21

a talent {in weight (ULT) each weighing thirty-three kilograms (UST)

You may convert the **talent** to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "33 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hailstones](#)
- [of...hail](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [blasphemed](#)
- [God](#)
- [plague](#)
- [plague](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hailstones](#)
- [terrible way, and because the hailstones were very large](#)
- [sky](#)
- [blasphemed](#)
- [God because he had punished them](#)
- [terrible way, and because the hailstones were very large](#)
- [terrible way, and because the hailstones were very large](#)

ULT

²¹ And great [hailstones](#), about a talent {in weight}, come down from [heaven](#) upon men, and the men [blasphemed God](#) because of the [plague](#) of the [hail](#), because that [plague](#) is exceedingly great.

16:5 ^[1]

UST

²¹ Huge [hailstones](#), each weighing thirty-three kilograms, fell from the [sky](#) onto the people. Then people [blasphemed God because he had punished them](#) in this [terrible way, and because the hailstones were very large](#).

Revelation 17

Revelation 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins to describe how God will destroy Babylon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prostitute

Scripture often pictures idolatrous Jews as adulterous people and sometimes as prostitutes. This is not the reference here. The translator should allow this illustration to be vague. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Seven hills

This possibly refers to the city of Rome, which was known as the city on seven hills. However, the translator should not attempt to identify Rome in the translation.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

John uses many different metaphors in this chapter. He explains some of their meanings, but allows them to remain relatively unclear. The translator should attempt to do the same. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The beast you saw existed, does not exist now, but is about to come up”

This and similar phrases in this chapter contrast the beast with Jesus. Jesus is called “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come” elsewhere in the Book of Revelation. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. This sentence in 17:11 is a paradox: “the beast ... is itself also an eighth king; but it is one of those seven kings.” The translator should not attempt to resolve this paradox. It should remain a mystery. ([Revelation 17:11](#))

Revelation 17:1

General Information:

John begins to describe the part of his vision about the great prostitute.

the judgment of the great prostitute (ULT) how God will punish the prostitute, the woman who represents (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun "judgment", you can express it with a verb. Alternate translation: "how God will judge the great prostitute" or "how God will condemn the great prostitute"(See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

of the great prostitute (ULT) the prostitute, the woman who represents (UST)

Here, **the great prostitute** represents a certain sinful city. Alternate translation: "the prostitute that everyone knows about" or "a certain sinful city" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

on many waters (ULT) in which there are many canals of water (UST)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a more specific word for the kind of water. Alternate translation: "on many rivers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [of...prostitute](#)
- [waters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [how God will punish](#)
- [prostitute](#)
- [there are...canals of water](#)

ULT

¹ And one of the seven [angels](#) who has the seven bowls came and spoke with me, saying, "Come, I will show you the [judgment](#) of the great [prostitute](#) who is seated on many [waters](#),

UST

¹ One of the seven [angels](#), who had one of the seven bowls, came to me and said, "Come with me and I will show you [how God will punish](#) the [prostitute](#), the woman who represents the city in which [there are many canals of water](#).

Revelation 17:2

those living on the earth became drunk from the wine of her sexual immorality (ULT)
people on the earth acted immorally...drunk on wine that she gave them (UST)

Here to be **drunk from the wine of her sexual immorality** represents fully giving themselves over to doing sexually immoral acts. Alternate translation: "the people of the earth fully engaged in every kind of sexual immorality" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

the wine of her sexual immorality (ULT)
acted immorally...wine...she gave them (UST)

Here, **the wine** represents **sexual immorality**. Alternate translation: "her wine, that is, they were sexually immoral" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

of her sexual immorality (ULT)
acted immorally...she gave them (UST)

This may well have a double meaning: **sexual immorality** among people and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [kings](#)
- [of...earth](#)
- [on...earth](#)
- [committed sexual immorality](#)
- [of...sexual immorality](#)
- [became drunk](#)
- [wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The kings](#)
- [earth](#)
- [earth](#)
- [have acted immorally and idolatrously](#)
- [acted immorally](#)
- [drunk](#)
- [wine](#)

ULT

² with whom the [kings](#) of the [earth](#) [committed sexual immorality](#) and those living on the [earth](#) [became drunk](#) from the [wine](#) of her [sexual immorality](#)."

UST

² [The kings](#) of the [earth](#) [have acted immorally and idolatrously](#) with her. The people on the [earth](#) [acted immorally](#) in the same way. It was as if they had gotten [drunk](#) on [wine](#) that she gave them."

Revelation 17:3

he carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness (ULT)

God's Spirit took control of me, and the angel carried me away to a desolate area (UST)

The setting changes from John being in heaven to being in a **wilderness**. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Spirit](#)
- [a wilderness](#)
- [a...beast](#)
- [blasphemous](#)
- [of...names](#)
- [heads](#)
- [horns](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [to a desolate area](#)
- [a...beast](#)
- [names](#)
- [They were names that insulted God](#)
- [heads](#)
- [horns](#)

ULT

³ And he carried me away in [the Spirit](#) to [a wilderness](#), and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet [beast](#) being full of [blasphemous names](#), having seven [heads](#) and ten [horns](#).

UST

³ Then [God's Spirit](#) took control of me, and the angel carried me away [to a desolate area](#). There I saw a woman who was sitting on a red [beast](#). The beast had written [names](#) all over itself. [They were names that insulted God](#). The beast had seven [heads](#) and ten [horns](#).

Revelation 17:4

pearls (ULT)

pearls (UST)

A pearl is a beautiful and valuable white bead that is formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean.

(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- dressed in
- purple
- gold
- golden
- precious
- hand
- of detestable things
- impurities
- of...sexual immorality

Translation Words - UST

- was wearing...clothes
- purple
- commits sexual immorality
- of gold
- golden
- precious
- hand
- the detestable
- filthy things...she does when

ULT

⁴ And the woman was dressed in purple and scarlet and had been adorned with gold and precious stones and pearls, holding in her hand a golden cup full of detestable things and the impurities of her sexual immorality,

UST

⁴ The woman was wearing purple and red clothes. She had jewelry of gold, precious stones, and pearls; she held in her hand a golden cup. The cup was full of something to drink that stands for the detestable and filthy things that she does when she commits sexual immorality.

Revelation 17:5

on her forehead had been written a name (ULT)

a name written on her forehead, a name (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had written on her forehead a name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Babylon the Great (ULT)

This woman is Babylon, the very evil city (UST)

If it needs to be made explicit that the name refers to the woman, it can be put in a new sentence. Alternate translation: "I am Babylon, the powerful one" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a name
- Mystery
- Babylon
- of Prostitutes
- of...Abominations
- of...Earth

Translation Words - UST

- a name
- with a secret meaning. It is
- This woman is Babylon
- prostitutes
- earth
- filthy, immoral things in the world

ULT

⁵ and on her forehead had been written a name: "Mystery Babylon the Great, the Mother of Prostitutes and of the Abominations of the Earth."

UST

⁵ There was a name written on her forehead, a name with a secret meaning. It is "This woman is Babylon, the very evil city! She is the mother of all the prostitutes on the earth. She teaches them to do all the filthy, immoral things in the world."

Revelation 17:6

General Information:

The angel begins to explain to John the meaning of the prostitute and the red beast. The angel explains these things through verse 18.

is drunk with the blood...And...with the blood (ULT)

had become drunk because she had drunk the blood...I saw that...because she had drunk the blood (UST)

Alternate translation: "was drunk because she had drunk the blood ... and had drunk the blood"

the...of...witnesses of Jesus (ULT)

of...proclaiming the truth about...Jesus (UST)

Alternate translation: "of the believers who have died because they told others about Jesus"

I marveled (ULT)

saw her, I was...amazed (UST)

Alternate translation: "I was amazed" or "I was surprised"

Translation Words - ULT

- is drunk
- blood
- blood (2)
- of...saints
- of...witnesses
- of Jesus
- I marveled
- with...wonder

Translation Words - UST

- had become drunk
- blood
- had suffered for (2)
- God's people
- proclaiming the truth about
- Jesus
- saw her, I was...amazed
- saw her, I was...amazed

ULT

⁶ And I saw that the woman is drunk with the blood of the saints and with the blood of the witnesses of Jesus, and having seen her, I marveled with great wonder.

UST

⁶ I saw that the woman had become drunk because she had drunk the blood of God's people, those who had suffered for proclaiming the truth about Jesus. When I saw her, I was completely amazed.

Revelation 17:7

Why are you astonished (ULT)

Do not be amazed (UST)

The angel used this question to gently scold John. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could express it as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be astonished!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [are you astonished](#)
- [mystery](#)
- [of...beast](#)
- [is carrying](#)
- [heads](#)
- [horns](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [Do not be amazed](#)
- [hidden meaning](#)
- [beast](#)
- [rides](#)
- [heads](#)
- [horns](#)

ULT

⁷ But the [angel](#) said to me, "Why [are you astonished](#)? I will tell you the [mystery](#) of the woman and of the [beast](#) that [is carrying](#) her, that has the seven [heads](#) and the ten [horns](#)."

UST

⁷ The [angel](#) said to me, "[Do not be amazed](#). I will explain to you the [hidden meaning](#) of the woman and of the [beast](#) on which she [rides](#), the beast with the seven [heads](#) and the ten [horns](#)."

Revelation 17:8

the abyss (ULT) the shaft that went down but had no ending (UST)

The **abyss** is an extremely deep narrow hole. This could mean: (1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever. (2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

and it will go to destruction (ULT) Eventually God will destroy him (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **destruction**, you can express it with a verb. Alternate translation: “and then he will be destroyed” or “and God will destroy him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

it will go to destruction (ULT) Eventually God...will destroy him (UST)

The certainty of what will happen in the future is spoken of as if the beast were going to it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

whose names have not been written (ULT) names have not been written (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whose names God did not write” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)
- [beast](#) (2)
- [abyss](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [will be astounded](#)
- [earth](#)
- [names](#)
- [Book](#)
- [Book of Life](#)
- [of Life](#)
- [the foundation of the world](#)
- [the foundation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)
- [When that beast appears again](#) (2)
- [shaft that went down but had no ending](#)
- [God created the world](#)

ULT

⁸ The [beast](#) that you saw existed, does not exist now, but is about to come up from the [abyss](#), and it will go to destruction, and those who live on the [earth](#), whose [names](#) have not been written in the [Book of Life](#) since [the foundation of the world](#), will be [astounded](#) when they see the [beast](#) that existed, and does not exist, but will come.

UST

⁸ The [beast](#) that you saw lived previously. Eventually God will destroy him, but now he is not alive. He is about to come up from the [shaft that went down but had no ending](#). [When that beast appears again](#), the people on the [earth](#) will be [amazed](#). They are people whose [names](#) have not been written in the [Book of Life](#) before [God created the world](#).

- God created
- the world
- earth
- will be amazed
- names
- Book
- Book of Life
- Life

Revelation 17:9

**Here {is} the mind that has wisdom (ULT)
People need to think wisely to understand
this (UST)**

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract nouns **mind** and **wisdom**, you can express them with “think” and “wise” or “wisely.”
Alternate translation: “You need to think wisely in order to understand this” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Here {is} the mind that has wisdom (ULT)
People need to think wisely to understand
this (UST)**

You can state explicitly why a wise **mind** is needed. Alternate translation: “A wise mind is needed in order to understand this” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The seven heads are seven hills

Here, **are** means “stand for” or “represent.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [mind](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [heads](#)
- [kings](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wisely](#)
- [to understand this](#)
- [heads of the beast on which the woman...symbolize](#)
- [rulers](#)

ULT

⁹ Here {is} the [mind](#) that has [wisdom](#):
The seven [heads](#) are seven hills where the woman is seated on them, and they are seven [kings](#);

UST

⁹ People need to think [wisely to understand this](#): The seven [heads of the beast on which the woman](#) sits [symbolize](#) the seven hills of the city that the woman represents. They also symbolize seven [rulers](#).

Revelation 17:10

five have fallen (ULT)

Five of those rulers have died (UST)

The angel speaks of dying as falling. Alternate translation: “five kings have died” (See: [Metaphor](#))

one is (ULT)

One is still alive (UST)

Alternate translation: “one is king now” or “one king is alive now”

the other has not yet come (ULT)

The seventh ruler has not yet come (UST)

Not having existed yet is spoken of as not yet having **come**. Alternate translation: “the other has not yet become king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

when he comes, it is necessary for him to remain a little while (ULT)

When...he comes, he must remain for only a short time (UST)

The angel speaks of someone continuing to be king as if he were remaining in a place. Alternate translation: “he can be king only for a little while” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁰ five have fallen, one is, the other has not yet come. But when he comes, it is necessary for him to remain a little while.

UST

¹⁰ Five of those rulers have died. One is still alive. The seventh ruler has not yet come. When he comes, he must remain for only a short time.

Revelation 17:11

is...from among those seven (ULT)
will be...the...He...actually one of those seven rulers (UST)

This could mean: (1) the beast rules twice: first as one of the seven kings, and then as the eighth king. (2) the beast belongs to that group of seven kings because he is like them.

is going to destruction (ULT)
God will certainly destroy him (UST)

The certainty of what will happen in the future is spoken of as if the beast were **going** to it. Alternate translation: "it will certainly be destroyed" or "God will surely destroy it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [beast](#)

ULT

¹¹ And the [beast](#) that was but is not, is itself also an eighth {king}; but is from among those seven and is going to destruction.

UST

¹¹ The [beast](#) that lived before and then was not alive will be the eighth ruler. He is actually one of those seven rulers, but God will certainly destroy him.

Revelation 17:12

Connecting Statement:

The angel explains the meaning of the ten horns of the beast.

for one hour (ULT) together...as if it were for only one hour (UST)

If your language does not divide the day into 24 hours, you may need to use a more general expression. Alternate translation: "for a very short time" or "for a very small part of a day" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- horns
- kings
- kings (2)
- have...received
- they will receive
- a kingdom
- authority
- as
- for...hour
- beast

Translation Words - UST

- horns
- rulers
- rule people (2)
- begun to rule
- will receive
- but they will rule for only a short time
- authority
- in order to
- beast
- as if it were for only one hour

ULT

¹² And the ten horns that you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but they will receive authority as kings for one hour with the beast.

UST

¹² The ten horns that you saw represent ten rulers who have not yet begun to rule. They will receive authority in order to rule people together with the beast, but they will rule for only a short time, as if it were for only one hour.

Revelation 17:13

These have one mind (ULT)
Those rulers will all agree to do the same thing (UST)

Alternate translation: "These all think the same thing" or "These all agree to do the same thing"

Translation Words - ULT

- mind
- power
- authority
- to...beast

Translation Words - UST

- to do the same thing
- beast
- right...to rule people
- authority

ULT

¹³ These have one mind, and they give their power and authority to the beast.

UST

¹³ Those rulers will all agree to do the same thing. As a result they will give to the beast their right and authority to rule people.

Revelation 17:14

the Lamb (ULT)

the lamb (UST)

A lamb is a young sheep. Here, **Lamb** is used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

are} called and chosen and faithful (ULT) are the ones whom God has chosen and called to himself, and who keep serving him faithfully (UST)

This refers to one group of people. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state the words **called** and **chosen** in active form. Alternate translation: “the called, chosen, and faithful ones” or “the ones whom God has called and chosen, who are faithful to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁴ They will wage war against the [Lamb](#), but the [Lamb](#) will conquer them, because he is [Lord of lords](#) and [King of kings](#)—and those with him {are} called and [chosen](#) and [faithful](#).”

UST

¹⁴ The rulers and the beast will fight against the [lamb](#). He [will defeat them](#) because he is the [Lord who rules over all other lords](#) and the [King who rules over all other kings](#). The people who are with him [are the ones whom God has chosen](#) and [called](#) to himself, and who keep serving him [faithfully](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lamb](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of lords](#)
- [King](#)
- [of kings](#)
- [are} called](#)
- [chosen](#)
- [faithful](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lamb](#)
- [will defeat them](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the...who rules over all other lords](#)
- [the King](#)
- [who rules over all other kings](#)
- [are the ones whom God has...called](#)
- [chosen](#)
- [faithfully](#)

Revelation 17:15

The waters that you saw, where the prostitute sits, are peoples and multitudes and nations and tongues (ULT)

The waters that you saw in the city represent many different kinds of people, and many different groups of people, and different languages that the people speak, where the prostitute sits (UST)

Here, **are** stands for "represent." (See: [Metaphor](#))

The waters (ULT)

The waters (UST)

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could use a more specific word for the kind of **water**. See how you translated "many waters" in [Revelation 17:1](#). Alternate translation: "The rivers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

multitudes (ULT)

many different (UST)

large groups of people

tongues (ULT)

different languages that the people speak (UST)

Here, **tongues** refers to people who speak the languages. See how you translated this in [Revelation 10:11](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [waters](#)
- [prostitute](#)
- [peoples](#)
- [nations](#)
- [tongues](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [waters](#)
- [represent many different kinds of](#)
- [groups of people](#)
- [different languages that the people speak](#)
- [prostitute](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And he says to me, "The [waters](#) that you saw, where the [prostitute](#) sits, are [peoples](#) and multitudes and [nations](#) and [tongues](#)."

UST

¹⁵ Then the angel said to me, "The [waters](#) that you saw in the city [represent many different kinds of](#) people, and many different [groups of](#) people, and [different languages that the people speak](#), where the [prostitute](#) sits."

Revelation 17:16

**And...they will make her desolate...naked
(ULT)**

**The...take away everything that is in the city
as if they were...leaving...it...naked...They will
destroy...as if (UST)**

Alternate translation: "they will steal everything that she has and leave her with nothing"

**they will devour her flesh (ULT)
it...devouring...flesh (UST)**

Destroying her completely is spoken of as eating all **her flesh**.

Alternate translation: "they will destroy her completely" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [horns](#)
- [beast](#)
- [prostitute](#)
- [desolate](#)
- [they will devour](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [with fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [horns](#)
- [beast](#)
- [prostitute](#)
- [take away everything that is in the city as if they were](#)
- [devouring](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [will burn](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And the ten [horns](#) that you saw, and the [beast](#)—they will hate the [prostitute](#), and they will make her [desolate](#) and naked, and [they will devour](#) her [flesh](#), and they will burn her completely [with fire](#),

UST

¹⁶ The ten [horns](#) that you saw represent rulers. They and the [beast](#) will hate the [prostitute](#). So they will [take away everything that is in the city as if they were](#) leaving it naked. They will destroy it as if [devouring flesh](#), and they [will burn](#) it completely.

Revelation 17:17

For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by agreeing to give ... until God's words are fulfilled

They would agree to give their power **to the beast**, but it would not be that they want to obey **God**. Alternate translation: "For God has put it into their hearts to agree to give their kingdom to the beast until God's words are fulfilled, and by doing this, they would carry out God's purpose"

for God has put into their hearts to do (ULT) They will do that because God has caused them to decide to do (UST)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for desires. (See: [Metonymy](#))

for God has put into their hearts to do (ULT) They will do that because God has caused them to decide to do (UST)

Making them want to do something is spoken of as putting it **into their hearts** to do it. Alternate translation: "God has made them want to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

their...purpose...kingdom (ULT) them...what...wants them to do...rule (UST)

Alternate translation: "their authority" or "their kingly authority"

until the words of God will be fulfilled (ULT) until what God has said is fulfilled (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "until God fulfills what he said will happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of God
- hearts
- kingdom
- to...beast
- will be fulfilled

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- to decide
- beast

ULT

¹⁷ for **God** has put into their **hearts** to do his purpose and to do one purpose and to give their **kingdom** to the **beast** until the words **of God will be fulfilled**.

UST

¹⁷ They will do that because **God** has caused them **to decide** to do what he wants them to do. As a result, they will let the **beast** have their power to **rule** until what **God** has said **is fulfilled**.

- rule
- is fulfilled

Revelation 17:18

Connecting Statement:

The angel finishes speaking to John about the prostitute and the beast.

is (ULT) represents (UST)

Here, **is** stands for “represents.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the great city that has a kingdom (ULT) the very evil city whose leaders rule (UST)

When it says that the **city** rules, it means that the leader of the city rules. Alternate translation: “the great city whose leader rules” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a kingdom
- kings
- of...earth

Translation Words - UST

- rule
- kings
- earth

ULT

18 And the woman that you saw is the great city that has a kingdom over the kings of the earth.”

UST

18 The prostitute that you saw represents the very evil city whose leaders rule over the kings of the earth.”

Revelation 18

Revelation 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 1-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecy

The angel prophesies about Babylon falling, which here means being destroyed. It is spoken of as having already happened. This is common in prophecy. It emphasizes that the coming judgment will certainly happen. The angel also prophesies that the people will lament over Babylon falling. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [judge](#), [judgment](#) and [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

Prophecy frequently uses metaphors. This chapter has a slightly different apocalyptic style than the Book of Revelation overall. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Revelation 18:1

Connecting Statement:

Another angel comes down from heaven and speaks. This is a different angel than the one in the previous chapter, who spoke about the prostitute and the beast.

Translation Words - ULT

- angel
- heaven
- authority
- earth
- glory

Translation Words - UST

- angel
- authority
- heaven
- earth
- was shining so intensely

ULT

¹ After these things I saw another angel coming down from heaven, having great authority, and the earth was illumined by his glory.

UST

¹ After this I saw another angel, one who had great authority, coming down from heaven. The earth became bright because he was shining so intensely.

Revelation 18:2

Fallen {is} Babylon the great (ULT) God is about to completely destroy the very evil city of Babylon (UST)

The angel speaks of **Babylon** having been destroyed as if it had fallen. See how you translated this in [Revelation 14:8](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

is} Babylon the great (ULT) the very evil city of Babylon (UST)

The angel speaks of the city of Babylon as if it were a prostitute. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- he cried out
- mighty
- detestable
- a...voice
- is} Babylon
- of demons
- of...unclean spirit
- a refuge
- a refuge (2)
- unclean
- unclean (2)

Translation Words - UST

- He shouted
- a very loud
- and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute
- and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute (2)
- voice
- the...evil city of Babylon
- will live there
- evil spirits...and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute
- will live there
- and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute (2)
- and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute

ULT

² And he cried out with a mighty voice, saying, "Fallen {is} Babylon the great! And she has become a dwelling place of demons and a refuge of every unclean spirit and a refuge of every unclean and detestable bird. ^[1]

UST

² He shouted with a very loud voice, "God is about to completely destroy the very evil city of Babylon. As a result, all kinds of evil spirits will live there, and all kinds of foul and detestable birds will live there. Babylon is like a prostitute

Revelation 18:3

all the nations (ULT)
all the people groups (UST)

Here, **the nations** is a metonym for the people of those nations.
 Alternate translation: “the people of all the nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

have drunk from the wine of her immoral passion (ULT)
with...engaged with her in the passion of sexual immorality, which is like getting drunk on too much wine (UST)

Here, drinking **from the wine of her immoral passion** is a symbol for participating in her sexually immoral passion. Alternate translation: “have become sexually immoral like her” or “have become drunk like her in sexual sin” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

of her immoral passion (ULT)
engaged with her in the passion of sexual immorality (UST)

This may well have a double meaning: literal sexual immorality and also the worship of false gods. (See: [Metaphor](#))

have committed immorality with her (ULT)
have done the same things with her (UST)

Babylon is spoken of as if it were a prostitute who has caused other people to sin along **with her**. (See: [Personification](#))

merchants (ULT)
merchants of the earth (UST)

A merchant is a person who sells things.

from the...her immoral...power...of...sensual way of living (ULT)
with...engaged with her...of...on too much wine...strongly desired and bought from the merchants...many luxuries things (UST)

Alternate translation: “because she spent so much money on sexual immorality”

Translation Words - ULT

- [nations](#)
- [wine](#)
- [immoral](#)
- [have committed immorality](#)

ULT

³ For all the [nations](#) have drunk from the [wine](#) of her [immoral](#) passion and the [kings](#) of the [earth](#) [have committed immorality](#) with her and the merchants of the [earth](#) have become rich from the [power](#) of her sensual way of living.”

UST

³ with whom all the [people groups](#) engaged with her in the passion of [sexual immorality](#), which is like getting drunk [on too much wine](#). Yes, and the [kings](#) of the [earth](#) [have done the same things](#) with her. The merchants of the earth have become rich because [the people of those cities strongly desired and bought from the merchants](#) many luxuries things.”

- kings
- of...earth
- of...earth (2)
- power

Translation Words - UST

- people groups
- sexual immorality
- have done the same things
- on too much wine
- kings
- earth
- the people of those cities (2)
- strongly desired and bought from the merchants

Revelation 18:4

another voice (ULT)

Jesus speak (UST)

Here, **voice** refers to the speaker, which is probably either Jesus or the Father. Alternate translation: “someone else” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- heaven
- people
- my...people
- you might...share
- in...sins
- you might...receive
- plagues

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus speak
- heaven
- people
- My...people
- you do...as those people do
- sin
- I will punish you in those seven different ways, just as I will punish them
- I will punish you in those seven different ways, just as I will punish them

ULT

⁴ And I heard another voice from heaven saying, “Come out from her, my people, so that you might not share in her sins, and so that you might not receive from her plagues.

UST

⁴ I heard Jesus speak from heaven. He said, “My people, flee from that Babylon in order that you do not sin as those people do. If you sin as they do, I will punish you in those seven different ways, just as I will punish them.

Revelation 18:5

her sins have piled up as far as heaven (ULT)
their sins have been piled up to heaven (UST)

The voice speaks of Babylon's **sins** as if they were objects that could form a pile. Alternate translation: "her sins are so many they are like a pile that reaches heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

has remembered (ULT)
remembers (UST)

This does not mean that God **remembered** something he had forgotten. See how you translated "called to mind" in [Revelation 16:19](#). Alternate translation: "has thought of" or "has started to pay attention to"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

⁵ For her [sins](#) have piled up as far as [heaven](#), and [God](#) has remembered her sinful actions.

UST

⁵ It is as though their [sins](#) have been piled up to [heaven](#) and [God](#) remembers them, so now he will punish them."

Revelation 18:6

**Give back to her even as she has given (ULT)
To the angels whom God assigned to punish
Babylon, Jesus said, "Pay back the people of
that city to the same extent...as they caused
other people to suffer (UST)**

The voice speaks of punishment as if it were repayment. Alternate translation: "Punish her as she has punished others" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**repay her double, twice as much (ULT)
Cause them to suffer twice as much (UST)**

The voice speaks of punishment as if it were repayment. Alternate translation: "punish her twice as much" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**in the cup that she mixed, mix double for her (ULT)
Cause them to suffer twice as much (UST)**

The voice speaks of causing others to suffer as preparing strong wine for them to drink. Alternate translation: "prepare for her the wine of suffering that is twice as strong as what she made for others" or "make her suffer twice as much as she made others suffer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**mix...double (ULT)
Cause them to suffer twice as much...Cause them to suffer twice as much
(UST)**

Here, **mix double** could mean: (1) they should prepare twice the amount. (2) they should make it twice as strong.

Translation Words - ULT

- [as](#)
- [deeds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to the same extent](#)
- [Cause them to suffer twice as much](#)

ULT

⁶ Give back to her even [as](#) she has given, and repay her double, twice as much according to her [deeds](#); in the cup that she mixed, mix double for her.

UST

⁶ To the angels whom God assigned to punish Babylon, Jesus said, "Pay back the people of that city [to the same extent](#) that they harmed other people. [Cause them to suffer twice as much](#) as they caused other people to suffer.

Revelation 18:7

she glorified herself (ULT)
that Babylon, like a woman, has honored herself (UST)

Alternate translation: "the people of Babylon glorified themselves"

For she says in her heart (ULT)
Do that because in her mind she thought (UST)

Here, **heart** is a metonym for a person's mind or thoughts. Alternate translation: "For she says to herself" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I sit {as} a queen (ULT)
I rule...as a queen (UST)

She claims to be a ruler, having her own authority. (See: [Simile](#))

I am not a widow (ULT)
I am not...a widow (UST)

She implies that she will not be dependent on other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will certainly not see mourning (ULT)
I will never mourn as widows do (UST)

Experiencing mourning is spoken of as seeing **mourning**. Alternate translation: "I will never mourn" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she glorified](#)
- [torture](#)
- [grief](#)
- [mourning](#) (2)
- [heart](#)
- [as} a queen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Babylon, like a woman, has honored](#)
- [torment her](#)
- [cause her to grieve](#)
- [mourn](#) (2)
- [mind](#)
- [as a queen](#)

ULT

⁷ As much as [she glorified](#) herself and lived in luxury, give her just as much [torture](#) and [grief](#). For she says in her [heart](#), 'I sit [{as} a queen](#) and I am not a widow and I will certainly not see [mourning](#).'

UST

⁷ To the same extent [that Babylon, like a woman, has honored](#) herself and done the things she wanted to do, to that extent [torment her](#) and [cause her to grieve](#). Do that because in her [mind](#) she thought, 'I rule [as a queen](#)! I am not a widow, and I will never [mourn](#) as widows do!'

Revelation 18:8

her plagues will come (ULT)
terrible calamities will come upon her (UST)

Existing in the future is spoken of as coming. (See: [Metaphor](#))

she will be consumed by fire (ULT)
burn up (UST)

Being burned up by fire is spoken of as being eaten up **by fire**.
 Alternate translation: “she will be completely burned up” (See: [Metaphor](#))

she will be consumed by fire (ULT)
burn up (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “fire will completely burn her up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁸ Therefore, in one [day](#) her [plagues](#) will come: [death](#) and [mourning](#) and [famine](#), and she will be consumed by [fire](#), for [the Lord God who judges](#) her {[is](#)} [mighty](#).”

UST

⁸ So in one [day](#), [terrible calamities](#) will come upon her. The people in that city [will die](#), others [will mourn for them](#), [people will be hungry because there will be no food](#), and the city will [burn up](#). The [Lord God](#) is able to punish her because [he is mighty](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [plagues](#)
- [death](#)
- [mourning](#)
- [famine](#)
- [fire](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [who judges](#)
- [is](#)} [mighty](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [day](#)
- [terrible calamities](#)
- [will die](#)
- [will mourn for them](#)
- [people will be hungry because there will be no food](#)
- [burn up](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [is able to punish](#)
- [he is mighty](#)

Revelation 18:9

General Information:

In these verses the word **her** refers to the city of Babylon.

**And...committed sexual immorality...lived in luxury with her (ULT)
have acted immorally with her...have done just what they wanted to do with her will weep (UST)**

Alternate translation: "sinned sexually and did whatever they wanted just as the people of Babylon did"

Translation Words - ULT

- kings
- of...earth
- committed sexual immorality
- will weep

Translation Words - UST

- kings
- earth
- have acted immorally
- will weep

ULT

⁹ And the **kings** of the **earth** who **committed sexual immorality** and lived in luxury with her **will weep** and wail over her when they see the smoke of her burning,

UST

⁹ The **kings** on **earth** who **have acted immorally** with her and have done just what they wanted to do with her **will weep** and mourn for her when they see the smoke of the fire that will burn there.

Revelation 18:10

because of the fear of her torment (ULT)
because they will be afraid that they will
suffer just as she does (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **torment**, you can express it with a verb. Alternate translation: “because they were afraid that they would be tormented like Babylon” or “because they were afraid that God would torment them as he torments Babylon” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Woe, woe (ULT)
How terrible it is (UST)

The word **Woe** is repeated for emphasis.

your judgment has come (ULT)
God is punishing her (UST)

Existing in the present is spoken of as having **come**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...fear
- of...torment
- Woe
- woe
- Babylon
- powerful
- in...hour
- judgment

Translation Words - UST

- they will be afraid
- will suffer just as she does
- How terrible it is
- How terrible it is
- Babylon
- strong
- God is punishing
- suddenly and swiftly

ULT

¹⁰ having stood at a distance because of the [fear](#) of her [torment](#), saying, “[Woe](#), [woe](#) to the great city, [Babylon](#), the [powerful](#) city! For in one [hour](#) your [judgment](#) has come.”

UST

¹⁰ They will stand far away from Babylon because [they will be afraid](#) that they [will suffer just as she does](#). They will say, “[How terrible it is](#) for [Babylon](#), that [strong](#) city! [God is punishing](#) her [suddenly and swiftly](#)!”

Revelation 18:11

mourn for her (ULT)

will mourn for her (UST)

Alternate translation: "mourn for the people of Babylon"

Translation Words - ULT

- of...earth
- weep
- mourn

Translation Words - UST

- earth
- will weep
- will mourn

ULT

¹¹ And the merchants of the **earth weep** and **mourn** for her, because no one buys her cargo anymore—

UST

¹¹ The merchants of the **earth will weep** and **will mourn** for her because no one in her will ever again buy the things that they have to sell.

Revelation 18:12

and...precious stone...pearls (ULT)

See how you translated these in [Revelation 17:4](#). Alternate translation: “many kinds of expensive stones”

fine linen (ULT)

The **fine linen** is an expensive cloth made from flax. See how you translated “linen” in [Revelation 15:6](#).

purple cloth and silk and scarlet cloth (ULT)

Purple cloth is a very dark red cloth that was very expensive at that time. Silk is a soft, strong cloth made from the fine string that silkworms make when they make their cocoons. Scarlet cloth was an expensive red cloth. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

every...ivory vessel (ULT)

Alternate translation: “all kinds of containers made of ivory”

ivory vessel (ULT)

Ivory is a beautiful hard, white material that people get from the tusks or teeth of very large animals such as elephants or walruses. Alternate translation: “container made from tusks” or “container made from valuable animal teeth” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

marble (ULT)

Marble is a precious stone that is used for building and to make statues, furniture, and many other things. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of gold
- silver
- precious
- precious
- purple cloth
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- gold, golden
- precious, valuable, expensive, fine
- precious, valuable, expensive, fine
- purple
- silver

ULT

¹² cargo of gold and silver and precious stone and pearls and fine linen and purple cloth and silk and scarlet cloth and every scented wood and every ivory vessel and every vessel from precious wood and bronze and iron and marble

UST

¹²⁻¹³ They sell ornaments made of gold, silver, precious stones, and pearls. They sell expensive cloth made of fine linen and silk, expensive cloth that is dyed purple and crimson. They sell all kinds of rare wood, all kinds of items made of ivory, costly wood, bronze, iron, and marble. They sell cinnamon, spice, perfume, frankincense, wine, olive oil, fine flour, and grain. They sell cattle, sheep, horses, and chariots. They even sell human beings as slaves.

Revelation 18:13

cinnamon (ULT)

Cinnamon is a spice that smells nice and comes from the bark of a certain kind of tree.

spice (ULT)

Spice is a substance used to add flavor to food or a good smell to oil.

Translation Words - ULT

- incense
- myrrh
- oil
- souls
- frankincense
- wine
- wheat
- cattle
- sheep
- horses
- chariots

Translation Words - UST

- soul, self, person
- chariot, charioteers
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- frankincense
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- incense
- oil
- oil
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- wheat
- wine, wineskin, new wine

ULT

13 and cinnamon and spice and incense and myrrh and frankincense and wine and oil and fine flour and wheat and cattle and sheep and horses and chariots and slaves and souls of men.

UST

12-13 They sell ornaments made of gold, silver, precious stones, and pearls. They sell expensive cloth made of fine linen and silk, expensive cloth that is dyed purple and crimson. They sell all kinds of rare wood, all kinds of items made of ivory, costly wood, bronze, iron, and marble. They sell cinnamon, spice, perfume, frankincense, wine, olive oil, fine flour, and grain. They sell cattle, sheep, horses, and chariots. They even sell human beings as slaves.

Revelation 18:14

autumn fruit (ULT)

good things (UST)

The **autumn fruit** refers to fruit that ripens in the fall. Here, it is a metaphor for “result” or “outcome.” Alternate translation: “result” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the desire of your soul

Alternate translation: “what you wanted very much”

has perished from you, and they will certainly not be found any longer (ULT)

have vanished! They will be gone forever (UST)

Not to **be found** stands for not existing. Alternate translation: “has vanished, and they will never exist again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

has perished from you, and they will certainly not be found any longer (ULT)

have vanished! They will be gone forever (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this figure of speech, you can state it in active form. Alternate translation: “has vanished; you will never have them again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [autumn fruit](#)
- [desire](#)
- [of...soul](#)
- [has perished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good things](#)
- [people](#)
- [longed to have](#)
- [have vanished](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And your [autumn fruit](#), the [desire](#) of your [soul](#), has gone away from you, and all the luxury and the splendor [has perished](#) from you, and they will certainly not be found any longer.

UST

¹⁴ The [good things](#) you [people](#) [longed to have](#) are gone! All your luxurious and splendid possessions [have vanished](#)! They will be gone forever!

Revelation 18:15

because of the fear of her torment (ULT)
because...will be afraid that they will suffer
just as the city has. They (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract nouns **fear** and **torment**, you can express them as verbs. Alternate translation: “because they will be afraid of God tormenting them the way he torments her” or “because they will be afraid of suffering the way she is suffering” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

weeping and mourning loudly (ULT)
will weep and mourn (UST)

The merchants are the ones who will be **weeping and mourning loudly**. Alternate translation: “and the merchants will weep and mourn loudly”

Translation Words - ULT

- of...fear
- of...torment
- weeping
- mourning loudly

Translation Words - UST

- will be afraid
- they will suffer just as the city has
- will weep
- mourn

ULT

¹⁵ The merchants of these things who became rich will stand at a distance from her because of the [fear](#) of her [torment](#), [weeping](#) and [mourning loudly](#),

UST

¹⁵ The merchants who sold these things and who had become rich will stand far away because they [will be afraid](#) that [they will suffer just as the city has](#). They [will weep](#) and [mourn](#),

Revelation 18:16

to the great city— having been dressed in fine linen (ULT)

to that great city! That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes made of fine linen cloth (UST)

Throughout this chapter, Babylon is spoken of as if it were a woman. Alternate translation: “the great city, which was like a woman dressed in fine linen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to the great city— having been dressed in fine linen (ULT)

to that great city! That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes made of fine linen cloth (UST)

The merchants speak of Babylon as being **dressed in fine linen** because its people were dressed in fine linen. Alternate translation: “the great city, whose women were dressed in fine linen” (See: [Metonymy](#))

having been dressed in fine linen (ULT)

That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes made of fine linen cloth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “that wore fine linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

adorned with gold (ULT)

adorned with gold (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “adorned herself with gold” or “adorned themselves with gold” or “wore gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

precious stones (ULT)

precious stones (UST)

Alternate translation: “valuable gems” or “treasured gems”

pearls (ULT)

pearls (UST)

Pearls are beautiful and valuable white beads that are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. See how you translated this in [Revelation 17:4](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [woe](#)

ULT

¹⁶ saying, “[Woe](#), [woe](#) to the great city— [having been dressed](#) in fine linen and [purple](#) and scarlet and adorned with [gold](#) and [precious](#) stones and pearls—

UST

¹⁶ and they will say, “[Terrible things](#) [have happened](#) to that great city! [That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes](#) made of fine linen cloth and [expensive cloth dyed purple](#) and crimson, and adorned with [gold](#), [precious](#) stones, and pearls.

- having been dressed
- purple
- gold
- precious

Translation Words - UST

- Terrible things have happened
- Terrible things have happened
- That city was like a woman, dressed in clothes
- expensive cloth dyed purple
- gold
- precious

Revelation 18:17

work the sea (ULT) who earn their living by traveling on the ocean (UST)

The phrase **work the sea** refers to what they do on the sea.
Alternate translation: “who travel on the sea to make their living” or
“who sail on the sea to different places in order to trade things” (See:
[Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...hour](#)
- [has been destroyed](#)
- [work](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [suddenly and swiftly](#)
- [God has destroyed](#)
- [who earn their living by traveling](#)

ULT

¹⁷ for in one [hour](#) such great wealth [has been destroyed](#).” And every ship’s captain and all who sail to a place and sailors and as many as [work](#) the sea stood at a distance

UST

¹⁷ But [suddenly and swiftly God has destroyed](#) all these expensive things.” Every ship’s captain, all people who travel by ship, all sailors, and all others [who earn their living by traveling](#) on the ocean will stand far away from the city.”

Revelation 18:18

What city {is} like the great city (ULT)
No other city has ever been like that great city (UST)

This question shows the people the importance of the **city** of Babylon. If your readers would misunderstand this question, you could translate it as a statement. Alternate translation: "No other city is like the great city, Babylon!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were crying out
- is} like

Translation Words - UST

- they see the smoke of the fire that is burning there, they will shout
- like

ULT

¹⁸ and were crying out, seeing the smoke of her burning, saying, "What city {is} like the great city?"

UST

¹⁸ When they see the smoke of the fire that is burning there, they will shout, "No other city has ever been like that great city!"

Revelation 18:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- dust
- heads
- cried out
- weeping
- mourning
- Woe
- woe
- in...hour
- she was destroyed

Translation Words - UST

- dust
- heads to show that they are sad
- they will shout
- weep
- mourn
- Terrible things have happened
- Terrible things have happened
- God has...destroyed that city
- suddenly and swiftly

ULT

¹⁹ And they threw dust on their heads and cried out, weeping and mourning, saying, "Woe, woe to the great city in which all who have {their} ships in the sea became rich from her wealth, for in one hour she was destroyed."

UST

¹⁹ They will throw dust on their heads to show that they are sad, and they will shout, weep, and mourn. They will say, "Terrible things have happened to Babylon. That city made many people rich, the people who had ships that sail on the ocean in order to sell their expensive things. God has suddenly and swiftly destroyed that city!"

Revelation 18:20

God has pronounced your judgment against her (ULT)

rejoice. You must rejoice; God has justly punished the people there...they acted so terribly toward you (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand the abstract noun **judgment**, you can express it with the verb "judge." Alternate translation: "God has judged her for you" or "God has judged her because of the bad things she did to you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [O heaven](#)
- [saints](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [has pronounced](#)
- [judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [You who live in heaven](#)
- [You who are God's people](#)
- [including you apostles](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [rejoice. You must rejoice; God](#)
- [has justly punished](#)
- [they acted so terribly](#)

ULT

²⁰ "Rejoice over her, [O heaven](#), and [saints](#) and [apostles](#) and [prophets](#), for [God has pronounced](#) your [judgment](#) against her!"

UST

²⁰ Then someone spoke from heaven saying, "[You who live in heaven](#), rejoice over what has happened to Babylon! [You who are God's people, including you apostles and prophets, rejoice. You must rejoice; God has justly punished the people there because they acted so terribly toward you!](#)"

Revelation 18:21

Connecting Statement:

Another angel begins to speak about Babylon. This is a different angel than the ones who have spoken previously.

a great millstone (ULT)

a large stone for grinding grain (UST)

A **millstone** large round stone used to crush grain.

Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence and will certainly not be seen anymore (ULT)

You people in the great city of Babylon, God will throw down your city so that it will disappear...that stone disappeared in the ocean! Your city will be gone forever (UST)

To be **thrown down** and **not be seen anymore** speaks of complete destruction of the **city**. Alternate translation: "Babylon will be completely destroyed and will no longer exist" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Babylon, the great city, will be thrown down with violence and will certainly not be seen anymore (ULT)

You people in the great city of Babylon, God will throw down your city so that it will disappear...that stone disappeared in the ocean! Your city will be gone forever (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will violently throw down Babylon, the great city, and it will no longer exist" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will certainly not be seen anymore (ULT)
so that it will disappear...forever (UST)

Not being **seen** here means that it will not exist. Alternate translation: "it will not exist anymore" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- mighty
- great
- angel
- like
- Babylon

Translation Words - UST

- mighty

ULT

²¹ And one **mighty angel** took up a stone **like** a **great** millstone and threw it into the sea, saying, "In this way, **Babylon**, the great city, will be thrown down with violence and will certainly not be seen anymore,

UST

²¹ Then a **mighty angel** picked up a boulder **the size of** a **large** stone for grinding grain, and he threw it into the ocean. Then he said, "**You people in the great city of Babylon**, God will throw down **your** city so that it will disappear just as that stone disappeared in the ocean! Your city will be gone forever!

- large
- a...angel
- the size of
- You people in the...city of Babylon...your

Revelation 18:22

the sound made by harpists and musicians and flute players and trumpeters will certainly not be heard anymore in you (ULT)
In your city...anyone playing harps...singing, playing flutes, or blowing trumpets. There will no longer be any skilled workers making things (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “no one in your city will ever again hear the sound that harpists, musicians, flute players, and trumpeters make” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in you (ULT)
In your city...be any skilled workers making things (UST)

The angel speaks as if Babylon were there listening to him. Alternate translation: “in Babylon” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

will certainly not be heard anymore in you (ULT)
In your city...There will no longer be any skilled workers making things (UST)

Not being **heard** here means that they will not be there. Alternate translation: “they will not be in your city anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))

every craftsman will certainly not be found in you (ULT)
In your city...there will never again be...be any skilled workers making things...There will never again be people grinding grain at the mills (UST)

Not being **found** there means that they will not be there. Alternate translation: “no craftsman of any kind will be in your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sound of a mill will certainly not be heard anymore in you (ULT)
never again be people grinding grain at the mills (UST)

The sound of something not being **heard** means that no one will make that sound. Alternate translation: “no one will use a mill in your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sound](#)
- [made by harpists](#)
- [flute players](#)
- [trumpeters](#)

ULT

²² and [the sound made by harpists](#) and musicians and [flute players](#) and [trumpeters](#) will certainly not be heard anymore in you, and every craftsman will certainly not be found in you anymore, and the sound of a mill will certainly not be heard anymore in you.

UST

²² In your city, there will never again be [anyone playing harps](#), singing, [playing flutes](#), or [blowing trumpets](#). There will no longer be any skilled workers making things. There will never again be people grinding grain at the mills.

Translation Words - UST

- anyone playing harps
- anyone playing harps
- playing flutes
- blowing trumpets

Revelation 18:23

Connecting Statement:

The angel who threw the millstone finishes talking.

**the voices of the bridegroom and the bride
will certainly not be heard in you anymore
(ULT)**

**There will never again...be the happy voices of
any bridegroom...and his bride...merchants
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will ever again hear in Babylon the happy voices of a bridegroom and a bride” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**will certainly not be heard in you anymore
(ULT)**

There will never again...merchants (UST)

Not being **heard** here means that they will not be there. Alternate translation: “will not be in your city anymore” (See: [Metonymy](#))

your merchants were the princes of the earth (ULT)

your...merchants...were the most important men in the world (UST)

The angel speaks of important and powerful people as if they were **princes**. Alternate translation: “your merchants were like princes of the earth” or “your merchants were the most important men in the world” (See: [Metaphor](#))

all the nations were deceived by your sorcery (ULT)

You used witchcraft to deceive people of all groups of people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “you deceived the people of the nations with your magic spells” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the light
- of a lamp
- the voices
- of the bridegroom
- the bride
- of...earth
- nations
- were deceived
- sorcery

ULT

²³ And [the light of a lamp](#) will certainly not shine in you anymore, and [the voices of the bridegroom](#) and [the bride](#) will certainly not be heard in you anymore, for your merchants were the princes of the [earth](#), because all the [nations were deceived](#) by your [sorcery](#).

UST

²³ [No lamp](#) will ever again shine there. There will never again [be the happy voices of any bridegroom](#) and [his bride](#). God will destroy your city because your merchants were the most important men in the [world](#). You [used witchcraft to deceive](#) people of all [groups of people](#).

Translation Words - UST

- No lamp
- No lamp
- be the happy voices of any bridegroom
- be the happy voices of any bridegroom
- his bride
- world
- used witchcraft
- to deceive
- groups of people

Revelation 18:24

in her was found the blood of prophets and saints and of all those who have been killed on the earth (ULT)

You are...responsible for killing the prophets and others of God's people. Indeed, you are guilty of every murder committed on the earth (UST)

Here, **blood** being **found** means that the people of the city were guilty of killing people. Alternate translation: "in her is the guilt for the death of the prophets and saints, along with all the other people in the world who were killed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁴ And in her was found [the blood of prophets](#) and [saints](#) and of all those who have been killed on the [earth](#)." 18:2 ^[1]

UST

²⁴ You are also responsible for [killing the prophets](#) and [others of God's people](#). Indeed, you are guilty of every murder committed on the [earth](#)!"

in her was found the blood of prophets and saints and of all those who have been killed on the earth (ULT)

You are...responsible for killing the prophets and others of God's people. Indeed, you are guilty of every murder committed on the earth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Babylon is guilty of killing the prophets and believers and all the other people in the world who were killed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the blood](#)
- [of prophets](#)
- [saints](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [killing](#)
- [the prophets](#)
- [others of God's people](#)
- [earth](#)

Revelation 19

Revelation 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The beginning of chapter 19 concludes the topic of Babylon falling.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with verses 1-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Songs

The Book of Revelation often describes heaven as a place where people sing. They worship God with songs. This illustrates that heaven is a place where God is always worshiped. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Wedding celebration

The wedding celebration or feast is an important image in Scripture. Jewish culture often pictured paradise, or life with God after death, as a feast. Here, the wedding feast is for the Lamb, who is Jesus, and his bride, who is all his people.

Revelation 19:1

General Information:

This is the next part of John's vision. Here he describes the rejoicing in heaven over the fall of the great prostitute, who is the city of Babylon.

I heard (ULT)

I heard (UST)

Here, **I** refers to John.

Hallelujah (ULT)

Hallelujah (UST)

The word **Hallelujah** means "Praise God" or "Let us praise God."

Translation Words - ULT

- as if
- the...voice
- heaven
- saying
- Salvation
- glory
- power
- God

Translation Words - UST

- what sounded
- like
- heaven
- They were shouting things like
- He has saved us
- God
- is glorious
- mighty

ULT

¹ After these things I heard as if the loud voice of a large crowd in heaven saying, "Hallelujah! Salvation and glory and power to our God,

UST

¹ After these things I heard what sounded like a huge crowd in heaven. They were shouting things like, "Hallelujah! He has saved us! Our God is glorious and mighty!

Revelation 19:2

the great prostitute (ULT) the very evil city that was like a prostitute (UST)

Here John refers to the city of Babylon whose wicked people rule over all the people of the earth and lead them to worship false gods. He speaks of the wicked people of Babylon as if they were a **great prostitute**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

who was corrupting the earth (ULT) persuaded the other people of earth (UST)

Here, **the earth** is a metonym for its inhabitants. Alternate translation: "who corrupted the people of the earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the blood of his servants (ULT) for murdering his servants (UST)

Here, **the blood** is a metonym that represents murder. Alternate translation: "the murder of his servants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

from her hand (ULT) for murdering his servants (UST)

Here, **he** refers to Babylon. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- judgments
- he has judged
- are} true
- of...servants
- hand
- righteous
- prostitute
- was corrupting
- earth
- sexual immorality
- he has avenged
- blood

Translation Words - UST

- judges
- He has punished
- truly
- for murdering his servants
- for murdering his servants
- justly

ULT

² because his judgments {are} true and righteous; because he has judged the great prostitute who was corrupting the earth with her sexual immorality, and he has avenged the blood of his servants from her hand."

UST

² Praise him because he judges truly and justly! He has punished the very evil city that was like a prostitute because their people persuaded the other people of earth to act immorally as they did. Praise him because he has punished them for murdering his servants!"

- city that was like a prostitute
- persuaded the other people of
- earth
- to act immorally as they did
- Praise him because he has punished them
- for murdering his servants

Revelation 19:3

they spoke (ULT) saying (UST)

Here, **they** refers to the crowd of people in heaven.

Hallelujah (ULT) Hallelujah (UST)

The word **Hallelujah** means "Praise God" or "Let us praise God." See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:1](#).

smoke rises from her (ULT) smoke of the fire that is burning that city will rise (UST)

The word **her** refers to the city of Babylon, which is spoken of as if it were a prostitute. The **smoke** is from the fire that destroys the city. Alternate translation: "smoke rises from that city"

Translation Words - ULT

- forever
- and} ever

Translation Words - UST

- forever
- forever

ULT

³ And they spoke a second {time}:
"Hallelujah! And the smoke rises from
her forever {and} ever."

UST

³ The crowd shouted a second time,
saying, "Hallelujah! The smoke of the
fire that is burning that city will rise
forever!"

Revelation 19:4

the 24 elders (ULT)

The twenty-four elders (UST)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

the four living creatures (ULT)

the four living creatures (UST)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:6](#) Alternate translation: “the four living beings” or “the four living things”

who is seated on the throne (ULT)

who sits on the throne (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “who sat on the throne” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴ And the 24 [elders](#) and the four [living creatures fell down](#) and [worshiped God](#) who is seated on the [throne](#), saying, “[Amen](#). Hallelujah!”

UST

⁴ The twenty-four [elders](#) and the four [living creatures prostrated themselves](#) and [worshiped God](#), who sits on the [throne](#). They said: “[It is true!](#) Hallelujah!”

Translation Words - ULT

- [elders](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [fell down](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [Amen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [elders](#)
- [living creatures](#)
- [prostrated themselves](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [It is true](#)

Revelation 19:5

a voice came out from the throne (ULT)

Someone spoke...from the throne (UST)

Here John speaks of a **voice** as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "someone spoke from the throne" (See: [Personification](#))

Praise our God (ULT)

praise our God (UST)

Here, **our** refers to the speaker and all God's servants. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

those who fear him (ULT)

All you who honor him (UST)

Here, **fear** does not mean to be afraid of God, but to honor him. Alternate translation: "all you who honor him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the small and the great (ULT)

whether you are important or not, everyone praise him (UST)

The speaker uses the words **small** and **great** together to include all of God's people. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a voice
- throne
- Praise
- God
- servants
- who fear

Translation Words - UST

- Someone spoke
- from the throne
- servants
- praise
- God
- All you who honor

ULT

⁵ And a voice came out from the throne, saying, "Praise our God, all his servants, and those who fear him, the small and the great."

UST

⁵ Someone spoke from the throne and said, "All you who are his servants, praise our God! All you who honor him, whether you are important or not, everyone praise him!"

Revelation 19:6

**And I heard as if the sound of a great crowd,
and as if the sound of many waters, and as if
the loud sound of thunder (ULT)**

**Then I heard something like the noise of a
huge crowd of people, like the sound of a
huge waterfall, and like the sound of loud
claps of thunder (UST)**

John speaks of what he is hearing as if it were like the sound made by a very large **crowd** of people, a large body of rushing water, and very loud **thunder**. (See: [Simile](#))

Hallelujah (ULT)

Hallelujah (UST)

The word **Hallelujah** means “Praise God” or “Let us praise God.” See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:1](#).

For...the Lord (ULT)

reigns...Lord (UST)

Alternate translation: “Because the Lord”

Translation Words - ULT

- [as if](#)
- [as if](#) (2)
- [as if](#) (3)
- [the sound](#)
- [the sound](#) (2)
- [the...sound](#) (3)
- [Almighty](#)
- [reigns](#)
- [of...waters](#)
- [loud](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [something like](#)
- [like](#) (2)
- [like](#) (3)
- [the noise](#)
- [the sound](#) (2)
- [the sound of](#) (3)
- [God](#)
- [rules over everything](#)
- [reigns](#)

ULT

⁶ And I heard [as if the sound](#) of a great crowd, and [as if the sound](#) of many [waters](#), and [as if the loud sound](#) of thunder, saying, “Hallelujah! For [the Lord](#) our [God Almighty](#) reigns.

UST

⁶ Then I heard [something like the noise](#) of a huge crowd of people, [like the sound of a huge waterfall](#), and [like the sound of loud claps](#) of thunder. They were shouting: “Hallelujah! Our [Lord God](#), who [rules over everything](#), [reigns](#)!

- of a...waterfall
- loud claps
- Lord

Revelation 19:7

Connecting Statement:

The voice of the crowd from the previous verse continues speaking.

Let us rejoice (ULT)

We should rejoice (UST)

Here, **us** refers to all of God's servants.

give him the glory (ULT)

we should honor him (UST)

Alternate translation: "give God the glory" or "honor God"

the wedding celebration of the Lamb...his bride has made herself ready (ULT)

Lamb to be united with...the...woman he is marrying. She has made herself ready (UST)

Here John speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people together forever as if it were a **wedding celebration** and his people were **his bride**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the Lamb (ULT)

Lamb (UST)

A lamb is a young sheep. Here, **the Lamb** used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

has come (ULT)

it is now time for the (UST)

Existing in the present is spoken of as having **come**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

his bride has made herself ready (ULT)

the...woman he is marrying. She has made herself ready (UST)

John speaks of God's people as if they were a **bride** who has gotten **herself ready** for her wedding. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Let us rejoice](#)
- [exult](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of...Lamb](#)
- [bride](#)

ULT

⁷ [Let us rejoice](#) and [exult](#) and give him the [glory](#), because the wedding celebration of the [Lamb](#) has come, and his [bride](#) has made herself ready.

UST

⁷ [We should rejoice](#), [we should be extremely glad](#), and [we should honor](#) him because it is now time for the [Lamb](#) to be united with the [woman](#) he is marrying. She has made herself ready.

Translation Words - UST

- We should rejoice
- we should be extremely glad
- we should honor
- Lamb
- woman

Revelation 19:8

it had been given to her that she might be dressed in bright {and} clean fine linen (ULT)
God has permitted her to dress herself in fine linen, bright...clean (UST)

Here, **her** and **she** refer to the people of God. John speaks of the righteous acts of God's people as if they were a bright and clean dress that a bride wears on her wedding day. Alternate translation: "and it was permitted to them to wear a dress of bright and clean fine linen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

it had been given to her that she might be dressed in bright {and} clean fine linen (ULT)
God has permitted her to dress herself in fine linen, bright...clean (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God allowed her to wear a dress of bright and clean fine linen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁸ And it had been given to her that [she might be dressed](#) in bright {and} [clean fine linen](#)" (for the fine linen is the [righteous acts](#) of the [saints](#)).

UST

⁸ God has permitted her to [dress herself](#) in fine linen, bright and [clean](#)." Fine, bright, and clean linen represents the [righteous](#) actions of [God's people](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [she might be dressed](#)
- [and} clean](#)
- [righteous acts](#)
- [of...saints](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dress herself](#)
- [clean](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [God's people](#)

Revelation 19:9

General Information:

An angel begins to speak to John. This is likely the same angel who began to speak to John in [Revelation 17:1](#).

those...who are invited (ULT)
the people whom...God invites (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the people whom God invites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the wedding supper of the Lamb (ULT)
the feast when the Lamb marries his wife (UST)

Here the angel speaks of the joining of Jesus and his people forever as if it were a **wedding supper**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {are
- supper
- of...Lamb
- true
- of God

Translation Words - UST

- how fortunate are
- feast
- Lamb
- God declares
- true

ULT

⁹ And he says to me, "Write: Blessed {are} those who are invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb," and he says to me, "These are true words of God."

UST

⁹ Then the angel said to me, "Write this: how fortunate are the people whom God invites to the feast when the Lamb marries his wife!" He also said to me: "These words that God declares are true!"

Revelation 19:10

I fell down at his feet (ULT)
I immediately prostrated myself...at his feet (UST)

This means that John purposely lay on the ground and stretched himself out in reverence or submission. This action was an important part of worship, to show respect and willingness to serve. See note in [Revelation 19:3](#).

feet...your...brothers (ULT)
feet...just...your...fellow servant (UST)

Here the word **brothers** here refers to all believers, male and female.

who hold the testimony of Jesus (ULT)
those who speak the truth about Jesus (UST)

Here holding stands for believing in or announcing. Alternate translation: "who speak the truth about Jesus" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy (ULT)
because it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus (UST)

Here, **the spirit of prophecy** refers to God's Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "for it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I fell down
- to worship
- Worship
- of prophecy
- brothers
- testimony
- testimony
- of Jesus
- of Jesus (2)
- God
- spirit

Translation Words - UST

- I immediately prostrated myself
- in order to worship
- is the one you should worship
- just...fellow servant
- speak the truth about
- truth about

ULT

¹⁰ And I fell down at his feet to worship him, but he says to me, "Do not do that! I am a fellow servant of you and your brothers who hold the testimony of Jesus. Worship God, for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

UST

¹⁰ I immediately prostrated myself at his feet in order to worship him. But he said to me, "Do not worship me! I am just your fellow servant and the fellow servant of your fellow believers, those who speak the truth about Jesus. God is the one you should worship because it is the Spirit of God who gives people the power to speak the truth about Jesus!"

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [Spirit of God](#)
- [power to speak](#)

Revelation 19:11

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new vision. John begins to describe a rider on a white horse.

And I saw heaven having been opened (ULT) Then I saw the heavens open up (UST)

This imagery is used to signify the beginning of a new vision. See how you translated this idea in [Revelation 4:1](#) and [Revelation 11:19](#) and [Revelation 15:5](#).

the one riding on it (ULT) the one who was riding on the horse (UST)

The rider is Jesus.

he judges and wages war in righteousness (ULT) He judges all people according...to...what is right; he fights in justice against his enemies (UST)

Here, **righteousness** refers to what is right. Alternate translation: "he judges all people and wages war according to what is right" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [a...horse](#)
- [is called](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [true](#)
- [he judges](#)
- [righteousness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heavens](#)
- [a...horse](#)
- [is called](#)
- [Trustworthy](#)
- [Genuine](#)
- [He judges all people](#)
- [according...what is right](#)

ULT

11 And I saw [heaven](#) having been opened, and behold, a white [horse](#), and the one riding on it [is called faithful](#) and [true](#), and [he judges](#) and wages war in [righteousness](#).

UST

11 Then I saw the [heavens](#) open up, and I was surprised to see a white [horse](#). Jesus, the one who was riding on the horse, [is called "Trustworthy and Genuine."](#) [He judges all people according to what is right](#); he fights in justice against his enemies.

Revelation 19:12

eyes...his...eyes...are like} a fiery flame (ULT)
eyes...His...eyes...shone like a flame of fire (UST)

John speaks of the rider's **eyes** as if they shone like a **flame** of fire.
 (See: [Simile](#))

having a name written (ULT)
There were...A name had been written on him (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "and someone has written a name on him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that no one knows except himself (ULT)
Only he knows the meaning of that name (UST)

Here, **except himself** means that he is the only one. Alternate translation: "on him, and only he knows the meaning of that name" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fiery](#)
- [head](#)
- [are...crowns](#)
- [a name](#)
- [knows](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of fire](#)
- [royal crowns](#)
- [head](#)
- [A name](#)
- [knows...meaning of that name](#)

ULT

¹² Now his eyes {are like} a [fiery](#) flame, and on his [head](#) {are} many [crowns](#), having [a name](#) written that no one [knows](#) except himself.

UST

¹² His eyes shone like a flame [of fire](#). There were many [royal crowns](#) on his [head](#). [A name](#) had been written on him. Only he [knows](#) the [meaning of that name](#).

Revelation 19:13

he is clothed in a robe dipped in blood (ULT)
The...cloak...he was wearing...was drenched with blood (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "and blood had covered his robe"
 (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his name is called the Word of God (ULT)
His name is...The Message of God (UST)

Here, **Word of God** is a metonym for Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "his name is called the Message of God"
 (See: [Metonymy](#))

his name is called the Word of God (ULT)
His name is...The Message of God (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "his name is also the Word of God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹³ And [he is clothed in a robe dipped in blood](#), and his [name is called the Word of God](#).

UST

¹³ The [cloak he was wearing](#) was drenched [with blood](#). His [name is](#) also "The [Message of God](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [he is clothed in a robe](#)
- [a robe](#)
- [in blood](#)
- [name](#)
- [is called](#)
- [Word of God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cloak](#)
- [The...cloak...he was wearing](#)
- [with blood](#)
- [name](#)
- [is](#)
- [Message of God](#)

Revelation 19:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- horses
- dressed in
- clean

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- horses
- They were wearing clothes
- clean

ULT

¹⁴ And the armies of heaven were following him on white horses, dressed in fine linen, white and clean.

UST

¹⁴ The armies of heaven were following him. They were riding on white horses. They were wearing clothes made of clean white linen.

Revelation 19:15

from his mouth goes out a sharp sword (ULT)
A sharp sword extends...from...his mouth (UST)

The **sword** blade was sticking out of **his mouth**. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 1:16](#).

he might strike the nations (ULT)
he will strike the rebellious people groups (UST)

Alternate translation: "he could destroy the nations" or "he could bring the nations under his control"

will shepherd them with an iron rod (ULT)
himself will rule them powerfully as though he had an iron rod (UST)

John speaks of the rider's power as if he were ruling with **an iron rod**. See how you translated this in [Revelation 12:5](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

he tramples the winepress of the wrath of the fury of God Almighty (ULT)
He...will crush his enemies as a person crushes grapes in a winepress. He will do this for God, who rules over everything and who is furiously angry with them because of their sins (UST)

John speaks of the rider's destroying his enemies as if they were grapes that a person **tramples** in a **winepress**. Alternate translation: "he crushes his enemies according to the wrath of God Almighty, just as a person crushes grapes in a winepress" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he tramples the winepress of the wrath of the fury of God Almighty (ULT)
He...will crush his enemies as a person crushes grapes in a winepress. He will do this for God, who rules over everything and who is furiously angry with them because of their sins (UST)

Here, **wrath** refers to God's punishment of evil persons. Alternate translation: "he crushes his enemies according to the judgment of God Almighty" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...sword
- nations
- will shepherd
- an...rod
- winepress

ULT

¹⁵ And from his mouth goes out a sharp **sword** so that with it he might strike the **nations**, and he **will shepherd** them with an iron **rod**, and he tramples the **winepress** of the **wrath** of the **fury** of God Almighty.

UST

¹⁵ A sharp **sword** extends from his mouth; with it he will strike the **rebellious people groups**. He himself **will rule them powerfully as though he had** an iron **rod**. He will crush **his enemies as a person crushes grapes in a winepress**. He will do this for God, **who rules over everything and who is furiously angry with them because of their sins**.

- winepress
- of...wrath
- of...fury
- of God
- Almighty

Translation Words - UST

- A...sword
- rebellious people groups
- will rule them powerfully as though he had
- an...rod
- his enemies as a person crushes grapes in a winepress
- He will do this for God
- who rules over everything
- and who is furiously
- and who is furiously
- angry with them because of their sins

Revelation 19:16

he has a name written on {his} robe and on his thigh (ULT)

On...his cloak over his thigh a name had been written (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone has written a name on his robe and thigh:" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a name
- robe
- King
- of kings
- Lord
- of lords

Translation Words - UST

- his cloak
- a name
- King who rules over all other kings
- King who rules over all other kings
- Lord who rules over all other lords
- Lord who rules over all other lords

ULT

¹⁶ And he has a name written on {his} robe and on his thigh: "King of kings and Lord of lords."

UST

¹⁶ On his cloak over his thigh a name had been written: "King who rules over all other kings and Lord who rules over all other lords."

Revelation 19:17

I saw one angel standing in the sun (ULT) I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun (UST)

Here, **the sun** is a metonym for the light of the sun. Alternate translation: "Then I saw an angel standing in the light of the sun" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [he called out](#)
- [a...voice](#)
- [be gathered together](#)
- [supper](#)
- [of God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [He called](#)
- [loudly](#)
- [gather](#)
- [feast](#)
- [that God is providing for you](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And I saw one [angel](#) standing in the sun, and [he called out](#) in a loud [voice](#), saying to all the birds flying in midheaven, "Come, [be gathered together](#) for the great [supper of God](#),

UST

¹⁷ Then I saw an [angel](#) standing in the light of the sun. [He called loudly](#) to all the flesh-eating birds flying high in the sky, "Come and [gather](#) for the large [feast that God is providing for you](#)!

Revelation 19:18

both free and slaves—and small and great (ULT)

whether they were free or slave, important or not. All kinds (UST)

The angel uses these two sets of opposite-meaning words together to refer to all people. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the flesh
- the flesh (2)
- the flesh (3)
- the flesh (4)
- the flesh (5)
- of kings
- slaves
- of commanders
- of mighty men
- of horses
- free

Translation Words - UST

- the flesh of all God's enemies who are dead
- the flesh (2)
- of people who fought powerfully (3)
- of horses (4)
- the flesh (5)
- slave
- of kings
- of army commanders
- of people who fought powerfully
- of horses
- whether they were free

ULT

¹⁸ so that you might eat the flesh of kings and the flesh of commanders and the flesh of mighty men and the flesh of horses and of those sitting on them and the flesh of all {men}—both free and slaves—and small and great.”

UST

¹⁸ Come and eat the flesh of all God's enemies who are dead—the flesh of kings, of army commanders, of people who fought powerfully, of horses and of the soldiers who rode them, and the flesh of all other kinds of people, whether they were free or slave, important or not. All kinds!”

Revelation 19:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- beast
- kings
- of...earth
- having been gathered
- horse

Translation Words - UST

- beast
- kings
- earth
- they had gathered together
- horse

ULT

¹⁹ And I saw the **beast** and the **kings** of the **earth** and their armies **having been gathered** to make war with the one sitting on the **horse** and with his army.

UST

¹⁹ Then I saw the **beast** and the **kings** of **earth** with their armies; **they had gathered together** to fight against the rider on the **horse** and his army.

Revelation 19:20

the beast was captured, and with him the false prophet (ULT)
captured the beast and the false prophet (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the rider on the white horse captured the beast and the false prophet” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the...mark of the beast (ULT)
the...the beast’s...mark on their foreheads (UST)

The **mark of the beast** was an identifying mark that indicated that the person who received it worshiped the beast. See how you translated this in [Revelation 13:17](#).

The two were thrown alive (ULT)
Then God threw the beast and the false prophet alive (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God threw the beast and the false prophet alive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by...the...the lake...of fire...that burns...sulfur (ULT)
By...the...the lake...fire that burns...sulfur (UST)

Alternate translation: “place full of fire that burns with sulfur”

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)
- [of...beast](#)
- [was captured](#)
- [of fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [false prophet](#)
- [signs](#)
- [he deceived](#)
- [who had received](#)
- [who worshiped](#)
- [image](#)
- [alive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [captured](#)
- [beast](#)

ULT

²⁰ And the [beast was captured](#), and with him the [false prophet](#) who performed the [signs](#) before him, by which [he deceived](#) those [who had received](#) the mark of the [beast](#) and [who worshiped](#) his [image](#). The two were thrown [alive](#) into the lake [of fire](#) that burns with [sulfur](#).

UST

²⁰ The rider on the white horse [captured](#) the [beast](#) and the [false prophet](#). The false prophet is the one who had performed [miracles](#) in the beast’s presence. By doing that [he had deceived](#) the people who had [accepted](#) the [beast’s](#) mark on their foreheads and who [had worshiped](#) its [image](#). Then God threw the beast and the false prophet [alive](#) into the lake of [fire](#) that burns with [sulfur](#).

- beast's
- fire
- sulfur
- the false prophet
- miracles
- he had deceived
- accepted
- had worshiped
- image
- alive

Revelation 19:21

the rest were killed by the sword of the one who sat on the horse, {the sword} that came out from his mouth (ULT)

The rider on the horse killed...the...rest of their armies with his sword, the one that extended from his mouth (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “the rider of the horse killed the remainder of the beast’s armies with the sword that extended from his mouth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the sword...the...of the one...came out from his...mouth (ULT)

his sword...The...his...extended...from his mouth (UST)

The **sword** blade was sticking out of **his mouth**. The sword itself was not in motion. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 1:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- sword
- horse
- flesh

Translation Words - UST

- horse
- sword
- flesh

ULT

²¹ And the rest were killed by the sword of the one who sat on the horse, {the sword} that came out from his mouth, and all the birds were filled with their flesh.

UST

²¹ The rider on the horse killed the rest of their armies with his sword, the one that extended from his mouth. All the birds gorged themselves on the flesh of the people and horses that he had killed.

Revelation 20

Revelation 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The thousand-year reign of Christ

In this chapter, Jesus is said to reign for a thousand years, at the same time that Satan is bound. Scholars are divided over whether this refers to a future period of time or to Jesus reigning now from heaven. It is not necessary to understand this passage in order to translate it accurately. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Final rebellion

This chapter also describes what happens after the thousand years are ended. During this time, Satan and many people will attempt to rebel against Jesus. This will result in God's ultimate and final victory over sin and evil. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

Great white throne

This chapter ends with God judging all people who ever lived. God separates people who believe in Jesus from those who do not believe in him. (See: [judge](#), [judgment](#) and [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [faith](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Book of Life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Hades and the lake of fire

These appear to be two distinct places. The translator may wish to do further research to determine how to translate these two places differently. They should not be made the same as each other in translation. (See: [hell](#), [lake of fire](#))

Revelation 20:1

General Information:

John begins to describe a vision of an angel throwing the devil into the bottomless pit.

And I saw (ULT)

Then I saw (UST)

Here, **I** refers to John.

to the abyss (ULT)

to the deep, dark pit (UST)

The **abyss** is an extremely deep narrow hole. This could mean: (1) the pit has no bottom; it continues to go down further forever. (2) the pit is so deep that it is as if it had no bottom. See how you translated this in [Revelation 9:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [an angel](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [to...abyss](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [an angel](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [deep, dark pit](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

¹ And I saw [an angel](#) coming down from [heaven](#) having the key to the [abyss](#) and a great chain in his [hand](#).

UST

¹ Then I saw [an angel](#) coming down from [heaven](#). He had the key to the [deep, dark pit](#), and he was carrying a large chain in his [hand](#).

Revelation 20:2

of the dragon (ULT) the dragon (UST)

The **dragon** was a large, fierce reptile, like a lizard. For Jewish people, it was a symbol of evil and chaos. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he took hold](#)
- [serpent](#)
- [the devil](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [bound](#)
- [for...years](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He seized](#)
- [serpent](#)
- [devil](#)
- [that...Satan](#)
- [bound](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

² And [he took hold](#) of the dragon, the ancient [serpent](#), which is [the devil](#) and [Satan](#), and [bound](#) him for 1,000 [years](#).

UST

² [He seized](#) the dragon. That dragon is the ancient [serpent](#), the [devil](#), that is, [Satan](#). The angel [bound](#) him with the chain. That chain could not be loosed for one thousand [years](#).

Revelation 20:3

sealed {it} over him (ULT) locked it...sealed it (UST)

The angel **sealed** the abyss to keep anyone from opening it.
Alternate translation: "sealed it to prevent anyone from opening it"
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he would not deceive...the nations (ULT) to prevent anyone from opening it. He did that in order that Satan might no...deceive... all the many groups of people (UST)

Here, **nations** is a metonym for the people of the earth. Alternate translation: "he would not deceive the people-groups" (See: [Metonymy](#))

it is necessary for him to be released (ULT) Satan must go free (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will command the angel to free him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³ And he threw him into the [abyss](#) and shut {it} and [sealed {it}](#) over him so that [he would](#) not [deceive](#) the [nations](#) anymore until the 1,000 [years](#) would be completed. After that, it is necessary for him [to be released for a short time](#).

UST

³ The angel threw him into the [deep, dark pit](#). He shut the door of the pit, locked it, and [sealed it](#) to prevent anyone from opening it. He did that in order that Satan might no longer [deceive all the many groups of people](#), until those one thousand [years](#) are ended. After that time, Satan must [go free](#) for a short [time in order that he can do what God has planned](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [abyss](#)
- [sealed {it}](#)
- [he would...deceive](#)
- [nations](#)
- [years](#)
- [to be released](#)
- [for a...time](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [deep, dark pit](#)
- [sealed it](#)
- [deceive](#)
- [all...many groups of people](#)
- [years](#)
- [go free](#)
- [time in order that he can do what God has planned](#)

Revelation 20:4

General Information:

This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing thrones and the souls of believers.

judgment was given to them (ULT) God gave them...authority to judge (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God had given authority to them to judge" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of those who had been beheaded (ULT) of other people whose heads had been cut off (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "whose heads others had cut off" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the testimony about Jesus and for the word of God

Alternate translation: "because they had spoken the truth about Jesus and about the word of God"

because of the word of God (ULT) and...had declared God's message (UST)

Here, **the word of God** is a metonym for the message from God. Alternate translation: "for what they taught about the scriptures" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they came to life (ULT) They became alive again (UST)

Alternate translation: "they came back to life" or "they became alive again"

Translation Words - ULT

- thrones
- judgment
- did...receive
- hand
- they came to life
- reigned
- Christ
- for...years
- souls

ULT

⁴ And I saw [thrones](#), and they sat on them, and [judgment](#) was given to them, both the [souls](#) of those who had been beheaded for the [testimony of Jesus](#) and because of the [word of God](#), and those [who did](#) not [worship](#) the [beast](#) nor his [image](#) and did not [receive](#) the mark on {their} forehead or on their [hand](#); and [they came to life](#) and [reigned](#) with [Christ](#) for 1,000 [years](#).

UST

⁴ I saw [thrones](#) on which people were sitting. God gave them [authority to judge](#). I also saw the [souls](#) of other people whose heads had been cut off because [they had spoken](#) the [truth about Jesus](#) and [had declared God's message](#). They were people who had refused to [worship](#) the [beast](#) or its [image](#), and [who had](#) not [allowed the beast's servants to put](#) the beast's mark on them, either on their foreheads or on their [hands](#). [They became alive again](#), and [they ruled](#) with the [Messiah](#) during those one thousand [years](#).

- testimony
- of Jesus
- word of God
- who did...worship
- beast
- image

Translation Words - UST

- thrones
- authority to judge
- beast
- image
- who had...allowed the beast's servants to put
- hands
- They became alive again
- they ruled
- Messiah
- years
- souls
- they had spoken...truth about
- Jesus
- had declared...God's...message
- to worship

Revelation 20:5

The rest of the dead (ULT)

The rest of the believers who had died (UST)

Alternate translation: "All of the other dead people"

the 1,000 years were ended (ULT) after those one thousand years (UST)

Alternate translation: "the end of the thousand years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...dead
- did...come to life
- years
- resurrection

Translation Words - UST

- God caused dead people to live again
- believers who had died
- did...live again
- years

ULT

⁵ (The rest of the [dead](#) did not [come to life](#) until the 1,000 [years](#) were ended.)
This {is} the first [resurrection](#).

UST

⁵ They were the ones who lived again the first time that [God caused dead people to live again](#). The rest of the [believers who had died](#) did not [live again](#) until after those one thousand years.

Revelation 20:6

Over these the second death has no power (ULT)

They will not die a second time (UST)

Here John describes **the second death** as a person with power. Alternate translation: "These people will not experience the second death" (See: [Personification](#))

the second death (ULT)
will not die a second time (UST)

The **second death** is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14](#) and [Revelation 21:8](#). See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:11](#). Alternate translation: "the final death in the lake of fire" or "dying a second time" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed
- holy
- resurrection
- death
- power
- priests
- of God
- of Christ
- will reign
- for...years

Translation Words - UST

- God will be pleased with
- live again
- years
- God will consider them holy
- will not die
- will not die
- priests
- God...the Messiah
- Messiah
- will rule

ULT

⁶ Blessed and holy {is} the one who has a part in the first resurrection! Over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with him for 1,000 years.

UST

⁶ God will be pleased with those who live again this first time. God will consider them holy. They will not die a second time. Instead, they will be priests who serve God and the Messiah, and they will rule with the Messiah during those one thousand years.

Revelation 20:7

Satan will be released from his prison (ULT) God will release Satan from his prison (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will release Satan from his prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [years](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [prison](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [years](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [prison](#)

ULT

⁷ But when the 1,000 [years](#) are completed, [Satan](#) will be released from his [prison](#)

UST

⁷ When the one thousand [years](#) are ended, God will release [Satan](#) from his [prison](#).

Revelation 20:8

The number of them {will be} like the sand of the sea (ULT)

There will be so many of them fighting against God's people that no one will be able to count them, just as no one can count the grains of sand on the ocean shore (UST)

The comparison to **the sand of the sea** emphasizes the extremely large **number** of soldiers in Satan's army. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to deceive
- nations
- of...earth
- to gather...together
- will be} like

Translation Words - UST

- to deceive
- rebellious people groups
- earth
- Satan will gather
- just as

ULT

⁸ and will go out to deceive the nations that {are} at the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to gather them together to the battle. The number of them {will be} like the sand of the sea.

UST

⁸ Satan will go out to deceive the rebellious people groups all over the earth. These are the nations that the prophet Ezekiel called Gog and Magog. Satan will gather them to fight against God's people. There will be so many of them fighting against God's people that no one will be able to count them, just as no one can count the grains of sand on the ocean shore.

Revelation 20:9

they went up (ULT)

They will march (UST)

Alternate translation: "Satan's army went up"

the beloved city

Here, **the beloved city** refers to Jerusalem.

fire came down from heaven and devoured them (ULT)

Then God will send...fire...down...from heaven, and it will burn them up (UST)

Here John speaks of **fire** as if it were alive. Alternate translation: "God sent fire from heaven to burn them up" (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

⁹ And they went up on the broad plain of the [earth](#) and surrounded the camp of the [saints](#) and the [beloved](#) city, but [fire](#) came down from [heaven](#) and [devoured](#) them.

UST

⁹ They will march over the whole [earth](#) and will surround the camp of [God's people](#) in Jerusalem, the city that [God loves](#). Then God will send [fire](#) down [from heaven](#), and [it will burn](#) them [up](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...earth](#)
- [of...saints](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [fire](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [devoured](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth](#)
- [God's people](#)
- [God loves](#)
- [fire](#)
- [from heaven](#)
- [it will burn...up](#)

Revelation 20:10

the devil who deceived them was thrown into (ULT)

God will throw...the...devil, who had deceived those people, into (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God threw the devil, who had deceived them, into" or "God's angel threw the devil, who had deceived them, into" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

And...the lake of fire...sulfur (ULT)
the...the lake of burning...sulfur (UST)

See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:20](#). Alternate translation: "the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur"

they will be tormented (ULT)
they will...suffer severely (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God will torment them" or "the fire will torment them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- devil
- who deceived
- of fire
- sulfur
- beast
- false prophet
- they will be tormented
- day
- forever
- and} ever

Translation Words - UST

- devil
- had deceived
- burning
- sulfur
- beast
- false prophet
- they will...suffer severely
- continually
- forever
- forever

ULT

¹⁰ And the devil who deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet {were}, and they will be tormented day and night forever {and} ever.

UST

¹⁰ God will throw the devil, who had deceived those people, into the lake of burning sulfur. This is also where God had thrown the beast and the false prophet. As a result, they will continually suffer severely forever.

Revelation 20:11

General Information:

This is the next part of John's vision. He describes suddenly seeing a great white throne and the dead being judged.

**from whose presence the earth and the heaven fled away (ULT)
He was so fearsome that the earth and the sky disappeared from his presence completely (UST)**

John describes **the earth and the heaven** as if they were people who were trying to escape God's judgment. This means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth. (See: [Personification](#))

**the earth and the heaven fled away, but no place was found for them (ULT)
the earth and the sky disappeared...completely; they were no more (UST)**

Here, not having a **place** means that God completely destroyed the old heaven and earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...throne](#)
- [presence](#)
- [earth](#)
- [heaven](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a...throne](#)
- [earth](#)
- [sky](#)
- [his presence](#)

ULT

11 And I saw a great white [throne](#) and the one seated on it, from whose [presence](#) the [earth](#) and the [heaven](#) fled away, but no place was found for them.

UST

11 Then I saw a huge white [throne](#) on which God was sitting. He was so fearsome that the [earth](#) and the [sky](#) disappeared from [his presence](#) completely; they were no more.

Revelation 20:12

books were opened (ULT)

The books in which God records what people do...were opened (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “someone opened the books” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the dead were judged (ULT)

God judged...the people who had died and now lived again (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God judged the people who had died and now lived again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the things that were written (ULT)

just as he had recorded it (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “by what he had recorded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- dead
- dead
- throne
- books
- book
- books
- Book} of Life
- were judged
- deeds

Translation Words - UST

- had died but now lived again
- people who had died and now lived again
- throne
- The books in which God records what people do
- book
- books
- in which God has written the names of people who have eternal life
- God judged
- had done

ULT

¹² And I saw the [dead](#)—both the great and the small—standing before the [throne](#), and [books](#) were opened, and another [book](#) was opened, which is the {Book} of Life. And the [dead were judged](#) from the things that were written in the [books](#), according to their [deeds](#).

UST

¹² I saw that the people who [had died but now lived again](#) were standing in front of the [throne](#). They were both important and unimportant people! [The books in which God records what people do](#) were opened. Another [book](#) was also opened, which is the Book of Life [in which God has written the names of people who have eternal life](#). God [judged](#) the [people who had died and now lived again](#) according to what they [had done](#), just as he had recorded it in the [books](#).

Revelation 20:13

the sea gave up the dead...Death and Hades gave up the dead (ULT)

The people whose bodies were buried...the sea...became alive again...on the land became alive again (UST)

Here John speaks of **the sea**, **Death**, and **Hades** as if they were living persons. (See: [Personification](#))

each of them was judged (ULT)

God judged each one (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "God judged each of the dead people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Hades (ULT)

on the land (UST)

Here, **Hades** is a metonym that represents the place where unbelievers go when they die, to wait for God's judgment. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [dead](#)
- [Death](#)
- [dead](#) (2)
- [Hades](#)
- [was judged](#)
- [deeds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The people whose bodies were buried](#)
- [on the land](#)
- [became alive again](#) (2)
- [on the land](#)
- [God judged](#)
- [each one had done](#)

ULT

¹³ And the sea gave up the [dead](#) who {were} in it, and [Death](#) and [Hades](#) gave up the [dead](#) who {were} in them, and each of them [was judged](#) according to their [deeds](#).

UST

¹³ [The people whose bodies were buried](#) in the sea became alive again in order to stand before God's throne. Everyone who had been buried [on the land became alive again](#) also in order to stand before the throne. [God judged](#) each one of them according to what [each one had done](#).

Revelation 20:14

Death and Hades were thrown (ULT)
those who had been in the place where they
waited after they died—were thrown (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “God threw Death and Hades” or “God’s angel threw Death and Hades” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the second death (ULT)
people die the second time (UST)

The **second death** is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14](#) and [Revelation 21:8](#). See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:11](#). Alternate translation: “the final death in the lake of fire” or “dying a second time” (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Death](#)
- [death](#) (2)
- [Hades](#)
- [of fire](#)
- [of fire](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [place where they waited](#)
- [people die](#) (2)
- [after they died](#)
- [burning](#)
- [burning](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁴ And [Death](#) and [Hades](#) were thrown into the lake [of fire](#). This is the second [death](#)—the lake [of fire](#).

UST

¹⁴ All the unbelievers—those who had been in the [place where they waited after they died](#)—were thrown into the [burning](#) lake. The [burning](#) lake is the place in which [people die](#) the second time.

Revelation 20:15

if anyone was not found...written (ULT)
the people whose names were not...God has
written the names of the people (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "if God's angel did not find a person's name written" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he was thrown into the lake of fire (ULT)
God...threw...into the lake of fire (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "the angel threw him into the lake of fire" or "the angel threw him into the place where fire burns forever" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Book of Life](#)
- [of Life](#)
- [of fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [book, the book where...who have eternal life](#)
- [book where...who have eternal life](#)
- [fire](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And if anyone was not found written in the [Book of Life](#), he was thrown into the lake [of fire](#).

UST

¹⁵ God also threw the people whose names were not in the [book, the book where](#) God has written the names of the people [who have eternal life](#), into the lake of [fire](#).

Revelation 21

Revelation 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter gives a detailed picture of the new Jerusalem.

Special concepts in this chapter

Second death

Death is a type of separation. The first death is physically dying, when the soul is separated from the body. The second death is being eternally separated from God. (See: [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#) and [soul](#), [self](#), [person](#) and [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Book of Life

This is a metaphor for eternal life. Those possessing eternal life are said to have their names written in this Book of Life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

New heaven and new earth

It is unclear whether this is an entirely new heaven and earth or if it is remade out of the present heaven and earth. The same is also true of the new Jerusalem. It is possible this will affect translation in some languages. The word “new” in the original language means different and better than the old. It does not mean new in time.

Revelation 21:1

General Information:

John begins to describe his vision of the new Jerusalem.

I saw (ULT)

I saw (UST)

Here, **I** refers to John.

Translation Words - ULT

- a...heaven
- heaven
- a...earth
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- a...heaven
- heaven
- a...earth
- earth

ULT

¹ And I saw a new **heaven** and a new **earth**, for the first **heaven** and the first **earth** had passed away, and the sea was no more.

UST

¹ Then I saw a new **heaven** and a new **earth**. The first **heaven** and the first **earth** had disappeared, and the oceans no longer existed.

Revelation 21:2

like a bride adorned for her husband (ULT)
just as women decorate a bride in order to marry a man (UST)

John compares the new Jerusalem to **a bride** who has made herself beautiful for her bridegroom. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy city](#)
- [holy](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)
- [like](#)
- [a bride](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God's...holy...which is the...city](#)
- [a bride](#)
- [holy](#)
- [city...of Jerusalem](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)
- [just as](#)

ULT

² And I saw the [holy](#) city, new [Jerusalem](#), coming down out of [heaven](#) from [God](#), prepared [like a bride](#) adorned for her husband.

UST

² I saw [God's holy city, which is the new city of Jerusalem](#). It was coming down out of [heaven](#) from [God](#). God had prepared it and decorated it, [just as](#) women decorate [a bride](#) in order to marry a man.

Revelation 21:3

a great voice from the throne saying (ULT)
a loud voice calling out from the throne of God saying (UST)

The **great voice** refers to the one who speaks. Alternate translation: "someone speak loudly from the throne saying" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Behold (ULT)
Listen to this! Now (UST)

The word **Behold** here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

The tabernacle of God {is} with men, and he will live with them (ULT)
God will live with people. He will live right in the midst of them (UST)

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that God will, indeed, live among men. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a...voice
- throne
- tabernacle
- of God
- God
- they...people
- people

Translation Words - UST

- a...voice
- throne of God
- God
- God
- will live
- They...will be
- will be

ULT

³ And I heard a great voice from the throne saying, "Behold! The tabernacle of God {is} with men, and he will live with them, and they will be his people, and God himself will be with them. ^[1]

UST

³ Then I heard a loud voice calling out from the throne of God saying, "Listen to this! Now God will live with people. He will live right in the midst of them! They will be his people. God himself will be with them, and he will be their God.

Revelation 21:4

he will wipe away every tear from their eyes (ULT)

He will cause...them to no longer be sad. He will stop them from weeping ever again (UST)

Here, tears represent sadness. See how you translated this in [Revelation 7:17](#). Alternate translation: "God will wipe away their sadness, like wiping away tears" or "God will cause them to not be sad anymore" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [death](#)
- [grieving](#)
- [crying](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [die](#)
- [mourn](#)
- [cry](#)

ULT

⁴ And he will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and [death](#) will not be any longer, nor [grieving](#) nor [crying](#) nor pain. They will not be any longer; the first things have passed away."

UST

⁴ He will cause them to no longer be sad. He will stop them from weeping ever again. None of them will ever again [die](#) or [mourn](#) or [cry](#) or suffer pain because God has taken away those things and they are gone forever."

Revelation 21:5

these words are trustworthy and true (ULT)
these things that I have told you...you can trust that I will certainly cause them to happen (UST)

Here, **these words** refers to the message that they formed. Alternate translation: "this message is trustworthy and true" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [throne](#)
- [trustworthy](#)
- [true](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throne](#)
- [you can trust](#)
- [I will certainly cause them to](#)

ULT

⁵ And the one who was seated on the [throne](#) said, "Behold! I make all things new." And he says to me, "Write, because these words are [trustworthy](#) and [true](#)."

UST

⁵ Then God, who sits on the [throne](#), said, "Listen to this! I am now making everything new!" He said to me: "Write these things that I have told you because [you can trust](#) that [I will certainly cause them to](#) happen."

Revelation 21:6

the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end (ULT)
these things! I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end (UST)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize God's eternal nature. (See: [Parallelism](#))

the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end (ULT)
these things! I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end (UST)

These two phrases mean that God exists from the beginning of everything to the end of it, including everything in between. (See: [Merism](#))

the alpha and the omega (ULT)
these things! I am the one who...all things and the one who will cause all things (UST)

The **alpha** and the **omega** are first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This could refer to: (1) the one who began all things and who ends all things. (2) the one who has always lived and who always will live. If your readers would misunderstand this, you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:8](#). Alternate translation: "the A and the Z" or "the first and the last" (See: [Metaphor](#))

And...the...the beginning...end (ULT)
He also...the...began...to end (UST)

This could refer to: (1) the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. (2) the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things.

To the one who thirsts...will give without cost from the spring of the water of life (ULT)
To everyone who wants it...will freely give water from the spring that causes people to live forever (UST)

God speaks of a person's desire for eternal life as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving **water**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [without cost](#)
- [spring](#)
- [of...water](#)

ULT

⁶ And he said to me, "It is done! I {am} the alpha and the omega, the beginning and the end. To the one who thirsts I will give [without cost](#) from the [spring](#) of the [water of life](#)."

UST

⁶ He also said to me, "I have completed all these things! I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. To everyone who wants it, I will [freely](#) give [water](#) from the [spring that causes people to live forever](#)."

- of life

Translation Words - UST

- freely
- water
- spring
- that causes people to live forever

Revelation 21:7

Connecting Statement:

The one seated on the throne continues to speak to John.

Translation Words - ULT

- will inherit
- God
- son

Translation Words - UST

- I will give
- God
- children

ULT

⁷ The one who conquers **will inherit** these things, and I will be his **God**, and he will be my **son**.

UST

⁷ **I will give** this to all who are victorious over Satan. I will be their **God**, and they will be my **children**.

Revelation 21:8

the...cowards (ULT)

But those who are cowardly...But those who are cowardly (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who are too afraid to do what is right"

detestable (ULT)

those who do detestable things (UST)

Alternate translation: "those who do terrible things"

the fiery lake of burning sulfur

See how you translated this in [Revelation 19:20](#). Alternate translation: "the lake of fire that burns with sulfur" or "place full of fire that burns with sulfur"

the second death (ULT)

That is what it means...to die a second time (UST)

The **second death** is described as eternal punishment in the lake of fire in [Revelation 20:14](#) and [Revelation 21:8](#). See how you translated this in [Revelation 2:11](#). Alternate translation: "the final death in the lake of fire" or "dying a second time" (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [unbelieving](#)
- [detestable](#)
- [sexually immoral](#)
- [sorcerers](#)
- [idolaters](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [those who do not believe in me](#)
- [those who do detestable things](#)
- [those who sin sexually](#)
- [those who do witchcraft](#)
- [those who worship idols](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [sulfur](#)
- [to die](#)

ULT

⁸ But the cowards and [unbelieving](#) and [detestable](#) and murderers and [sexually immoral](#) and [sorcerers](#) and [idolaters](#) and all the liars—their place {will be} in the lake burning [with fire](#) and [sulfur](#), which is the second [death](#)."

UST

⁸ But those who are cowardly, [those who do not believe in me](#), [those who do detestable things](#), those who murder people, [those who sin sexually](#), [those who do witchcraft](#), [those who worship idols](#), and every liar will all suffer in the lake that burns [with fire](#) and [sulfur](#). That is what it means [to die](#) a second time."

Revelation 21:9

the bride, the wife of the Lamb (ULT)
the people who have permanently united with the Lamb as a woman marries a man (UST)

The angel speaks of Jerusalem as if it were a **bride** who is about to marry her groom, **the Lamb**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the Lamb (ULT)
the Lamb (UST)

A **lamb** is a young sheep. Here, **Lamb** is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [of...plagues](#)
- [bride](#)
- [of...Lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels who](#)
- [ways of suffering](#)
- [people who have permanently united with](#)
- [Lamb](#)

ULT

⁹ And one of the seven [angels](#) came—the one who had the seven bowls that were full of the seven last [plagues](#)—and he spoke with me, saying, “Come here. I will show you the [bride](#), the wife of the [Lamb](#).”

UST

⁹ Then one of the seven [angels who](#) had the seven bowls of wine—the wine that caused the seven last [ways of suffering](#)—came and said to me, “Come with me and I will show you the [people who have permanently united with](#) the [Lamb](#) as a woman marries a man!”

Revelation 21:10

he carried me away in the Spirit (ULT)
God's Spirit took control of me, and the angel took me (UST)

The setting changes as **the Spirit** takes John to a high mountain where he can see the city of Jerusalem. See how you translated this phrase in [Revelation 17:3](#). (See: [Background Information](#))

Jerusalem (ULT)
new Jerusalem (UST)

Jerusalem is a metonymy for those believers who will inhabit it. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Spirit
- holy city
- holy
- Jerusalem
- heaven
- God

Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit
- God's...holy...city...the
- holy
- new Jerusalem
- heaven
- God

ULT

¹⁰ And he carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain and showed me the holy city Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God,

UST

¹⁰ Then God's Spirit took control of me, and the angel took me to the top of a very high mountain. He showed me God's holy city, the new Jerusalem, which was coming down out of heaven from God.

Revelation 21:11

having (ULT)

It was shining with (UST)

This refers to the “Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven” that he described in the previous verse and not to the physical Jerusalem.

**its brilliance {was} like a very precious stone, like a stone of crystal-clear jasper (ULT)
himself. The city was shining as a very precious jasper stone shines, and it was clear like crystal (UST)**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the **brilliance** of Jerusalem by naming a specific jewel. (See: [Parallelism](#))

crystal-clear (ULT)

was clear...crystal (UST)

Alternate translation: “extremely clear”

of...jasper (ULT)

jasper (UST)

Jasper is a valuable stone. This **jasper** may have been clear like glass or crystal. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- glory
- of God
- {was} like
- like
- very precious

Translation Words - UST

- brilliant light that came
- God
- like
- as a
- very precious

ULT

¹¹ having the [glory of God](#); its brilliance {was} like a [very precious](#) stone, [like](#) a stone of crystal-clear jasper,

UST

¹¹ It was shining with the [brilliant light that came](#) from [God](#) himself. The city was shining [as a very precious](#) jasper stone shines, and it was clear [like](#) crystal.

Revelation 21:12

**were written {on the gates (ULT)
were written over...the name of one tribe
(UST)**

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had written" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gates](#)
- [gates](#)
- [angels](#)
- [of the sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [names](#)
- [of the...tribes](#)
- [of the 12 tribes of the sons of Israel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gates](#)
- [the gates. Each gate had](#)
- [An angel](#)
- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [tribes of Israel](#)
- [tribes of Israel](#)
- [tribes of Israel](#)
- [were written over...the name of one tribe](#)

ULT

¹² having a great and high wall having 12 [gates](#) and 12 [angels](#) at the [gates](#), and [names](#) were written {on the gates}, which were those [of the 12 tribes of the sons of Israel](#).

UST

¹² Around the city was a very high wall. The wall had twelve [gates](#). [An angel](#) was at each gate. The names of the [twelve tribes of Israel were written over the gates](#). Each gate had the name of [one tribe](#).

Revelation 21:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- were...gates
- gates (2)
- gates (3)
- gates (4)

Translation Words - UST

- gates
- gates (2)
- gates (3)
- gates (4)

ULT

¹³ On the east {were} three gates, and on the north three gates, and on the south three gates, and on the west three gates.

UST

¹³ Three gates were on the east side, three gates were on the north side, three gates were on the south side, and three gates were on the west side.

Revelation 21:14

of the Lamb (ULT) the Lamb had appointed (UST)

Here, **the Lamb** refers to Jesus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [foundations](#)
- [were} the...names](#)
- [12](#) (3)
- [of...apostles](#)
- [of...Lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [foundation stones](#)
- [the name](#)
- [twelve](#) (3)
- [apostles whom](#)
- [Lamb had appointed](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And the wall of the city had 12 [foundations](#), and on them [{were} the](#) 12 [names](#) of the [12 apostles](#) of the [Lamb](#).

UST

¹⁴ The city wall had twelve [foundation stones](#). On each foundation stone was [the name](#) of one of the [twelve apostles](#) [whom](#) the [Lamb had appointed](#).

Revelation 21:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- golden
- a...rod
- gates

Translation Words - UST

- golden
- a rod
- gates

ULT

¹⁵ And the one who was speaking with me had a golden measuring rod so that he might measure the city and its gates and its wall.

UST

¹⁵ The angel who was speaking to me carried a golden measuring rod, a rod that he used to measure the city, its gates, and its wall.

Revelation 21:16

12,000 stadia (ULT)

You may convert **12,000 stadia** to modern measures. Alternate translation: “2,200 kilometers” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with...measuring rod](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [reed](#)

ULT

16 And the city is laid out {as} a square, and its length {is} as much as {its} width. And he measured the city with the [measuring rod](#), at 12,000 stadia (the length and the width and the height of it are equal).

UST

16 The city was square in shape; it was as long as it was wide. After the angel measured the city with his rod, he reported that it was 2, 200 kilometers long, and that its width and height were each the same as its length.

Revelation 21:17

144 cubits {thick (ULT) sixty-six meters thick (UST)}

You may convert **144 cubits** to modern measures. Alternate translation: "66 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an angel's {measurement](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And he measured its wall, 144 cubits {thick} by man's measurement (which is {also} [an angel's {measurement}](#)).

UST

¹⁷ He measured its wall and reported that it was sixty-six meters thick. The [angel](#) used the measure that people normally use.

Revelation 21:18

pure gold, like clear glass (ULT)

pure gold that looked like clear glass (UST)

The **gold** was so **clear** that it is spoken of as if it were **glass**. (See: [Simile](#))

is} jasper (ULT)

the green stone that we call jasper (UST)

Jasper is a valuable stone. It may have been clear like glass or crystal. See how you translated this in [Revelation 4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pure](#)
- [clear](#)
- [gold](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pure](#)
- [clear](#)
- [gold](#)
- [that looked like](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And the material of its wall {is} jasper and the city—[pure gold](#), [like clear](#) glass.

UST

¹⁸ The city wall was made of something like the green stone that we call jasper. The city itself was made of [pure gold that looked like clear](#) glass.

Revelation 21:19

The foundations of the wall of the city...were adorned (ULT)

The foundations of the wall of the city...were beautifully made (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone adorned the foundations of the city wall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

was} jasper...sapphire...agate...emerald (ULT)
jasper...sapphire...chalcedony...emerald (UST)

These are valuable stones. Jasper may have been clear like glass or crystal. See how you translated it in [Revelation 4:3](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- foundations
- foundation
- precious

Translation Words - UST

- foundations
- foundation
- precious

ULT

¹⁹ The foundations of the wall of the city were adorned with every precious stone. The first foundation {was} jasper, the second sapphire, the third agate, the fourth emerald,

UST

¹⁹ The foundations of the wall of the city were beautifully made with precious stones. The first foundation stone was jasper, the second foundation stone was sapphire, the third foundation stone was chalcedony, the fourth foundation stone was emerald,

Revelation 21:20

**onyx...carnelian...chrysolite...beryl...topaz...
chrysoprase...jacinth...amethyst (ULT)
sardonyx...sardius...chrysolite...beryl...topaz...
chrysoprase...jacinth...amethyst (UST)**

These are all precious gems. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

ULT

²⁰ the fifth onyx, the sixth carnelian, the seventh chrysolite, the eighth beryl, the ninth topaz, the tenth chrysoprase, the eleventh jacinth, the twelfth amethyst.

UST

²⁰ the fifth foundation stone was sardonyx, the sixth foundation stone was sardius, the seventh foundation stone was chrysolite, the eighth foundation stone was beryl, the ninth foundation stone was topaz, the tenth foundation stone was chrysoprase, the eleventh foundation stone was jacinth, and the twelfth foundation stone was amethyst.

Revelation 21:21

are...pearls (ULT)

were something like huge pearls (UST)

Pearls are beautiful and valuable white beads that are formed inside the shell of a certain kind of small animal that lives in the ocean. See how you translated this in [Revelation 17:4](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

each of the gates was from a single pearl (ULT)

Each gate was like a single pearl (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had made each of the gates from a single pearl" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

were} pure gold, like transparent glass (ULT)

appeared to be pure gold that looked like clear glass (UST)

The **gold** was so **pure** that it is spoken of as if it was clear glass. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Revelation 21:18](#). (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gates](#)
- [of...gates](#)
- [pure](#)
- [were...gold](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gates of the city](#)
- [gate was like](#)
- [appeared to be...that looked like](#)
- [pure](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

²¹ And the 12 [gates](#) {are} 12 pearls; each of the [gates](#) was from a single pearl, and the streets of the city {were} [pure gold, like](#) transparent glass.

UST

²¹ The twelve [gates of the city](#) were something like huge pearls. Each [gate was like](#) a single pearl. The city streets [appeared to be pure gold that looked like](#) clear glass.

Revelation 21:22

the...Lord God Almighty is its temple, and the Lamb (ULT)

The...Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb are there, so there was no need for a temple (UST)

The **temple** represented God's presence. This means the new Jerusalem does not need a temple because **God** and **the Lamb** will live there. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- temple
- Lord
- God
- Almighty
- Lamb

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- so there was no need for a temple
- Lord
- God himself
- who rules over all
- Lamb

ULT

²² And I saw no temple in it, for the Lord God Almighty is its temple, and the Lamb.

UST

²² There was no temple in the city. The Lord God himself, who rules over all, and the Lamb are there, so there was no need for a temple.

Revelation 21:23

its lamp {is} the Lamb (ULT) the Lamb will...be its light (UST)

Here the glory of Jesus, **the Lamb**, is spoken of as if it were a **lamp** that gives light to the city. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [of God](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [is...Lamb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [light coming](#)
- [God](#)
- [Lamb](#)
- [will...be...light](#)

ULT

²³ And the city does not have need of the sun nor the moon so that it might shine on it, because the [glory of God](#) shone on it, and its [lamp](#) {is} the [Lamb](#).

UST

²³ The city will not need the sun or the moon to light the city because the [light coming](#) from [God](#) will light the city, and the [Lamb](#) will also be its [light](#).

Revelation 21:24

the nations will walk (ULT)

The people groups...will live (UST)

Here, **the nations** are a metonym for the people who live in the nations. Alternate translation: “the people from all the different nations will walk” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the nations will walk (ULT)

The people groups...will live (UST)

Here, **walk** here is a metaphor for “live.” Alternate translation: “the people from all the different nations will live” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [nations](#)
- [will walk](#)
- [light](#)
- [kings](#)
- [of...earth](#)
- [glory](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people groups](#)
- [will live](#)
- [light](#)
- [kings](#)
- [earth](#)
- [their wealth...to honor](#)

ULT

²⁴ And the [nations will walk](#) by the [light](#) of it, and the [kings](#) of the [earth](#) bring their [glory](#) into it. ^[2]

UST

²⁴ The [people groups will live](#) with the [light](#) of the city shining on them. The [kings](#) of the [earth](#) will bring [their wealth](#) into the city [to honor](#) God and the lamb.

Revelation 21:25

its gates will never be shut (ULT)

The...gates of the city will not be shut (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “no one will ever shut the gates”
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gates](#)
- [during the day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gates](#)
- [at the end of the day as they usually are shut](#)

ULT

²⁵ And its [gates](#) will never be shut [during the day](#), for there will be no night there.

UST

²⁵ The [gates](#) of the city will not be shut [at the end of the day as they usually are shut](#) because there will be no night there.

Revelation 21:26

they will bring (ULT)
will...bring (UST)

Alternate translation: "the kings of the earth will bring"

Translation Words - ULT

- glory
- honor
- of...nations

Translation Words - UST

- people of the world
- wealth
- wealth

ULT

²⁶ And they will bring the glory and the honor of the nations into it,

UST

²⁶ The people of the world will also bring their wealth into the city.

Revelation 21:27

anything unclean will certainly not enter into it, nor the one (ULT)

Nothing...that is morally impure...will ever enter that city...the (UST)

If your readers would misunderstand this double negative, you can state it in positive form. Alternate translation: "only what is clean will ever enter, and never anyone" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

but only those who are written in the book of life of the Lamb (ULT)

no...Only those people whose names are written in...book that belongs to the lamb, the book that has the names of people who have eternal life, will be there (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "but only those whose names the Lamb wrote in his book of life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of the Lamb (ULT)

that belongs to...lamb...the (UST)

A lamb is a young sheep. Here, **the Lamb** is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- unclean
- abominations
- book
- book of life
- of life
- of...Lamb

Translation Words - UST

- that is morally impure
- one who...God considers detestable
- book
- book...the book that has...names of people who have eternal life, will be there
- that belongs to...lamb
- book that has...names of people who have eternal life, will be there

ULT

²⁷ but anything [unclean](#) will certainly not enter into it, nor the one who does [abominations](#) and falsehoods, but only those who are written in the [book of life](#) of the [Lamb](#).

21:3 ^[1] but the best manuscripts do not.

21:24 ^[2]

UST

²⁷ Nothing [that is morally impure](#), no [one who](#) does deeds that [God considers detestable](#), and no one who tells lies will ever enter that city. Only those people whose names are written in the [book that belongs to the lamb](#), [the book that has the names of people who have eternal life, will be there](#).

Revelation 22

Revelation 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter emphasizes that Jesus is coming soon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Tree of life

There is probably an intended connection between the tree of life in the Garden of Eden and the tree of life mentioned in this chapter. The curse that began in Eden will end at this time.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Alpha and omega

These are the names of the first and last letters in the Greek alphabet. The ULT spells out their names in English. This strategy can serve as a model for translators. Some translators, however, may decide to use the first and last letters in their own alphabet. This would be "A and Z" in English.

Revelation 22:1

Connecting Statement:

John continues to describe the new Jerusalem as the angel shows it to him.

he showed me (ULT)
showed me (UST)

Here, **me** refers to John.

the river of the water of life (ULT)
the river that causes people who drink from it to live forever (UST)

Alternate translation: "the river flowing with life-giving water"

the river of the water of life (ULT)
the river that causes people who drink from it to live forever (UST)

Eternal **life** is spoken of as if it were provided by life-giving **water**. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the Lamb (ULT)
the Lamb were sitting (UST)

A lamb is a young sheep. Here, **the Lamb** is it used symbolically to refer to Christ. See how you translated this in [Revelation 5:6](#). (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the water
- of life
- as
- throne
- of God
- of...Lamb

Translation Words - UST

- that causes people who drink from it
- to live forever
- like
- throne
- God
- Lamb were sitting

ULT

¹ And he showed me the river [of the water of life](#), clear [as](#) crystal, flowing from the [throne of God](#) and of the [Lamb](#),

UST

¹ Then the angel showed me the river [that causes people who drink from it to live forever](#). The water was sparkling and clear [like](#) crystal. The river was flowing out from the [throne](#) where [God](#) and the [Lamb were sitting](#).

Revelation 22:2

of the nations (ULT)

The people groups use...their (UST)

Here, **the nations** refers to the people who live in every nation.
Alternate translation: "the people of all nations" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of life
- of} fruit
- fruit (2)
- month
- the healing
- of...nations

Translation Words - UST

- with fruit
- crop (2)
- people who eat it to live forever
- month
- people groups use...their
- medicine in order that...wounds may heal

ULT

² in the middle of its street. And on this side and on that side of the river {was} the tree [of life](#), bearing 12 {crops [of](#)} [fruit](#), bearing its [fruit](#) according to each [month](#), and the leaves of the tree {are} for [the healing](#) of the [nations](#).

UST

² It flowed down through the middle of the main street of the city. On each side of the river were trees [with fruit](#) that causes [people who eat it to live forever](#). The trees bear twelve kinds of fruit; they produce one [crop](#) each [month](#). The [people groups use](#) the leaves of the trees as [medicine in order that their wounds may heal](#).

Revelation 22:3

there will no longer be any curse (ULT)
There will never be...anyone or anything...
there that God will curse (UST)

This could mean: (1) there will never be anyone there that God will **curse**. (2) there will not be anyone there who is under God's **curse**.

his servants will serve him (ULT)
God's...servants...will worship him there (UST)

Here, **his** and **him** could refer to: (1) God the Father. (2) both God and the Lamb, who rule together as one.

Translation Words - ULT

- curse
- throne
- of God
- of...Lamb
- servants
- will serve

Translation Words - UST

- that God will curse
- throne
- God
- Lamb
- servants
- will worship

ULT

³ And there will no longer be any **curse**, and the **throne of God** and of the **Lamb** will be in it, and his **servants will serve** him.

UST

³ There will never be anyone or anything there **that God will curse**. The **throne of God** and of the **Lamb** will be in the city. God's **servants will worship** him there.

Revelation 22:4

they will see his face (ULT)

They will see...him face to face (UST)

Here, **see his face** is an idiom that refers to being in God's presence.
Alternate translation: "they will be in God's presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#)
- [name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face to face](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

⁴ And they will see his [face](#), and his [name](#) {will be} on their foreheads.

UST

⁴ They will see him [face to face](#), and his [name](#) will be written on their foreheads.

Revelation 22:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the light
- of the light of a lamp
- the light (2)
- of a lamp
- the Lord
- God
- they will reign
- forever
- and} ever

Translation Words - UST

- the light of
- the light of a lamp
- the light of (2)
- a lamp
- the Lord
- God
- will rule
- forever
- forever

ULT

⁵ And there will be no more night, and they have no need of the light of a lamp or the light of the sun, because the Lord God will shine on them, and they will reign forever {and} ever.

UST

⁵ There will never again be night. God's servants will not need the light of a lamp or the light of the sun because the Lord God will shine his light upon them. They will rule forever.

Revelation 22:6

General Information:

This is the beginning of the end of John's vision. In verse 6 the angel is speaking to John. In verse 7, Jesus is speaking. You can state this explicitly as is in the UST. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

These words {are} trustworthy and true (ULT) These things that God has shown you are true, and he will certainly make them happen (UST)

Here, **words** refers to the message that they formed. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:5](#). Alternate translation: "This message is trustworthy and true" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the God of the spirits of the prophets (ULT) God who inspires the prophets (UST)

Here, **spirits** refers to: (1) the inward disposition of the **prophets** and indicates that God inspires them. Alternate translation: "God who inspires the prophets" (2) the Holy Spirit who inspires the **prophets**. Alternate translation: "God who gives his Spirit to the prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are} trustworthy
- true
- Lord
- God
- of...spirits
- of...prophets
- sent
- angel
- servants

Translation Words - UST

- are true
- he will certainly make them happen
- Lord
- God
- who inspires
- prophets
- sent
- angel
- people who serve

ULT

⁶ And he said to me, "These words {are} trustworthy and true, and the Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, sent his angel to show his servants what must happen soon."

UST

⁶ The angel said to me: "These things that God has shown you are true, and he will certainly make them happen. The Lord God who inspires the prophets sent his angel to show the people who serve him the events that must happen soon."

Revelation 22:7

behold (ULT)

Listen to this (UST)

Here Jesus begins to speak. The word **behold** adds emphasis to what follows.

I am coming quickly (ULT)

I am coming soon (UST)

It is understood that he is **coming** in order to judge. See how you translated this in [Revelation 3:11](#). Alternate translation: "I am coming to judge soon!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed {is
- who keeps
- of...prophecy

Translation Words - UST

- God will abundantly bless
- everyone who obeys
- has been written

ULT

⁷ "And behold, I am coming quickly! Blessed {is} the one who keeps the words of the prophecy of this book."

UST

⁷ Jesus says to all his people, "Listen to this! I am coming soon; God will abundantly bless everyone who obeys the message that has been written in this book."

Revelation 22:8

General Information:

John tells his readers about how he responded to the angel.

I fell down to worship at the feet (ULT) **I immediately lay down in front...in order to worship him (UST)**

This means that John purposely lay on the ground and stretched himself out in reverence or submission. This action was an important part of **worship**, to show respect and willingness to serve. See how you translated similar words in [Revelation 19:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [I fell down](#)
- [to worship](#)
- [of...angel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John](#)
- [I immediately lay down...in order to worship him](#)
- [I immediately lay down...in order to worship him](#)
- [angel](#)

ULT

⁸ And I, [John](#), {am} the one who saw and heard these things. And when I heard and saw them, [I fell down to worship](#) at the feet of the [angel](#) who had been showing me these things.

UST

⁸ I, [John](#), am the one who heard and saw in a vision these things that I have written down. When I had heard and seen them, [I immediately lay down](#) in front of the [angel](#) who had shown me these things [in order to worship him](#).

Revelation 22:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...brothers
- prophets
- who keep
- Worship
- God

Translation Words - UST

- servant like...fellow believers
- who are...prophets
- those who obey
- Instead, worship
- God

ULT

⁹ But he says to me, "Watch out! I am a fellow servant of you and of your brothers the prophets and of those who keep the words of this book. Worship God!"

UST

⁹ But he said to me, "Do not worship me! I am just a servant of God like you! I am also a servant like your fellow believers who are the prophets, and like those who obey the message in this book. Instead, worship God!"

Revelation 22:10

Connecting Statement:

The angel finishes speaking to John.

Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book (ULT)

Do not keep secret the message about what God has foretold in this book (UST)

To **seal** a **book** was to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible for anyone to read what was inside without breaking the seal. The angel is telling John not to keep the message a secret.

Alternate translation: "Do not keep secret ... this book" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the words of the prophecy of this book (ULT)

the message about what God has foretold in this book (UST)

Here, **words** refers to the message that they formed. See how you translated this in [Revelation 22:7](#). Alternate translation: "This prophetic message of this book" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Do...seal up
- of...prophecy
- time

Translation Words - UST

- Do...keep secret
- what God has foretold
- time for him to fulfill this message

ULT

¹⁰ And he says to me, "Do not [seal up](#) the words of the [prophecy](#) of this book, for the [time](#) is near.

UST

¹⁰ He also said to me, "Do not [keep secret](#) the message about [what God has foretold](#) in this book because it is almost [time for him to fulfill this message](#).

Revelation 22:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- who is unrighteous
- Let...be unrighteous
- righteous
- one...righteousness
- holy one
- let...be holy

Translation Words - UST

- act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way
- let them...do so
- are acting righteously
- to act righteously
- are perfect
- to be perfect

ULT

¹¹ Let the one **who is unrighteous** still **be unrighteous**, and let the morally filthy one still be morally filthy, and let the **righteous** one still do **righteousness**, and let the **holy one** still **be holy**."

UST

¹¹ Since that time is near, if those who **act in an evil manner want to continue to act that way**, **let them** continue to **do so**. God will soon pay them back for that. If those who are vile want to continue to be vile, let them continue to do so. God will soon pay them back for that. Those who **are acting righteously** should continue **to act righteously**. Those who **are perfect** should continue **to be perfect**."

Revelation 22:12

General Information:

As the book of Revelation is ending, Jesus gives a closing greeting.
(See: [End of Story](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [reward](#)
- [just as](#)
- [deeds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will pay back](#)
- [according to](#)
- [done](#)

ULT

¹² “Behold, I am coming quickly, and my [reward](#) {is} with me, to pay back each one [just as](#) his [deeds](#) are.

UST

¹² Jesus says to all people: “Listen! I am coming soon! And I [will pay back](#) and punish or reward everyone [according to](#) what each one has [done](#).

Revelation 22:13

**the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end (ULT)
am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. I am before all things and I am at the end of all things (UST)**

These three phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that Jesus has existed and will exist for all time. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end (ULT)
am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. I am before all things and I am at the end of all things (UST)**

These three phrases are merisms. They each represent everything included between the two ends. The first and last letters of the Greek alphabet are **alpha** and **omega**. They represent all the letters in between. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:8](#). Alternate translation: “the A and the Z, the first and the last, the beginning and the end” (See: [Merism](#))

**the alpha and the omega (ULT)
am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the one who began all things and who ends all things. (2) the one who has always lived and who always will live. If your readers would misunderstand this, you may consider using the first and last letters of your alphabet. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the first and the last (ULT)
one who will cause all things to end...I am before all things...I am at (UST)**

This refers to the eternal nature of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Revelation 1:17](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the beginning and the end (ULT)
and...I am at...the end of all things (UST)**

This could refer to: (1) the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. (2) the one who existed before all things and who will exist after all things. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹³ I {am} the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.

UST

¹³ I am the one who began all things and the one who will cause all things to end. I am before all things and I am at the end of all things.

Revelation 22:14

those who wash their robes (ULT) who wash their robes...make them clean (UST)

Becoming righteous is spoken of as if it were washing one's clothing. See how you translated as similar phrase in [Revelation 7:14](#).
Alternate translation: "those who have become righteous, as if they have washed their robes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed {are}](#)
- [robes](#)
- [right](#)
- [of life](#)
- [through...gates](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God is very pleased with the people](#)
- [robes](#)
- [able](#)
- [enables people to live forever](#)
- [gates](#)

ULT

¹⁴ [Blessed {are}](#) those who wash their [robes](#) so that they will have the [right](#) to the tree [of life](#) and may enter into the city [through](#) the [gates](#). ^[1]

UST

¹⁴ [God is very pleased with the people](#) who wash their [robes](#) and make them clean because they will be [able](#) to eat the fruit of the tree that [enables people to live forever](#) and because they will be able to enter the [gates](#) into the holy city.

Revelation 22:15

Outside (ULT)

Outside (UST)

This means they are outside the city and not allowed to enter.

are} the dogs (ULT)

are people who are unholy (UST)

In that culture, **dogs** were considered to be unclean, despised animals. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

are} the dogs (ULT)

are people who are unholy (UST)

Here the word **dogs** is derogatory and refers to people who are wicked. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sorcerers](#)
- [sexually immoral](#)
- [idolaters](#)
- [who loves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people who practice witchcraft](#)
- [sin sexually](#)
- [idol worshipers](#)
- [who enjoy](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Outside {are} the dogs and the [sorcerers](#) and the [sexually immoral](#) and the murderers and the [idolaters](#) and everyone [who loves](#) and practices falsehood.

UST

¹⁵ Outside are people who are unholy. They include [people who practice witchcraft](#), people who [sin sexually](#), people who murder others, [idol worshipers](#), and all people [who enjoy](#) telling lies and are continual liars. They can never enter that city."

Revelation 22:16

to testify to you about (ULT)
in order that he might say to you (UST)

Here the word **you** is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the root and the offspring of David (ULT)
I am the descendant of King David...the one who is like (UST)

The words **root** and **descendant** mean basically the same thing. Together the words emphasize that Jesus belongs to the family of David. (See: [Doublet](#))

the root and the offspring of David (ULT)
I am the descendant of King David...the one who is like (UST)

Jesus speaks of being a **descendant** as if he were a **root** that grew out of David. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the bright morning star (ULT)
the bright morning star (UST)

Jesus speaks of himself as if he were the **bright star** that sometimes appears early in the **morning** and indicates that a new day is about to begin. See how you translated "morning star" in [Revelation 2:28](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sent](#)
- [angel](#)
- [to testify...about](#)
- [churches](#)
- [offspring](#)
- [of David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [sent](#)
- [angel](#)
- [in order that he might say to](#)
- [people who are the groups of believers](#)
- [King David](#)
- [King David](#)

ULT

¹⁶ I, [Jesus](#), [sent](#) my [angel to testify](#) to you [about](#) these things to the [churches](#). I am the root and the [offspring of David](#), the bright morning star."

UST

¹⁶ "I, [Jesus](#), [sent](#) my [angel in order that he might say to](#) you [people who are the groups of believers](#) that all these things are true. I am the descendant of [King David](#) whom the prophets promised would come. I am the one who is like the bright morning star."

Revelation 22:17

Connecting Statement:

This verse is a response to what Jesus said.

the Bride (ULT) his people, who are like the bride of the Messiah (UST)

Believers are spoken of as if they were a **Bride** about to be married to her groom, Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Come (ULT) Come (UST)

Here, **Come** could mean: (1) this is an invitation for people to come and drink the water of life. Alternate translation: "Come and drink!" (2) this is a polite request for Jesus to return. Alternate translation: "Please come!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the one who thirsts, let him come. The one who desires it, let him freely take the water of life (ULT)

The...people who want to come should come! Everyone who desires the water that enables people to live forever should take it as a free gift (UST)

A person's desire for eternal **life** is spoken of as if it were thirst and of that person receiving eternal life as if he were drinking life-giving **water**. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the water of life (ULT) the water that enables people to live forever..as (UST)

Eternal **life** is spoken of as if it were provided by life-giving **water**. See how you translated this in [Revelation 21:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- Bride
- freely
- the water
- of life

Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit
- his people, who are like...bride of the Messiah
- the water that...as
- enables people to live forever
- a free gift

ULT

¹⁷ And the Spirit and the Bride say, "Come!" And let the one who hears say, "Come!" And the one who thirsts, let him come. The one who desires it, let him freely take the water of life.

UST

¹⁷ God's Spirit and his people, who are like the bride of the Messiah, say to each one who desires to believe, "Come!" Whoever hears this should also say to each one who desires to believe, "Come!" The people who want to come should come! Everyone who desires the water that enables people to live forever should take it as a free gift!

Revelation 22:18

General Information:

John gives his final remarks about the book of Revelation.

I testify (ULT)

I, John, solemnly warn (UST)

Here, **I** refers to John.

the words of the prophecy of this book (ULT) the message about what I have foretold in this book (UST)

Here, **the words** refers to the message that they formed. See how you translated this in [Revelation 22:7](#). Alternate translation: “this prophetic message of this book” (See: [Metonymy](#))

If anyone adds to them ... God will add

This is a strong warning to not change anything about this prophecy.

that are written about in this book (ULT) book tells about (UST)

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “which I have written about in this book” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- testify
- of...prophecy
- God
- plagues
- are written about

Translation Words - UST

- solemnly warn
- I have foretold
- God
- ways
- tells

ULT

¹⁸ I [testify](#) to everyone who hears the words of the [prophecy](#) of this book: If anyone might add to them, [God](#) will add to him the [plagues](#) that [are written about](#) in this book.

UST

¹⁸ I, John, [solemnly warn](#) everyone who hears the message about what [I have foretold](#) in this book: If anyone adds anything to this message, [God](#) will punish him in the [ways](#) that this book [tells](#) about.

Revelation 22:19

If anyone takes away ... God will take away

This is a strong warning to not change anything about this prophecy.

Translation Words - ULT

- of prophecy
- God
- of life
- holy city
- holy
- are written about

Translation Words - UST

- I have foretold
- God
- enables people to live forever
- God's...city
- God's
- Both these things are described

ULT

19 And if anyone might take away from the words of this book of prophecy, God will take away his share in the tree of life and in the holy city that are written about in this book. ^[2]

UST

19 If anyone takes away any of the message about what I have foretold in this book, God will take away that person's right to eat fruit from the tree that enables people to live forever. He will also take away that person's right to enter God's city. Both these things are described in this book.

Revelation 22:20

General Information:

In these verses John gives his and Jesus' closing greetings.

The one who testifies (ULT) that all (UST)

Alternate translation: "Jesus, who testifies"

Translation Words - ULT

- who testifies
- Amen
- Lord
- Lord Jesus

Translation Words - UST

- that all
- I, John, reply, "May it be so
- Lord
- Lord Jesus

ULT

²⁰ The one who testifies these things says, "Yes! I am coming quickly." Amen! Come, Lord Jesus!

UST

²⁰ Jesus, who says that all these things are true, says, "Certainly I am coming soon!" I, John, reply, "May it be so! Lord Jesus, come!"

Revelation 22:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- grace
- of...Lord
- of...Lord Jesus
- saints
- Amen

Translation Words - UST

- our Lord
- our Lord...Jesus
- will continue to act kindly
- all of you who are God's people
- Amen

ULT

²¹ The **grace** of the **Lord Jesus** {be} with the **saints**. **Amen**.

22:14 ^[1] some older copies read

22:19 ^[2]

UST

²¹ I pray that **our Lord Jesus will continue to act kindly to all of you who are God's people**. **Amen!**



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 29

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: Revelation 1:1; 1:2; 1:4; 1:6; 1:9; 2:2; 2:9; 2:13; 2:19; 2:24; 5:12; 7:10; 9:6; 12:11; 12:17; 13:10; 13:18; 14:7; 17:1; 17:8; 17:9; 18:10; 18:15; 18:20)

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:17](#); [3:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:9](#); [6:11](#); [6:13](#); [7:4](#); [Notes](#); [8:2](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:20](#); [10:7](#); [11:1](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [Notes](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [12:9](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [13:3](#); [13:5](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [14:1](#); [14:10](#); [14:16](#); [15:1](#); [15:4](#); [15:8](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:12](#); [16:16](#); [16:19](#); [17:5](#); [17:8](#); [17:14](#); [17:17](#); [18:8](#); [18:14](#); [18:16](#); [18:21](#); [18:22](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [19:4](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:16](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:10](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [20:14](#); [20:15](#); [21:12](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [21:27](#); [22:18](#))

Apostrophe

Description

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him. He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called an apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34a ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “**Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, ... on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. ‘See, ... they will burn people’s bones on **it**.’”

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **you**. (2 Samuel 1:21a ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**.

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:22](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:10](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [2:1](#); [2:3](#); [2:8](#); [2:12](#); [2:18](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:25](#); [2:28](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:14](#); [Notes](#); [9:3](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:17](#); [Notes](#); [12:11](#); [13:10](#); [13:17](#); [15:2](#); [16:15](#); [Notes](#); [17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:9](#); [17:15](#); [19:5](#); [19:10](#); [19:11](#); [19:15](#); [20:3](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:10](#); [22:15](#); [22:17](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said"

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:3; 21:10](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

[Fractions](#)

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[¹] two and a half cubits
[²] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:20](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#))

Biblical Money

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

1 The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words.](#))

1 "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50.**"

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

1 "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50.**"

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

1 "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50.**"

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

1 "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

1 [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

1 "The one owed **500 denarii**,¹ and the other, **50.**" (Luke 7:41 ULT)

1 [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:6](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**."

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure."

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount."

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:6](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. 1"

The footnote would look like:

█ [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 16:21](#))

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

This page answers the question: *What are blessings, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-poetry\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul’s second letter to Timothy:

Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

■ The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

■ The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

■ They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

■ The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

■ "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them."

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4](#))

Collective Nouns

Description

This page answers the question: *What are collective nouns and how can I translate them?*

A collective noun is a singular noun that refers to a group of something. Examples: a **family**, **clan**, or **tribe** is a group of people who are related to each other; a **flock** is a group of birds or sheep; a **fleet** is a group of ships; and an **army** is a group of soldiers.

Many collective nouns are used exclusively as a singular replacement for a group as in the examples above. Frequently in the Bible the name of an ancestor is used, through a process of metonymy, as a collective noun referencing the group of his descendants. In the Bible, sometimes the singular noun will take a singular verb form, other times it will take a plural verb form. This may depend on how the author is thinking about the group, or whether the action is being done as a group or as individuals.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

There are several issues that require care when translating collective nouns. Further care is needed because the language you are translating into may not use collective nouns in the same way as the language you are translating from. Issues include:

The source language may have a collective noun for a group that the target language does not and vice-versa. You may have to translate a collective noun with a plural noun in your language, or you may need to translate a plural noun with a collective noun in your language.

Subject-verb agreement. Different languages or dialects may have different rules about using singular or plural verbs with collective nouns.

Examples (from Wikipedia):

- a singular noun with a singular verb: The team *is* in the dressing room.
- a singular noun with a plural verb which is correct in British, but not American, English: The team *are* fighting among themselves. The team *have* finished the project.

Pronoun agreement. Similar to the previous, care needs to be taken to use the correct pronoun plurality and possibly gender or noun class to agree with the number/gender/class of the noun used. See the biblical examples below.

Clarity of referent. Especially if there is a mismatch in your translation between the verb and noun or pronoun concerning any of the factors above, readers may be confused about who or what is being referenced.

Examples from the Bible

And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

The word in bold is written in singular form in both Hebrew and English, but it refers to a group of warriors that fight together.

and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

The word in bold is singular and refers to a group of sheep.

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

Note in this example that the noun is singular but the pronoun is plural. This may or may not be allowed or natural in your language.

Do not let **your heart** be troubled. **You** believe in God; believe also in me. (John 14:1 ULT)

In this verse, the words translated “your” and “you” are plural, referring to many people. The word “heart” is singular in form, but it refers to all of their hearts as a group.

And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

The word **hair** is singular, but it refers to many hairs, not just one.

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

Here, “Israel” is singular, but means “the Israelites” by metonymy.

Translation Strategies

If your language has a collective (singular) noun that refers to the same group as referenced by the collective noun in the source text, then translate the word using that term. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.
- (2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.
- (3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.
- (4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the collective noun with a plural noun.

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go.” (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the Israelites** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the Israelites** go.”

And he shall take the **hair** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **it** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings. (Num 6:18b ULT)

And he shall take the **hairs** of the head of his separation. And he shall put **them** on the fire that is under the sacrifice of the peace offerings.

- (2) Add a plural word to the collective noun so that you can use a plural verb and pronouns.

And Joab and all the **army** which was with him arrived (2 Samuel 3:23a ULT)

And Joab and all the **army men who were** with him arrived

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **crowd** was coming to him, and he was teaching **them**. (Mark 2:13 ULT)

And he went out again beside the sea, and all the **people of the crowd were** coming to him, and he was teaching **them**.

(3) Use a phrase to describe the group that the collective noun references. A useful strategy here can be to use a general collective noun that refers to a group of people or things.

and though the **flock** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls. (Habakkuk 3:17b ULT)

and though the **group of sheep** is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls.

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **Israel** go." (Exodus 5:2 ULT)

And Pharaoh said, "Who is Yahweh that I should listen to his voice to let **the people of Israel** go? I do not know Yahweh; and moreover, I will not let **the people of Israel** go."

(4) If your language uses a collective noun for something that is a plural noun in the source language, you can translate the plural noun as a collective noun and, if necessary, change the form of the verb and any pronouns so that they agree with the singular noun.

Now this John had his clothing from the **hairs** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist (Matthew 3:4a ULT)

Now this John had his clothing from the **hair** of a camel and a leather belt around his waist

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that {is} in **the heavens** above, or that {is} in the earth beneath, or that {is} in **the waters** under the earth. (Deuteronomy 5:8 ULT)

You shall not make for yourself a carved figure nor any likeness that is in **heaven** above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in **the water** under the earth.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [1:7](#))

Connect — Exception Clauses

Exceptional Relationship

This page answers the question: *How can I translate exception clauses?*

Description

Exceptional relationship connectors exclude one or more items or people from a group.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

English indicates exceptional relationships by first describing a group (Part 1) and then stating what is not in that group by using words like “except,” “but not,” “other than,” “besides,” “unless,” “however ... not,” and “only” (Part 2). Some languages do not indicate in this way that one or more items or people are excluded from a group. Instead, they have other ways of doing this. In some languages this type of construction does not make sense because the exception in Part 2 seems to contradict the statement in Part 1. Translators need to understand who (or what) is in the group and who (or what) is excluded in order to be able to accurately communicate this in their language.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4b ULT)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Not** a man escaped **except for** 400 young men, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me.” (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If the way that Exceptional Clauses are marked in the source language is also clear in your language, then translate the Exceptional Clauses in the same way.

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

Examples of Translation Strategy Applied

(1) Very often, the exception in Part 2 contradicts something that was negated in Part 1. In this case, the translator can phrase the same idea without the contradiction by deleting the negative and using a word like “**only**.”

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. ****Not a man escaped except for 400 young men****, who rode on camels and fled. (1 Samuel 30:17 ULT)

- Part 1: (**Not** a man escaped)
- Part 2: (**except for** 400 young men)

David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. **Only** 400 young men escaped; they rode on camels and fled.

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for there is **no one** to redeem it **besides** you, and I am after you. (Ruth 4:4 ULT)

But if you will not redeem it, then tell me so that I may know, for **you are first in line to redeem it [only you can redeem it]**, and I am after you.

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will **not** let you go **unless** you bless me." (Genesis 32:26 ULT)

The man said, "Let me go, for the dawn is breaking." Jacob said, "I will let you go **only if** you bless me."

(2) Reverse the order of the clauses, so that the exception is stated first, and then the larger group is named second.

God told Adam that he could eat from **any** tree in the garden **except** from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. (OBS Story 1 Frame 11)

God told Adam that he could **not** eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, but he could eat from **any other** tree in the garden.

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:24](#))

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate a goal (purpose) relationship?*

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are “in order to,” “in order that” or “so that.” It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison.**
(Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman’s false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian.** (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with “in order to.”

Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes.** Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God’s ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean,** and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened,** which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, ‘This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.’ So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with “and.” Then the word “so” marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

- (1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
- (2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!” (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

“Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!”

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds said to each other, “Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us.”

- (2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

“... if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments.” (Matthew 19:17bULT)

“... keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**.” or: “... keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**.”

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance.**' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance.**

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:21](#))

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples From the Bible

Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

<div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px;"></div>	<p>.A man's name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ</p> <p>"Zephaniah" — The same name in Roman letters</p>
--	---

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

<div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px;"></div>	<p>Zephaniah — This is a man's name.</p> <p>"Zephaniah" — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.</p>
--	---

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

<div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px; margin-bottom: 10px;"></div> <div style="background-color: #ccc; width: 10px; height: 40px;"></div>	<p>Zephaniah — If your language does not have the "z," you could use "s." If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f." Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay."</p> <p>"Sefania"</p> <p>"Sefanaia"</p> <p>"Sefanaya"</p>
--	--

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:18](#); [2:7](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

■ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

■ A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
- (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

>

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

>

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Double Negatives](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:20](#); [11:17](#); [12:9](#); [16:9](#); [17:2](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-parts-of-speech\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called [litotes](#).

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means "in order to be fruitful."

A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means "a prophet is honored."

I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means "I want you to be knowledgeable."

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

"For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

"... so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

χωρὶς ἐμοῦ οὐ δύνασθε ποιεῖν οὐδέν

Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

Without me, you can do **nothing**.

or:

Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

...ἰώτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)

...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law

or:

...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:27](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

- English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**
We are perishing!"

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#); [1:14](#); [4:9](#); [15:1](#); [22:16](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#); [2:4](#); [2:14](#); [2:16](#); [2:20](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [9:4](#))

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

The following are purposes for end of story information:

- to summarize the story
- to give a comment about what happened in the story
- to connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- to tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- to tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- to tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know:

- that this information is ending the story
- what the purpose of the information is
- how the information is related to the story

Translation Strategies

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples From the Bible

- To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. **In this way it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

- To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it was 50,000 pieces of silver. **So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power.** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

And Mary said, "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoiced in God my savior." **And Mary stayed with her about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who those who heard it were amazed concerning the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept all the things, pondering them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you, experts in the Jewish law, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After he went from there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to fiercely oppose him and argued against him about many things, lying in wait to trap him in something from his mouth.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [Revelation 22:12](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:11](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

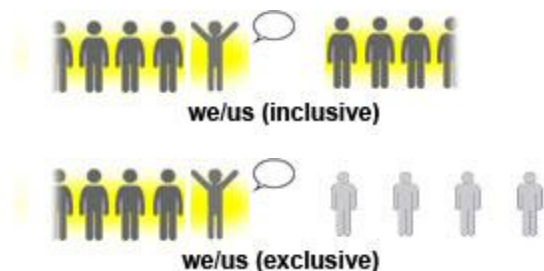
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we,” then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, “There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with **us**—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 19:5](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:4](#); [1:9](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:17](#); [2:29](#); [3:6](#); [3:13](#); [3:22](#); [13:9](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:9](#); [16:5](#); [22:16](#))

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:8](#); [8:8](#); [9:18](#); [12:4](#))

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife;**
the one who touches her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

- (1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
- (2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
- (3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”
- (4) Use the plural form, as in “people.”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**.” (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(3) Use the word “any,” as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#))

Go and Come

Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:20; 5:7](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said,
“For out of the water I drew him.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Revelation](#); [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:11](#); [2:1](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [3:14](#); [9:11](#); [16:16](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [1:10](#); [Notes](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [2:25](#); [Notes](#); [4:2](#); [7:11](#); [11:16](#); [22:4](#))

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** ... **This man** came to Jesus at night ... Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

Now there was a man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she.”

His wife was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah’s wife is referred to by the noun phrase “the wife.”

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the wife and he said to her ... (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant’s name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
- (2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.

Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth ... (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph’s name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Pronouns — When to Use Them](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:6](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They

emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

(2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:9](#))

Litany

Description

A litany is a figure of speech in which the various components of a thing are listed in a series of very similar statements. The speaker does this to indicate that what he is saying should be understood as comprehensive and without exceptions.

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called litany?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Many languages do not use litanies, and readers could be confused by them. They may wonder why the speaker seems to be saying the same thing over and over again.

Examples From the Bible

Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them. Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down. Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them. Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them. Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them. (Amos 9:2-4 ULT)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Israel that when he punishes them, none of them will escape.

But you should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. And you should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. And you should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. And you women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. And you should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. And you should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:12-14)

In this passage Yahweh is telling the people of Edom that they should have helped the people of Judah when they were conquered by the Babylonians.

Translation Strategies

If the litany is understood as it is in the ULT, then translate the litany as it is. If it is not understood, then try one or more of the following strategies.

- (1) Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany.
- (2) You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.
- (3) You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) combined with (3):

Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;

You can eliminate words like “and,” “but,” and “or” at the beginning of sentences so that it will be clearer that the component parts of the litany are all being listed in a row.

You did nothing to help the Israelites when strangers carried away their wealth. They conquered all the cities of Judah, and they even plundered Jerusalem. And you were just as bad as those foreigners, because you did nothing to help:

You should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his misfortune. You should not have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their perishing. You should not have made your mouth great in a day of distress. You should not have entered the gate of my people in the day of their calamity. Yes, you! You should not have looked on his evil in the day of his calamity. You women should not have looted his wealth in the day of his calamity. You should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. You should not have delivered up his survivors in a day of distress. (Obadiah 1:11-14)

In the above example, verse 11 provides the summary and meaning for the litany that follows in verses 12-14.

(1) combined with (2):

Often in the Bible there will be a general statement at the beginning or end of a litany that sums up its overall meaning. You can format that statement in a way that will show that it is a summary statement that gives the meaning of the litany;

You can put each sentence of the litany on a separate line. Also, if each sentence in the litany has two parts, you can format the litany so that the equivalent parts of each sentence line up. Use this or any other type of formatting that will show that each sentence is reinforcing the same meaning.

Not one of them will get away, not one of them will escape:

Though they dig into Sheol, there my hand will take them.

Though they climb up to heaven, there I will bring them down.

Though they hide on the top of Carmel, there I will search and take them.

Though they are hidden from my sight in the bottom of the sea, there will I give orders to the serpent, and it will bite them.

Though they go into captivity, driven by their enemies before them, there will I give orders to the sword, and it will kill them.

(Amos 9:1b-4 ULT)

In the above example, the sentence before the litany explains its overall meaning. That sentence can be placed as an introduction. The second half of each sentence can be formatted in a descending staircase pattern as above, or

lined up evenly like the first half of each sentence, or in another way. Use whatever format best shows that these sentences are all communicating the same truth, that it is not possible to escape from God.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:19](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by negating a word or phrase that means the opposite of the meaning that he intends. For example, someone could intend to communicate that something is extremely good by describing it as "not bad." The difference between a litotes and a **double negative** is that a litotes heightens the positive meaning beyond what a plain positive statement would do, and a double negative does not. In the example above, the literal meaning of "not bad," taken as a plain double negative, would be "acceptable" or even "good." But if the speaker intended it as a litotes, then the meaning is "very good" or "extremely good."

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

"For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**."

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

or:

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:3](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God,
"the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:8](#); [1:17](#); [2:8](#); [5:3](#); [5:13](#); [7:15](#); [12:10](#); [19:5](#); [19:18](#); [21:6](#); [22:13](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Introduction to Revelation](#); [Revelation 1 General Notes](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:18](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:20](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [2:26](#); [2:27](#); [Notes](#); [3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [4:1](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [Notes](#); [5:5](#); [6:9](#); [6:11](#); [6:17](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [9:12](#); [10:1](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:11](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [12:5](#); [12:10](#); [Notes](#); [14:4](#); [14:7](#); [14:8](#); [14:15](#); [15:2](#); [Notes](#); [16:9](#); [16:15](#); [Notes](#); [17:2](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:15](#); [17:16](#); [17:17](#); [17:18](#); [Notes](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:16](#); [18:21](#); [18:23](#); [19:2](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [19:15](#); [Notes](#); [20:11](#); [Notes](#); [21:6](#); [21:9](#); [21:22](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [22:1](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [22:16](#); [22:17](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”

or:

“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1 General Notes](#); 1:2; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:9; 1:10; 1:12; [Notes](#); 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:11; 2:13; 2:17; 2:22; 2:23; 2:29; [Notes](#); 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:8; 3:13; 3:20; 3:21; 3:22; 4:11; 5:9; 5:12; 6:6; 6:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:16; 6:17; 7:2; 7:3; 7:14; 7:17; 8:4; 8:5; 9:4; 10:1; 10:11; 11:12; 11:15; 11:18; 12:10; 12:11; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:9; 13:10; 13:15; 14:5; 14:8; 14:11; 15:4; 16:2; 16:3; 16:4; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:12; 16:17; 16:20; 17:15; 17:17; 17:18; 18:3; 18:4; 18:7; 18:16; 18:17; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 19:2; 19:13; 19:17; 20:3; 20:4; 20:13; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:10; 21:24; 22:2; 22:6; 22:10; 22:18)

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds.
(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

The rich must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2; 11:18](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:11](#); [9:16](#); [11:9](#); [11:11](#); [14:1](#); [14:3](#); [14:20](#); [19:4](#); [20:5](#))

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
- (2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
- (3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:15](#); [5:2](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:9](#); [6:12](#); [8:1](#); [8:8](#); [11:15](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:15](#); [21:3](#); [21:6](#); [21:11](#); [22:13](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:6](#); [Notes](#); [12:16](#); [14:8](#); [14:13](#); [16:8](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [19:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:9](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#))

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather **'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
 - The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
 - The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John
 - A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
 - The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
 - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
 - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
 - my head — the head that is part of my body
 - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

■ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.

or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

■ ■ You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you.**

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:9](#); [2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [2:24](#); [2:26](#))

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

This page answers the question: *How do I decide whether or not to use a pronoun?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase “this man.” Then he is referred to with the pronoun “him.”

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom “he” in the second sentence refers to.

Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)

Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

- (2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:6](#); [1:17](#); [2:1](#))

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," **she said**.
- "The food is ready," **she said**. "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said."

But his mother **answered** and **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said."
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

Then Zechariah said to the angel, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

"I will hide my face from them," **he said**, "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh’s declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

He said, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [1:11](#); [Notes](#); [2:1](#); [2:8](#); [2:12](#); [2:18](#); [Notes](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [3:14](#))

Quote Markings

Description

Some languages use quotation marks to mark off direct quotes from the rest of the text. English uses the mark " immediately before a quote and " immediately after it.

- John said, "I do not know when I will arrive."

Quotation marks are not used with indirect quotes.

- John said that he did not know when he would arrive.

When there are several layers of quotations inside of other quotations, it might be hard for readers to understand who is saying what. Alternating two kinds of quotation marks can help careful readers to keep track of them. In English, the outermost quotation has double quote marks, and the next quotation within it has single marks. If there is a third embedded quote, that quotation again has double quotation marks.

- Mary said, "John said, 'I do not know when I will arrive.'"
- Bob said, "Mary told me, 'John said, "I do not know when I will arrive.'" "

Some languages use other kinds of quotation marks: Here are some examples: , ' ' „ " " < > « » 7 — .

Examples From the Bible

The examples below show the kind of quotation markings used in the ULT.

A quotation with only one layer

A first layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it.

So the king replied, "That is Elijah the Tishbite." (2 Kings 1:8b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

A second layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it and the phrase in bold type for you to see them clearly.

They asked him, "Who is the man who said to you, '**Pick it up and walk**'?" (John 5:12 ULT)

He sent two of the disciples, saying, "Go into the village ahead of you. As you enter, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me. If any one asks you, '**Why are you untying it?**' you will say thus, '**The Lord has need of it.**'" (Luke 19:29b-31 ULT)

A quotation with three layers

A third layer direct quote has double quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold type for you to see them clearly.

Abraham said, "Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.' Besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother; and she became my wife. When God caused me to leave my father's

This page answers the question: *How can quotes be marked, especially when there are quotes within quotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/figs-quotations)

house and travel from place to place, I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "**He is my brother.**"' (Genesis 20:11-13 ULT)

A quotation with four layers

A fourth layer direct quote has single quotation marks around it. We have printed it in bold for you to see it clearly.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"' " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

Quote Marking Strategies

Here are some ways you may be able to help readers see where each quote starts and ends so they can more easily know who said what.

- (1) Alternate two kinds of quote marks to show layers of direct quotation. English alternates double quote marks and single quote marks.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quote marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)
- (3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

Examples of Quote Marking Strategies Applied

- (1) Alternate two kinds of quotation marks to show layers of direct quotation as shown in the ULT text below.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

- (2) Translate one or more of the quotes as indirect quotes in order to use fewer quotation marks, since indirect quotes do not need them. In English, the word “that” can introduce an indirect quote. In the example below, everything after the word “that” is an indirect quote of what the messengers said to the king. Within that indirect quote, there are some direct quotes marked with double and single quotation marks.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man came to meet them who said to them, "Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""

- (3) If a quotation is very long and has many layers of quotation in it, indent the main overall quote, and use quote marks only for the direct quotes inside of it.

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They said to him,

A man came to meet us who said to us, "Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, 'Yahweh says this: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Revelation 19:2; 19:12](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **"Are you insulting the high priest of God?"**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:2](#); [6:17](#); [13:4](#); [15:4](#); [17:7](#); [18:18](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:10](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:27](#); [3:3](#); [4:1](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [Notes](#); [6:12](#); [6:14](#); [Notes](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [Notes](#); [9:2](#); [9:10](#); [Notes](#); [10:1](#); [12:15](#); [Notes](#); [13:11](#); [14:14](#); [16:15](#); [18:7](#); [19:6](#); [19:12](#); [20:8](#); [21:2](#); [21:18](#); [21:21](#))

Singular Pronouns that refer to Groups

Description

The Bible was written in Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek. These languages have a singular form of “you” for when the word “you” refers to just one person, and a plural form for when the word “you” refers to more than one person. However, sometimes speakers in the Bible used the singular form of “you” even though they were speaking to a group of people. This is not obvious when you read the Bible in English because English does not have different forms that indicate where “you” is singular and where “you” is plural. But you may see this if you read a Bible in a language that does have distinct forms.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate singular pronouns that refer to groups of people?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Forms of You](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

Also, speakers and writers of the Old Testament often referred to groups of people with the singular pronoun “he,” rather than with the plural pronoun “they.”

Finally, Old Testament speakers and writers also refer to actions that they performed as part of a group by saying ‘I’ did it when, really, the whole group was involved.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- For many languages, a translator who reads a Bible with a general form of “you” will need to know whether the speaker was speaking to one person or to more than one.
- In some languages, it might be confusing if a speaker uses a singular pronoun when speaking to or about more than one person.

Examples From the Bible

1 Now take heed that **you** do not do **your** acts of righteousness before people to be seen by them, otherwise **you** will not have a reward with **your** Father who is in heaven. 2 So when **you** give alms, do not sound a trumpet before **yourself** as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may have the praise of people. Truly I say to **you**, they have received their reward. (Matthew 6:1-2 ULT)

Jesus said this to a crowd. He used “you” plural in verse 1, and “you” singular in the first sentence of verse 2. Then, in the last sentence, he used the plural again.

God spoke all these words: “I am Yahweh, **your** God, who brought **you** out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. **You** must have no other gods before me.” (Exodus 20:1-3 ULT)

God said this to all the people of Israel. He had taken them all out of Egypt and he wanted them all to obey him, but he used the singular form of you here when speaking to them.

This is what Yahweh says,
“For three sins of Edom,
even for four,
I will not turn away punishment,
because **he** pursued **his** brother with the sword
and cast off all pity.
His anger raged continually,
and **his** wrath lasted forever.” (Amos 1:11 ULT)

Yahweh said these things about the nation of Edom, not about only one person.

And I arose in the night, myself and a few men with me. And I was going up by the wadi at night, and I was looking intently at the wall. And I turned back, and I entered by the gate of the valley, and I returned. (Nehemiah 2:12a,15 ULT)

Nehemiah makes clear that he brought other people with him on his inspection tour of the wall of Jerusalem. But as he describes the tour, he just says “I” did this and that.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the singular form of the pronoun would be natural when referring to a group of people, consider using it.

- Whether you can use it may depend on who the speaker is and who the people are that he is talking about or talking to.
- It may also depend on what the speaker is saying.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the singular form of the pronoun would not be natural when referring to a group of people, or if the readers would be confused by it, use the plural form of the pronoun.

This is what Yahweh says,
“For three sins of Edom,
even for four,
I will not turn away punishment,
because **he** pursued **his** brother with the sword
and cast off all pity.
His anger raged continually,
and **his** wrath lasted forever.” (Amos 1:11 ULT)

This is what Yahweh says,
“For three sins of Edom,
even for four,
I will not turn away punishment,
because **they** pursued **their brothers** with the sword
and cast off all pity.
Their anger raged continually,
and **their** wrath lasted forever.”

And I arose in the night, myself and a few men with me. And **I** was going up by the wadi at night, and **I** was looking intently at the wall. And **I** turned back, and **I** entered by the gate of the valley, and **I** returned. (Nehemiah 2:12a,15 ULT)

And I arose in the night, myself and a few men with me. ... And **we** were going up by the wadi at night and **we** were looking intently at the wall. And **we** turned back and **we** entered by the gate of the valley, and **we** returned.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youduall]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 2 General Notes](#); [2:2](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [Notes](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:17](#); [3:9](#); [3:20](#); [4:10](#); [10:5](#); [11:10](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

■ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples From the Bible

■ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

■ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

■ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven**

stars in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: Revelation 1:4; 1:12; 1:16; 1:20; 2:1; 2:5; 2:12; 2:16; 2:28; 3:1; 3:7; 4:5; 5:6; 5:8; 11:4; 12:3; 12:7; 12:13; 12:16; 13:2; 13:4; 13:8; 13:11; 14:1; 14:8; 14:10; 14:14; 15:7; 16:1; 16:13; 16:19; 17:1; 17:2; 17:14; 18:3; 19:7; 20:2; 20:6; 20:14; 21:8; 21:9; 21:27; 22:1)

Symbolic Prophecy

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other Scriptures, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See Dream and [Vision](#) for help translating “dreams” and “visions.”) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images included a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies, strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for this. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense “the predictive past.” (See Predictive Past.)

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
- Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
- In places where God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Symbolic Language](#)

- When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.
- If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.
- Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.
- Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.
- Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

Examples From the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images mentioned in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The bolded phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man, wearing a robe that reached down to his feet and he wore a golden sash across his chest. **His head and hair were as white as wool**—as white as snow—and his eyes were like a flame of fire. **His feet were like polished bronze**, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and **his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters**. He had seven stars in his right hand, and a sword with two sharp edges was coming out of his mouth. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULT)

As I looked, thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was as white as snow, and **the hair of his head was like pure wool**. (Daniel 7:9 ULT)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and **his feet were like polished bronze**, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULT)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; **his voice was like the sound of many waters**, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULT)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The bolded verbs refer to past events.

The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he **saw** concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah. (Isaiah 1:1 ULT)

Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh **has spoken**: (Isaiah 1:2a ULT)

“I **have nourished** and **brought up** children, but they **have rebelled** against me.” (Isaiah 1:2b ULT)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The bolded verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish. In an earlier time he humiliated the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations. The people who walked in darkness **have seen** a great light; those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light **has shone** on them. (Isaiah 9:1-2 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- If the prophecy uses the past tense to talk about the future and this would be misunderstood in your language, use the strategies in Predictive Past.
- If the images in the prophecy are of things that are unknown in your culture, use the strategies in [Translate Unknowns](#).

(Go back to: [Introduction to Revelation](#); [Revelation 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#); [3:9](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [10:4](#); [10:8](#); [16:3](#); [16:4](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ ^[1]

^[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] ^[2]

^[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." ¹⁶ [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." ¹⁶ [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Revelation](#); [Revelation 1:8](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

■ Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

■ "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

■ Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:14](#); [2:14](#); [2:17](#); [2:20](#); [4:3](#); [8:11](#); [9:3](#); [Notes](#); [14:14](#); [17:4](#); [17:12](#); [18:12](#); [18:16](#); [21:11](#); [21:18](#); [21:19](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#))

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and ... a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus ... said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth ... no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son.**” (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I love the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)

No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, ... glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you ... I glorified you on the earth ... Now Father, glorify me ... with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made.**” (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory and **the very exact representation of his being.** He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’” (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod]]

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”

(2) If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).

(3) If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See *God the Father and Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [2:18](#); [2:28](#); [3:5](#); [3:21](#); [14:1](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 32

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), desecrate, [desolate](#), [false god](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:4](#); [17:5](#); [21:8](#); [21:27](#))

abyss, bottomless pit

Definition:

The term “abyss” refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

- In the Bible, “the abyss” is a place of punishment.
- For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
- The word “abyss” could also be translated as “bottomless pit” or “deep chasm.”
- This term should be translated differently from “hades,” “sheol,” or “hell.”

(See Also: [Hades](#), [hell](#), punish)

Bible References:

- Luke 8:30-31
- Romans 10:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: G00120, G54210

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:11](#); [11:7](#); [17:8](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#))

accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 4:4
- Jeremiah 2:9-11
- Luke 6:6-8
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G14580, G21470, G25960, G27240

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:10](#))

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), sleep with, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:22](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:5](#); [11:12](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:18](#))

age, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 2:7
- Hebrews 6:5
- Job 5:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G01650, G10740

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [1:18](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [5:13](#); [7:12](#); [10:6](#); [11:15](#); [14:11](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [19:3](#); [20:10](#); [22:5](#))

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G38410

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:8](#); [4:8](#); [11:17](#); [15:3](#); [16:7](#); [16:14](#); [19:6](#); [19:15](#); [21:22](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:9](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [9:13](#); [11:1](#); [14:18](#); [16:7](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:3](#); [15:3](#); [17:6](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [1:7](#); [3:14](#); [5:14](#); [7:12](#); [19:4](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:20](#); [2:1](#); [2:8](#); [2:12](#); [2:18](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:14](#); [5:2](#); [5:11](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:11](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [9:1](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [11:15](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#); [14:6](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#); [14:19](#); [15:1](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:8](#); [16:1](#); [16:5](#); [17:1](#); [17:7](#); [18:1](#); [18:21](#); [19:17](#); [20:1](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#); [21:17](#); [22:6](#); [22:8](#); [22:16](#))

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God. (This and the other uses are symbolic actions, see [Symbolic Action](#).)
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:18](#))

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [18:20](#); [21:14](#))

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H8392, G27870

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:19](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh, box, Box of the Testimony, Box of the Covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:19](#))

ash, ashes

Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word “dust” is used with the term “ashes” in the phrase, “dust and ashes.” This phrase can be translated as “dust and ashes” or simply as “ashes.”
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Psalms 102:9
- Psalms 113:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0080, H0665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G28680, G47000, G50770, G55220

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:19](#))

Asher

Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterannian Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:6](#))

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Rome, Paul, [Ephesus](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 2 Timothy 1:15-18
- Acts 6:8-9
- Acts 16:7
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Romans 16:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G07730

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Revelation 16:14](#); [16:16](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#); [20:8](#))

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: dominion, [king](#), [ruler](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:26](#); [Notes](#); [6:8](#); [11:6](#); [12:10](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [13:7](#); [13:12](#); [14:18](#); [16:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [18:1](#); [22:14](#))

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:10](#); [19:2](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:8](#); [16:19](#); [17:5](#); [18:2](#); [18:10](#); [18:21](#))

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), Canaan, [curse](#), donkey, [Euphrates River](#), Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5
- Revelation 2:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G09030

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: grain, thresh, [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:6](#))

bear

Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), Elisha)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1677, G07150

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:2](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), Elisha, [endure](#), [fruit](#), iniquity, report, [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [17:7](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:8](#); [11:7](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [15:2](#); [16:2](#); [16:10](#); [16:13](#); [17:3](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:16](#); [17:17](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#); [20:10](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), Christian, disciple, [faith](#), trust)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:8](#))

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

(Go back to: [Revelation 20:9](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:8](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:14](#); [20:2](#))

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:10
- 1 Thessalonians 3:11-13
- 2 Peter 3:14
- Colossians 1:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 2:15
- Philippians 3:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, H8535, G02730, G02740, G02980, G02990, G03380, G04100, G04230

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:5](#))

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, [slander](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:1](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:21](#); [17:3](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”

- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#); [14:13](#); [16:15](#); [19:9](#); [20:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:14](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [5:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:12](#); [7:14](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [11:6](#); [12:11](#); [14:20](#); [16:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#); [17:6](#); [18:24](#); [19:2](#); [19:13](#))

body

Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); loins; [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:8](#); [11:9](#))

Book of Life

Definition:

The term "Book of Life" is used to refer to where God has written the names of all the people whom he has redeemed and given eternal life to.

- Revelation refers to this book as "the Lamb's Book of Life." This could be translated as "the book of life belonging to Jesus, the Lamb of God." The sacrifice of Jesus on the cross paid the penalty for people's sins so that they can have eternal life through faith in him.
- The word for "book" can also mean "scroll" or "letter" or "writing" or "legal document." It may be literal or figurative.

(See also: [everlasting](#), [lamb](#), [life](#), sacrifice, [scroll](#))

Bible References:

- Philippians 4:3
- Psalms 69:28-29
- Revelation 3:5-6
- Revelation 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H5612, G09760, G22220

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:5](#); [13:8](#); [17:8](#); [20:15](#); [21:27](#))

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:2](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:9](#); [4:10](#); [5:8](#); [5:14](#); [7:11](#); [11:16](#); [19:4](#); [19:10](#); [22:8](#))

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: armor, high priest, [pierce](#), [priest](#), [temple](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Isaiah 59:17
- Revelation 9:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833, H8302, G23820

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:9](#); [9:17](#))

bride, bridal

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G35650

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:23](#); [19:7](#); [21:2](#); [21:9](#); [22:17](#))

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the **man** who will marry the bride (the **woman**).

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 2:15-16
- John 3:30
- Luke 5:35
- Mark 2:19
- Mark 2:20
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G35660

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:23](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:15](#); [2:18](#); [9:20](#); [18:12](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:9](#); [6:11](#); [12:10](#); [19:10](#); [22:9](#))

burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:24](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:9](#); [2:20](#); [8:13](#); [11:8](#); [12:9](#); [14:18](#); [16:16](#); [17:14](#); [19:11](#); [19:13](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylon for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), exile, [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:10](#))

caught up

Definition:

The term “caught up” often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase “caught up with” refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is “overtake.”
- The apostle Paul talked about being “caught up” to the third heaven. This could also be translated as “taken up.”
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be “caught up” together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, “my sins have caught up with me” could be translated as “I am receiving the consequences of my sin” or “because of my sin I am suffering” or “my sin is causing me trouble.”

(see: miracle, overtake, [suffer](#), trouble)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
- Acts 8:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1692, G07260

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:5](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:9](#); [18:13](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), promise, [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:23](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [22:16](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:14](#))

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:5](#); [11:15](#); [12:10](#); [20:4](#); [20:6](#))

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to all people who believe in Jesus. Sometimes “church” refers to a part of that larger group who regularly met together in a certain place, such as the “church at Ephesus.”

- This term literally refers to an assembly or congregation of people who were “called out” of the general population to meet together for a special purpose.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home to pray together and to hear and discuss scripture. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:12
- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- 1 Timothy 3:5
- Acts 9:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 4:15
- Ephesians 5:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 4:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:9** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G15770

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4](#); [1:11](#); [1:20](#); [2:1](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:23](#); [2:29](#); [3:1](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:22](#); [22:16](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Revelation 16:13](#); [17:4](#); [18:2](#); [19:8](#); [19:14](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:13](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:18](#); [4:4](#); [7:9](#); [7:13](#); [10:1](#); [11:3](#); [12:1](#); [15:6](#); [16:15](#); [17:4](#); [18:16](#); [19:8](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:12](#); [10:1](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:17](#); [14:12](#))

commander

Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 2:14
- Mark 6:21-22
- Proverbs 6:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G55060

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:15](#); [19:18](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:5](#))

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Revelation 19:2](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), judge, [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:2](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:19](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:7](#); [18:13](#))

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:14](#); [4:11](#); [5:13](#); [8:9](#); [10:6](#); [13:8](#); [17:8](#))

creature, creation

Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 4:10-12
- Ezekiel 1:9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G22260, G29370, G29380

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:14](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [7:11](#); [14:3](#); [15:7](#); [19:4](#))

crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Paul calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- If a person is "crowned" this could be translated as "a crown was put on his head."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:3
- Lamentations 5:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 4:1
- Psalms 21:3
- Revelation 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G12380, G47350, G47370

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:10](#); [3:11](#); [4:4](#); [4:10](#); [6:2](#); [9:7](#); [12:1](#); [12:3](#); [13:1](#); [14:14](#); [19:12](#))

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:23
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:1** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:4** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:6** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:9** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: G03880, G43620, G47170, G49570

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:8](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead, [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:4](#); [5:5](#); [6:10](#); [7:2](#); [7:10](#); [10:3](#); [12:2](#); [14:15](#); [18:2](#); [18:9](#); [18:11](#); [18:15](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [19:1](#); [19:17](#); [21:4](#))

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:16
- Acts 8:6
- Luke 5:13
- Luke 6:19
- Luke 8:43
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 9:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:6** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:8** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:3** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:2** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H0622, G12950, G17430, G23220, G23230, G23860, G23900, G23920, G25110, G36470, G49820, G51980, G51990

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:3](#); [13:12](#); [22:2](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [Revelation 22:3](#))

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [Revelation 8:12](#); [9:2](#); [16:10](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 5:2
- 2 Timothy 2:8
- Acts 2:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 1:32
- Mark 2:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:3** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:4** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:5** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:6** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:9** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G11380

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:7](#); [5:5](#); [22:16](#))

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [time](#), judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:10](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [4:8](#); [6:17](#); [7:15](#); [8:12](#); [9:6](#); [9:15](#); [10:7](#); [11:3](#); [11:6](#); [11:9](#); [11:11](#); [12:6](#); [12:10](#); [14:11](#); [16:14](#); [18:8](#); [20:10](#); [21:25](#))

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a "lie." The act of deceiving someone is called "lying," "deceit," or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To "lie" is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:20](#); [12:9](#); [13:14](#); [18:23](#); [19:20](#); [20:3](#); [20:8](#); [20:10](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:9](#))

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: profane, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:4](#); [14:4](#); [21:27](#))

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: demon-possessed, [Satan](#), [false god](#), [false god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- James 2:19
- James 3:15
- Luke 4:36
- Mark 3:22
- Matthew 4:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:9** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:8** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:5** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G01690, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G41900, G41510, G41520, G41890

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:20](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [18:2](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:6](#); [12:14](#); [17:3](#))

desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:16](#); [18:17](#); [18:19](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:18](#))

detest, detested, detestable

Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.”

(See also: divination, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 43:32
- Jeremiah 7:30
- Leviticus 11:10
- Luke 16:15
- Revelation 17:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1602, H6973, H8130, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, H8581, G09460, G09470, G09480, G47670, G34040

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:2](#))

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Revelation 10:9](#); [10:10](#); [11:5](#); [12:4](#); [17:16](#); [20:9](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [2:8](#); [2:10](#); [2:11](#); [2:23](#); [3:1](#); [3:2](#); [6:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [9:6](#); [11:18](#); [12:11](#); [13:3](#); [13:12](#); [14:13](#); [16:3](#); [18:8](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [20:14](#); [Notes](#); [21:4](#); [21:8](#))

discipline, self-discipline

Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

- Ephesians 6:4
- Hebrews 12:5
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148, G14680

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:19](#))

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:2](#); [17:6](#))

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: Daniel, [free](#), Nebuchadnezzar, [power](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:23
- Daniel 7:4
- Jeremiah 4:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 4:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, G01050

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:7](#); [8:13](#); [12:14](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [world](#), [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [1:7](#); [3:10](#); [5:3](#); [5:6](#); [5:10](#); [5:13](#); [6:4](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [6:13](#); [6:15](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:7](#); [8:13](#); [9:1](#); [9:3](#); [9:4](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [11:4](#); [11:6](#); [11:10](#); [11:18](#); [12:4](#); [12:9](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:16](#); [13:3](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [14:3](#); [14:6](#); [14:7](#); [14:15](#); [14:16](#); [14:18](#); [14:19](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:18](#); [17:2](#); [17:5](#); [17:8](#); [17:18](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:9](#); [18:11](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [19:2](#); [19:19](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:11](#); [21:1](#); [21:24](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:8](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:4](#); [4:10](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:14](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [11:16](#); [14:3](#); [19:4](#))

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:9](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [3:10](#); [13:10](#); [14:12](#))

Ephesus, Ephesian

Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), Paul, Timothy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 1:3
- 2 Timothy 4:11-13
- Acts 19:1
- Ephesians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G21790, G21800, G21810

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:11](#); [2:1](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:6](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:14](#); [16:12](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), good, [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:2** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”

- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [Notes](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), sacrifice, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:13](#))

exult, exultant

Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:1
- Isaiah 13:3
- Job 6:10
- Psalm 68:1-3
- Zephaniah 2:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [Revelation 19:7](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:16](#); [4:7](#); [6:16](#); [7:11](#); [9:7](#); [10:1](#); [11:16](#); [12:14](#); [20:11](#); [22:4](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:13](#); [2:19](#); [13:10](#); [Notes](#); [14:12](#); [Notes](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [3:14](#); [17:14](#); [19:11](#); [21:5](#); [22:6](#))

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1-3
- 2 Peter 2:1
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 6:26
- Matthew 7:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G55780

(Go back to: [Revelation 16:13](#); [19:20](#); [20:10](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:8](#); [18:8](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: awe, Yahweh, [Lord](#), [marvel](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:17](#); [2:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:18](#); [14:7](#); [15:4](#); [18:10](#); [18:15](#); [19:5](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [Revelation 19:9](#); [19:17](#))

fellowship

Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- Philippians 1:3-6
- Philippians 2:1
- Philippians 3:10
- Psalms 55:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G28420, G28440, G33520, G47900

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:4](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:13](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:14](#); [2:18](#); [3:18](#); [4:5](#); [8:5](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [9:17](#); [9:18](#); [10:1](#); [11:5](#); [13:13](#); [14:10](#); [14:18](#); [15:2](#); [16:8](#); [17:16](#); [18:8](#); [19:12](#); [19:20](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [20:14](#); [20:15](#); [21:8](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), sacrifice, [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:4](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:16](#); [19:18](#); [19:21](#))

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3999, G26270

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:15](#))

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: flock, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:22](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0134, H0787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G23100, G23110, G26020

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:8](#); [17:8](#); [21:14](#); [21:19](#))

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:17](#); [8:10](#); [14:7](#); [16:4](#); [21:6](#))

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 2:11-12
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G30300

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:13](#))

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:15](#); [13:16](#); [19:18](#); [20:3](#); [21:6](#); [22:17](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:14](#); [22:2](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:11](#); [17:17](#))

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:3
- Psalms 21:9
- Revelation 9:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G25750

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:15](#); [9:2](#))

Gad

Facts:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:5](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:12](#); [21:13](#); [21:15](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [22:14](#))

Gentile

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), Jacob, [Jew](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 9:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 2:16
- Luke 2:32
- Matthew 5:47
- Matthew 6:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G14820, G14840, G16720

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:2](#))

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:10](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:13](#); [15:6](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, exalt, [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [Notes](#); [4:9](#); [4:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [7:12](#); [11:13](#); [14:7](#); [15:4](#); [15:8](#); [16:9](#); [18:1](#); [18:7](#); [19:1](#); [19:7](#); [21:11](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:26](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: Revelation 1:1; 1:8; 2:7; 3:1; 3:2; 3:12; 3:14; 4:5; 4:8; 4:11; 5:6; 5:9; 5:10; 7:2; 7:3; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:15; 7:17; 8:2; 8:4; 9:4; 9:13; 10:7; 11:1; 11:11; 11:13; 11:16; 11:17; 11:19; 12:5; 12:6; 12:10; 12:17; 13:6; 14:4; 14:7; 14:10; 14:12; 14:19; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:7; 15:8; 16:1; 16:7; 16:9; 16:11; 16:14; 16:19; 16:21; 17:17; 18:5; 18:8; 18:20; 19:1; 19:4; 19:5; 19:6; 19:9; 19:10; 19:15; 19:17; 20:6; 21:2; 21:3; 21:7; 21:10; 21:11; 21:22; 21:23; 22:1; 22:3; 22:5; 22:6; 22:9; 22:18; 22:19)

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ancestor, [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [2:28](#); [3:5](#); [3:21](#); [14:1](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:20; 21:8; 22:15](#))

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

(Go back to: [Revelation 11 General Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:20](#); [2:1](#); [3:18](#); [4:4](#); [5:8](#); [8:3](#); [9:7](#); [9:13](#); [9:20](#); [14:14](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [17:4](#); [18:12](#); [18:16](#); [21:15](#); [21:18](#); [21:21](#))

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), sacrifice, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:25
- Colossians 1:23
- Galatians 1:6
- Luke 8:1-3
- Mark 1:14
- Philippians 2:22
- Romans 1:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:6** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:1** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:1** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:3** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G20970, G20980, G42830

(Go back to: [Revelation 10:7](#); [14:6](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4](#); [22:21](#))

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), vineyard, [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:18](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:9](#))

Greek, Grecian, Hellenist

Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The adjective "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" or "Hellenists" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic. The term "Hellenists" comes from the pronunciation of the Greek word for a Greek-speaker.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Gentile](#), Greece, [Hebrew](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:1
- Acts 9:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 3:11
- Galatians 2:3-5
- John 7:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G16720, G16730, G16740, G16750, G16760

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:11](#))

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms "Hades" (in Greek) and "Sheol" (in Hebrew) are proper names for the "underworld," meaning an underground dwelling place where people from ancient cultures believed a dead person would go after he had died.

- In the Old Testament, the Hebrew term "Sheol" can be used either as a proper name or as a common noun meaning "underground."
- In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" is described as a place for dead people who have rejected Jesus. The New Testament describes people as "going down" to Hades.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term "Sheol" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place of the dead;" "place for dead spirits;" "the pit;" or "death."
- The New Testament term "Hades" can also be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place for unbelieving dead souls;" "place of torment for the dead;" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
- Some translations keep the proper names "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:31
- Genesis 44:29
- Jonah 2:2
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 1:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:18](#); [6:8](#); [20:13](#); [20:14](#))

hail, hailstone, hailstorm

Facts:

This term usually refers to lumps of frozen water that fall from the sky. Although spelled the same way in English, a different word, "hail" is used in greeting someone and can mean, "hello" or "greetings to you."

- Hail that comes down from the sky is in the form of balls or chunks of ice called "hailstones."
- Usually hailstones are small (only a few centimeters wide), but sometimes there are hailstones that are as big as 20 centimeters wide and that weigh over a kilogram.
- The book of Revelation in the New Testament describes enormous hailstones weighing 50 kilograms that God will cause to fall on earth when he judges people for their wickedness in the end times.
- The word "hail" that is a formal greeting in older English literally means "rejoice" and could be translated as "Greetings!" or "Hello!"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 27:29
- Matthew 28:8-10
- Psalms 78:48
- Psalms 148:8
- Revelation 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0068, H0417, H1258, H1259, G54630, G54640

(Go back to: [Revelation 8:7](#); [16:21](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [power](#), [right hand](#), [honor](#), [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:16](#); [6:5](#); [7:9](#); [8:4](#); [9:20](#); [10:2](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [13:16](#); [14:9](#); [14:14](#); [17:4](#); [19:2](#); [20:1](#); [20:4](#))

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#))

harp, harpist

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), fir, psalm, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 5:23-24
- Daniel 3:5
- Psalm 33:1-3
- Revelation 5:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5059, H7030, G27880, G27890, G27900

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:8](#); [14:2](#); [15:2](#); [18:22](#))

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, [good news](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:15](#); [14:16](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: chief, grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:14](#); [4:4](#); [9:7](#); [9:17](#); [9:19](#); [10:1](#); [12:1](#); [12:3](#); [13:1](#); [13:3](#); [14:14](#); [17:3](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [18:19](#); [19:12](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:23](#); [17:17](#); [18:7](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: Revelation 3:12; 4:1; 4:2; 5:3; 5:13; 6:13; 6:14; 8:1; 8:10; 8:13; 9:1; 10:1; 10:4; 10:5; 10:6; 10:8; 11:6; 11:12; 11:13; 11:15; 11:19; 12:1; 12:3; 12:4; 12:7; 12:8; 12:10; 12:12; 13:6; 13:13; 14:2; 14:7; 14:13; 14:17; Notes; 15:1; 15:5; 16:11; 16:21; 18:1; 18:4; 18:5; 18:20; Notes; 19:1; 19:11; 19:14; Notes; 20:1; 20:9; 20:11; 21:1; 21:2; 21:10)

Hebrew

Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:11](#); [16:16](#))

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

Bible References:

- James 3:6
- Luke 12:5
- Mark 9:42-44
- Matthew 5:21-22
- Matthew 5:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G00860, G04390, G04400, G10670, G30410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G50200, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Revelation 9 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

holy city

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “holy city” refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for “holy” and “city” that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: [heaven](#), [holy](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 4:5-6
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5892, H6944, G00400, G41720

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:2](#); [21:2](#); [21:10](#); [22:19](#))

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 2:27
- Acts 3:13-14
- Isaiah 5:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 4:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H0376, H6918, G00400, G37410

(Go back to: [Revelation 16:5](#))

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**”
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:10](#); [2:7](#); [2:11](#); [2:17](#); [2:29](#); [3:6](#); [3:13](#); [3:22](#); [4:2](#); [14:13](#); [17:3](#); [21:10](#); [22:17](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:7](#); [4:8](#); [6:10](#); [11:2](#); [14:10](#); [15:4](#); [20:6](#); [21:2](#); [21:10](#); [22:11](#); [22:19](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [Revelation 10:9](#); [10:10](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:9](#); [4:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [7:12](#); [21:26](#))

horn, horned

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), deer, goat, [power](#) royal, [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:6](#); [9:13](#); [12:3](#); [13:1](#); [13:11](#); [17:3](#); [17:7](#); [17:12](#); [17:16](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:8](#); [9:7](#); [9:9](#); [9:17](#); [9:19](#); [14:20](#); [18:13](#); [19:11](#); [19:14](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#); [19:21](#))

hour

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: hour)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: G56100

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:3](#); [3:10](#); [9:15](#); [11:13](#); [14:7](#); [14:15](#); [17:12](#); [18:10](#); [18:17](#); [18:19](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:14](#); [13:15](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [15:2](#); [16:2](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#))

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
 - “who belong to Christ”
 - “because you believe in Christ”
 - “because Christ has saved us”
 - “in service to the Lord”
 - “relying on the Lord”
 - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:5
- 2 Corinthians 2:17
- 2 Timothy 1:1
- Galatians 1:22
- Galatians 2:17
- Philemon 1:6
- Revelation 1:10
- Romans 9:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: G15190, G29620, G55470

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:9](#); [14:13](#))

in labor, labor pains, birth pains, pains of childbirth

Definition:

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), last day)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:19-20
- Galatians 4:19
- Isaiah 13:8
- Jeremiah 13:21
- Psalms 48:6
- Romans 8:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2342, H3018, H3205, H5999, H6887, G34490, G49440, G56040, G56050

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:2](#))

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:4
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 1:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G23680, G23690, G23700, G23790, G30310

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:8](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [18:13](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land, possess)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:7](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#); [7:4](#); [21:12](#))

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:7](#))

it is written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), law, [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 3:4
- Mark 9:12
- Matthew 4:6
- Revelation 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G11250

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26-27
- John 2:13
- Luke 4:9-11
- Luke 13:5
- Mark 3:7-8
- Mark 3:20-22
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:5** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:2** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:2** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G24140, G24150, G24190

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:12](#); [21:2](#); [21:10](#))

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, [kingdom of God](#), Mary, Savior, [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."

- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:5](#); [1:9](#); [12:17](#); [14:12](#); [17:6](#); [19:10](#); [20:4](#); [22:16](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#))

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:5
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 3:11
- John 2:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:2** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G24500, G24510, G24520, G24530, G24540

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:9](#); [3:9](#))

Jezebel

Facts:

Jezebel was the wicked wife of King Ahab of Israel.

- Jezebel influenced Ahab and the rest of Israel to worship idols.
- She also killed many of God's prophets.
- Jezebel caused an innocent man named Naboth to be killed so that Ahab could steal Naboth's vineyard.
- Jezebel was finally killed due to all the evil things she had done. Elijah prophesied about how she would die and it happened exactly as he had predicted.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, Elijah, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 2 Kings 9:7
- 2 Kings 9:31
- Revelation 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0348, G24030

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:20](#))

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- John 1:19-21
- Mark 3:17-19
- Matthew 4:21-22
- Revelation 1:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- **44:1** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- **44:6** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- **44:7** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"
- **44:9** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24910

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:4](#); [1:9](#); [22:8](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Ephraim, [Manasseh](#), Jacob, Rachel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:8](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:10](#); [19:7](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Judah (kingdom), [Jew](#), Judea, Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:5](#); [7:5](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:10](#); [11:18](#); [14:7](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [17:1](#); [Notes](#); [18:8](#); [18:10](#); [18:20](#); [19:2](#); [19:11](#); [Notes](#); [20:4](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [5:10](#); [6:15](#); [9:11](#); [10:11](#); [15:3](#); [16:12](#); [16:14](#); [17:2](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:14](#); [17:18](#); [18:3](#); [18:9](#); [19:16](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#); [21:24](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:15](#); [16:10](#); [17:12](#); [17:17](#); [17:18](#))

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), King of the Jews, [reign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:2** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”

- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [1:9](#); [12:10](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [2:9](#); [2:13](#); [2:17](#); [2:19](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:15](#); [7:14](#); [12:12](#); [19:12](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [labor pains](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [14:13](#); [18:17](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:6](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [Notes](#); [6:1](#); [6:16](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:14](#); [7:17](#); [12:11](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [14:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:10](#); [15:3](#); [17:14](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [21:9](#); [21:14](#); [21:22](#); [21:23](#); [21:27](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#))

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:5](#); [8:10](#); [18:23](#); [21:23](#); [22:5](#))

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 5:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 4:21-23
- Matthew 5:15-16
- Revelation 1:12-13
- Revelation 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G30870

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:20](#); [2:1](#); [2:5](#); [11:4](#))

leopard

Facts:

A leopard is a large, cat-like, wild animal that is brown with black spots.

- A leopard is a kind of animal which catches other animals and eats them.
- In the Bible, the suddenness of disaster is compared to a leopard, which pounces suddenly on its prey.
- The prophet Daniel and the apostle John tell about visions in which they saw a beast that looked like a leopard.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [beast](#), Daniel, prey, [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 7:6
- Hosea 13:7
- Revelation 13:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5245, H5246

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:2](#))

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [priest](#), sacrifice, [temple](#), Jacob, Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:7](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:18](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:10](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [7:2](#); [7:17](#); [8:9](#); [10:6](#); [11:11](#); [12:11](#); [13:8](#); [13:14](#); [15:7](#); [16:3](#); [17:8](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:12](#); [20:15](#); [21:6](#); [21:27](#); [22:1](#); [22:2](#); [22:14](#); [22:17](#); [22:19](#))

light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:23](#); [21:24](#); [22:5](#))

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:10](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [1:17](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [2:24](#); [2:27](#); [2:28](#); [3:3](#); [3:21](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [5:6](#); [6:1](#); [6:6](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:14](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [8:12](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:5](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:17](#); [9:19](#); [10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [11:1](#); [12:15](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:11](#); [14:2](#); [14:14](#); [15:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [17:12](#); [18:6](#); [18:18](#); [18:21](#); [19:1](#); [19:6](#); [20:8](#); [21:2](#); [21:11](#); [21:18](#); [21:21](#); [22:1](#); [22:12](#))

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:7](#); [5:5](#); [9:8](#); [9:17](#); [10:3](#); [13:2](#))

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), John (the Baptist), [plague](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 1:6
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G02000

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:3](#); [9:7](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [4:8](#); [4:11](#); [6:10](#); [7:14](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [11:19](#); [14:13](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [16:7](#); [17:14](#); [18:8](#); [19:6](#); [19:16](#); [21:22](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), sacrifice, [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#); [2:4](#); [2:19](#); [3:9](#); [3:19](#); [12:11](#); [22:15](#))

lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:14](#))

Manasseh

Facts:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), Ephraim, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G31280

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:6](#))

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: bread, [desert](#), grain, [heaven](#), Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 9:3-5
- John 6:30-31
- Joshua 5:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G31310

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:17](#))

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [angel](#), Daniel, messenger, Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:13
- Daniel 10:21
- Ezra 8:8
- Revelation 12:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G34130

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:7](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “mighty” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [5:2](#); [5:13](#); [10:1](#); [11:18](#); [13:13](#); [13:16](#); [18:2](#); [18:8](#); [18:21](#); [19:6](#); [19:18](#))

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:9](#); [17:13](#))

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:5](#); [9:10](#); [9:15](#); [11:2](#); [13:5](#); [22:2](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [Revelation 15:3](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [18:11](#); [18:15](#); [18:19](#); [21:4](#))

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 4:2-4
- Ephesians 6:19-20
- Luke 8:9-10
- Mark 4:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G34660

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:20](#); [10:7](#); [17:5](#); [17:7](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:3](#); [2:13](#); [2:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [3:8](#); [3:12](#); [6:8](#); [8:11](#); [9:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [13:1](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#); [13:17](#); [14:1](#); [14:11](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [16:9](#); [17:3](#); [17:5](#); [17:8](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:16](#); [21:12](#); [21:14](#); [22:4](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:6](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), Canaan, [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: Revelation 2:26; 5:9; 7:9; 10:11; 11:9; 11:18; 12:5; 13:7; 14:6; 14:8; 15:4; 16:19; 17:15; 18:3; 18:23; 19:15; 20:3; 20:8; 21:24; 21:26; 22:2)

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Revelation 10:6](#))

obey, keep

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), law)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *_obeyed_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#); [2:26](#); [3:3](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [12:17](#); [14:12](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:6](#); [18:13](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:4](#))

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:9](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4; 6:4](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:4](#); [21:3](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:9](#); [7:9](#); [10:11](#); [11:9](#); [13:7](#); [14:6](#); [17:15](#); [18:4](#); [21:3](#))

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:14](#))

persecute

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 1:13-14
- John 5:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 5:10
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 3:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:2** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:4** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G13750, G13760, G13770, G15590, G23470

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:13](#))

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:11
- Ephesians 6:18
- James 5:9-11
- Luke 8:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G31150, G43430, G52810

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:3](#); [2:19](#))

pierce, pierced

Definition:

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: [cross](#), [Jesus](#), [servant](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 22:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0935, H1856, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H4272, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G13300, G13380, G15740, G26600, G35720, G40440

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#))

pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A “cistern” was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [prison](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 6:39
- Proverbs 1:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:1](#); [9:2](#))

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), Pharaoh)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 9:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 9:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G30610, G41270

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:18](#); [9:20](#); [11:6](#); [15:1](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:21](#); [18:4](#); [18:8](#); [21:9](#); [22:18](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [strength](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:5
- Colossians 1:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 1:25
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 1:17
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 3:21
- Psalm 80:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G14110, G14150, G17540, G17560, G18490, G18500, G21590, G24780, G24790, G29040, G31680

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:8](#); [4:11](#); [5:12](#); [7:12](#); [9:3](#); [9:10](#); [9:19](#); [11:6](#); [11:17](#); [12:10](#); [13:2](#); [15:8](#); [17:13](#); [18:3](#); [19:1](#); [20:6](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:12](#); [5:13](#); [7:12](#); [19:5](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:8](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G12290, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27830, G27840, G29800, G42830
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G51800, G59100, G12290, G18610, G20970, G26050, G27820, G27840, G29800, G31420, G41350

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:2](#))

precious, valuable, expensive, fine

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:1
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 1:7
- Luke 7:2-5
- Psalms 36:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G09270, G17840, G24720, G41850, G41860, G50920, G50930

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:4](#); [18:12](#); [18:16](#); [21:11](#); [21:19](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:6](#); [5:10](#); [20:6](#))

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:10](#); [18:2](#); [20:7](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), law, [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#); [2:20](#); [10:7](#); [10:11](#); [Notes](#); [11:3](#); [11:6](#); [11:10](#); [11:18](#); [16:6](#); [Notes](#); [18:20](#); [18:24](#); [19:10](#); [Notes](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), [sexual immorality](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:15](#); [17:16](#); [19:2](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), sacrifice, [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [Revelation 4 General Notes](#); [4:10](#); [5:14](#); [Notes](#); [7:11](#); [9:20](#); [11:1](#); [11:16](#); [13:4](#); [13:8](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [15:4](#); [16:2](#); [19:4](#); [19:10](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [Revelation 15:6](#); [21:18](#); [21:21](#))

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

(Go back to: [Revelation 17:4](#); [18:12](#); [18:16](#))

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#), Persia [ruler](#), Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 8:27
- Esther 1:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G09380

(Go back to: [Revelation 18:7](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:1](#))

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:19](#))

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5
- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:17](#); [2:28](#); [3:3](#); [4:11](#); [5:12](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [17:12](#); [18:4](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:4](#))

reed

Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:15](#); [21:16](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:10](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [19:6](#); [20:4](#); [20:6](#); [22:5](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:5](#); [2:16](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [3:3](#); [3:19](#); [Notes](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:11](#))

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 3:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 5:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 3:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G03860, G14540, G18150

(Go back to: [Revelation 20:5](#); [20:6](#))

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:5](#))

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [3:18](#); [Notes](#); [15:4](#))

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:18](#); [22:12](#))

right hand

Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person's body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person's right side, to the direction of a person's right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:16](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [2:1](#); [5:1](#); [5:7](#); [10:5](#); [13:16](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), good, [holy](#), integrity, just, law, law, [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [Revelation 1 General Notes](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [19:2](#); [19:8](#); [19:11](#); [22:11](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0145, H0155, H0899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G17460, G20670, G24400, G47490, G40160, G55110

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:11](#); [7:9](#); [7:14](#); [19:13](#); [19:16](#); [22:14](#))

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G25630, G44630, G44640

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:27](#); [11:1](#); [12:5](#); [19:15](#))

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), governor, [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5](#))

run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To “run in such a way as to win the prize” refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To “run in the path of your commands” means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. * To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. * “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country. * Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” * The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”*

(See also: [false god](#), [persevere](#), [refuge](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:18
- Galatians 2:2
- Galatians 5:7
- Philippians 2:16
- Proverbs 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0213, H0386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G04130, G13770, G16010, G15300, G15320, G19980, G27010, G37290, G40630, G43700, G43900, G48900, G49360, G51430, G52400, G52950, G53430

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:9](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), camel, goat, humble, [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:12](#); [11:3](#))

saint

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:10
- 2 Corinthians 9:12-15
- Revelation 16:6
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G00400

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:8](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [11:18](#); [13:7](#); [13:10](#); [14:12](#); [16:6](#); [17:6](#); [18:20](#); [18:24](#); [19:8](#); [20:9](#); [22:21](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:13](#); [2:24](#); [3:9](#); [12:9](#); [12:12](#); [20:2](#); [20:7](#); [20:10](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:10](#); [12:10](#); [19:1](#))

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: [seal](#), [synagogue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:3
- Luke 4:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G09740, G09750

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:11](#); [Notes](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [6:14](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [13:8](#); [17:8](#); [20:12](#); [21:27](#))

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:2](#); [5:5](#); [5:9](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:9](#); [6:12](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:8](#); [8:1](#); [9:4](#); [10:4](#); [20:3](#); [22:10](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), descendant)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:17](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:6](#))

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

(Go back to: [Revelation 19:20; 20:2](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: appoint, [redeem](#), castout)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [1:11](#); [5:6](#); [11:10](#); [22:6](#); [22:16](#))

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), disobey, Eden, [evil](#), prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:19](#); [12:9](#); [12:14](#); [12:15](#); [20:2](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), house, [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560
- (Enslave) H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:1](#); [2:20](#); [6:15](#); [7:3](#); [7:15](#); [10:7](#); [11:18](#); [13:16](#); [15:3](#); [19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:18](#); [22:3](#); [22:6](#))

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 3:5-8
- Ephesians 5:3
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 4:13-14
- Matthew 5:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G16080, G42020, G42030

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [9:21](#); [14:8](#); [17:2](#); [17:4](#); [18:3](#); [18:9](#); [19:2](#); [21:8](#); [22:15](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, [accuse](#), [rebuke](#), [false god](#), humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:18](#))

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), livestock, pastor)

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to

- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:27](#); [7:17](#); [12:5](#); [19:15](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
 - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
 - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:1](#); [12:3](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [15:1](#); [16:14](#); [19:20](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:20](#); [18:12](#))

Simeon

Facts:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's genealogy of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 2:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:7](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:5; Notes](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [Notes](#))

slander, slanderers, revile, insult

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:9](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:4](#))

snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can't get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), prey, [Satan](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 7:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G00640, G23390, G23400, G38020, G38030, G39850, G46250

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#))

snow

Facts:

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Lebanon, [pure](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:6
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:3
- Psalms 147:16
- Revelation 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7949, H7950, H8517, G55100

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:14](#))

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:8](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: descendant, ancestor, [Son of God](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#); [7:4](#); [12:5](#); [21:7](#); [21:12](#))

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), ancestor, [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:9** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:5** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”

- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:18](#))

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:56
- Daniel 7:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 3:12-13
- Luke 6:5
- Mark 2:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 80:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, H0606, H1121, H1247, G04440, G52070

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:13](#); [14:14](#))

sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power:"
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), [demon](#), divination, [false god](#), magic, sacrifice, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Revelation 9:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G30950, G30960, G30970, G53310, G53320, G53330

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:21](#); [18:23](#); [21:8](#); [22:15](#))

soul, self, person

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:9](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [20:4](#); [Notes](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [demon](#), [breath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4](#); [Notes](#); [3:1](#); [4:5](#); [5:6](#); [11:11](#); [Notes](#); [16:14](#); [19:10](#); [22:6](#))

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:1](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:2](#); [5:12](#); [6:15](#); [7:12](#); [12:8](#); [18:10](#))

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:23
- Galatians 5:11
- Matthew 5:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 9:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G30370, G43490, G46250

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#))

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:10](#))

sulfur, sulfurous

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as "brimstone," which literally means "burning stone."

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include "yellow stone that burns" or "burning yellowish rock."

(See also: Gomorrah, [judge](#), Lot, rebel, [Sodom](#), [godly](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:24
- Isaiah 34:9
- Luke 17:29
- Revelation 20:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1614, G23030

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:17](#); [9:18](#); [14:10](#); [19:20](#); [20:10](#); [21:8](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:16](#); [2:12](#); [2:16](#); [6:4](#); [6:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:14](#); [19:15](#); [19:21](#))

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 6:9
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 6:59
- Luke 4:14
- Matthew 6:1-2
- Matthew 9:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G06560, G07520, G48640

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:9](#); [3:9](#))

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [Revelation 13:6](#); [15:5](#); [21:3](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:3
- Acts 2:40-42
- John 7:14
- Luke 4:31
- Matthew 4:23
- Psalms 32:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G13170, G13210, G13220, G20850, G26050, G27270, G31000, G23120, G25670, G38110, G49940

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:20](#); [2:24](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), house)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:12](#); [7:15](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:19](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [16:1](#); [16:17](#); [21:22](#))

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:13](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [2:10](#); [3:10](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- In some places in the Old Testament, “Testimony” refers specifically to the tablets of stone on which Yahweh wrote his ten commandments. From that use it came to refer to God’s law more broadly.
- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- Ways to translate “Testimony” could include, “the stone slabs on which I wrote my commands” or “God’s law” or “God’s commands” or “the record of the agreement between Yahweh and Israel.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:2](#); [1:5](#); [1:9](#); [2:13](#); [3:14](#); [6:9](#); [11:3](#); [11:7](#); [12:11](#); [12:17](#); [15:5](#); [17:6](#); [19:10](#); [20:4](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#))

the twelve, the eleven

Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: [apostle](#), disciple)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 6:2
- Luke 9:1
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G14270, G17330

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:14](#))

thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), crime, [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), Samaria, [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:3](#); [16:15](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:4](#); [2:13](#); [3:21](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [5:1](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:11](#); [5:13](#); [6:16](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [8:3](#); [11:16](#); [12:5](#); [13:2](#); [14:3](#); [16:10](#); [16:17](#); [19:4](#); [19:5](#); [20:4](#); [20:11](#); [20:12](#); [21:3](#); [21:5](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#))

time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 1:7
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 8:29
- Psalms 68:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0116, H0227, H0310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G07440, G05300, G10740, G12080, G14410, G15970, G16260, G19090, G20340, G21190, G21210, G22350, G22500, G25400, G34610, G35680, G37640, G38190, G39560, G39990, G41780, G41810, G41830, G42180, G42870, G43400, G44550, G51190, G51510, G53050, G55500, G55510, G56100

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:3](#); [2:21](#); [6:11](#); [11:18](#); [12:12](#); [12:14](#); [20:3](#); [22:10](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:19](#))

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:9](#); [7:9](#); [10:11](#); [11:9](#); [13:7](#); [14:6](#); [16:10](#); [17:15](#))

torment, tormented, tormentors

Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), Job, Savior, [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 1:11-12
- Luke 8:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G09280, G09290, G09300, G09310, G25580, G28510, G36000

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:5](#); [11:10](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [18:7](#); [18:10](#); [18:15](#); [20:10](#))

trample

Definition:

To “trample” means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate.”

- An example of “trampling” would be the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field..
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term to “trample” has a figurative meaning of to “punish by humiliating,” comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term “trample” was used figuratively to express how Yahweh would punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that “trample” could be translated include “crush with the feet” or “smash down with the feet” or “stomp on and crush” or “smash into the ground.”
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated

(See also: [grape](#), [shame](#), punish, rebel, thresh, [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:29
- Psalms 7:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0947, H1758, H1869, H4001, H4823, H7429, H7512, G26620, G39610

(Go back to: [Revelation 11:2](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:7](#); [5:5](#); [5:9](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [11:9](#); [13:7](#); [14:6](#); [21:12](#))

tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 4:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:9
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 2:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6869, G23470, G44230

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:9](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:22](#); [7:14](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:7](#); [3:14](#); [6:10](#); [15:3](#); [16:7](#); [19:2](#); [19:9](#); [19:11](#); [21:5](#); [22:6](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), [horn](#), [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:10](#); [4:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [9:1](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [10:7](#); [11:15](#); [18:22](#))

turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”
- To “turn aside” means to change direction, it often means to either stop doing right and start doing evil or the opposite.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:2
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 1:17
- Malachi 4:6
- Revelation 11:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G03440, G03870, G04020, G06540, G06650, G08680, G12940, G15780, G16120, G16240, G19940, G31790, G33130, G33290, G33440, G33460, G47620, G51570, G52900

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:12](#); [11:6](#))

twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- These are the names of Jacob’s twelve sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [Reuben](#), [Simeon](#), [Levi](#), [Judah](#), [Dan](#), [Naphtali](#), [Gad](#), [Asher](#), [Issachar](#), [Zebulun](#), [Joseph](#), [Benjamin](#), [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:7
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G14270, G24740, G54430

(Go back to: [Revelation 21:12](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 2:47
- Luke 8:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H0998, H0999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G00500, G01450, G01910, G08010, G10970, G11080, G12710, G19210, G19220, G19870, G19900, G26570, G35390, G35630, G49070, G49080, G49200, G54240, G54280, G54290

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:17](#); [13:18](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:18](#); [14:19](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), Isaiah, [Jesus](#), Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:4](#))

vision, envision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:17](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:10; 1:12; 1:15; 3:20; 4:1; 4:5; 5:2; 5:11; 5:12; 6:1; 6:6; 6:7; 6:10; 7:2; 7:10; 8:5; 8:13; 9:13; 10:3; 10:4; 10:7; 10:8; 11:12; 11:15; 11:19; 12:10; 14:2; 14:7; 14:9; 14:13; 14:15; 14:18; 16:1; 16:17; 16:18; 18:2; 18:4; 18:22; 18:23; 19:1; 19:5; 19:6; 19:17; 21:3](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:1](#); [3:4](#); [9:20](#); [16:15](#); [21:24](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [6:1](#); [16:15](#))

water, deep

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:15](#); [7:17](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [11:6](#); [12:15](#); [14:2](#); [14:7](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:12](#); [17:1](#); [17:15](#); [19:6](#); [21:6](#); [22:1](#); [22:17](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), chaff, grain, [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:6](#); [18:13](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 4:3-6
- Colossians 4:12-14
- Ephesians 1:1-2
- John 5:30-32
- Mark 3:33-35
- Matthew 6:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G10120, G10130, G23070, G23080, G23090, G25960

(Go back to: [Revelation 4:11](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), vineyard, [winepress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:6](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [16:19](#); [17:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:13](#); [19:15](#))

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:2
- Mark 12:1
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G30250, G52760

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:19](#); [14:20](#); [19:15](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [Revelation 5:12](#); [7:12](#); [13:18](#); [17:9](#))

woe

Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 1:9-11
- Luke 6:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0188, H0190, H0337, H0480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G37590

(Go back to: [Revelation 8:13](#); [9:12](#); [11:14](#); [12:12](#); [18:10](#); [18:16](#); [18:19](#))

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

(Go back to: [Revelation 12:2](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7

- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

(Go back to: [Revelation 1:2](#); [1:9](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [6:9](#); [19:13](#); [20:4](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [Revelation 2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [2:26](#); [3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:8](#); [3:15](#); [9:20](#); [14:13](#); [15:3](#); [16:11](#); [18:6](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [22:12](#))

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), Rome, [godly](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:10](#); [11:15](#); [12:9](#); [13:8](#); [16:14](#); [17:8](#))

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:4
- 2 Thessalonians 1:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 1:9-10
- Jeremiah 8:19
- Mark 1:7
- Matthew 3:10-12
- Philippians 1:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G00960, G05140, G05150, G05160, G24250, G26610, G27350

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:4](#); [Notes](#); [4:11](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:9](#); [5:12](#); [16:6](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Revelation 6:16](#); [6:17](#); [11:18](#); [14:10](#); [14:19](#); [15:1](#); [15:7](#); [Notes](#); [16:1](#); [16:19](#); [19:15](#))

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [Revelation 9:15](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:7](#))

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [Revelation 3:19](#))

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [twelve tribes of Israel](#), Jacob, Leah)

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

(Go back to: [Revelation 7:8](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:5
- Amos 1:2
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 76:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [Revelation 14:1](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Kailey Gregory
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College
Leonard Smith
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
David Trombold, M. Div.
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)